

Bit by Bit
كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

New Hello!

2025



3rd
PREP
SECOND
TERM

التعليم العام والأزهرى

الصف الثالث الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Bit by Bit

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

الصف الثالث الإعدادي

3

Contents

Part 1

- Specifications for the exam

Part 2

Module 3: The environment

- Unit (7) : Our world
- Unit (8) : Protecting our planet
- Unit (9) : Build a greener world

Review (C)

Module 4: The modern world

- Unit (10) : To space and back
- Unit (11) : Media now and in the past
- Unit (12) : Into the future

Review (D)

Part 3

- Reviews, Short stories & Biographies

Booklet (free with the book)

- Dictation
- Vocabulary Practice
- Homework exercises on each unit
- Al Azhar exercises
- Tests on units
- General Exercises (SB / WB)
- WB End of Term Practice
- Final Exams
- Al Azhar Exams

Time:
2 Hoursمواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثالث الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٠٢٥

(30 Marks)



Language Functions

5 Marks

1 Finish the following dialogue:

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions is provided (2 stimuli & 3 responses). The topic of the dialogue should be related to the students' everyday life, interests, hobbies, events and so on. The situation in which the dialogue takes place is described briefly but clearly. The students are required to fill in the deletions completely with the appropriate language forms without providing them with any guidance. The first exchange should be in full.

(One mark each)



Reading Comprehension

10 Marks

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

(4 Marks)

An unseen text from **50 to 60** words with **FOUR (4)** gaps is provided. Students are asked to fill in the **FOUR (4)** gaps (3 vocabulary & 1 structure) from a list of **SIX (6)** words (4 vocabulary & 2 structures).

(One mark each)

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

(6 Marks)

An unseen text from **140 to 160** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, or an email. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are asked to answer:

A. Two MCQ questions with **FOUR (4)** options each dealing with the following reading comprehension skills:

- Determine the main idea of a text. (1 question)
- Skim and scan grade appropriate text. (1 question)

B. Four open-ended questions on the following reading comprehension skills:

- Skim and scan grade appropriate text (1 question)
- Make inference about grade appropriate text. (1 question)
- Summarizing a text. (1 question)
- Make prediction about upcoming events in a story or information in a text. (1 question)

(One mark each)



Vocabulary & Structure

8 Marks

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(3 Marks)

SIX (6) vocabulary multiple-choice questions based on what students studied before are provided. They are asked to choose the correct answer out of the **FOUR (4)** options given. The questions should test students' knowledge of:

- Definitions (2 questions)
- Synonyms & Antonyms (1 question)
- Suffixes & Prefixes (1 question)
- Guessing meaning from the text (2 questions) (Half a mark each)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(5 Marks)

FIVE (5) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs etc. related to what students have studied.

(One mark each)



Writing

7 Marks

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(7 Marks)

Students are asked to write from **100** to **110** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books in **ONE** of the following writing forms:

- A review
- A short story
- A biography

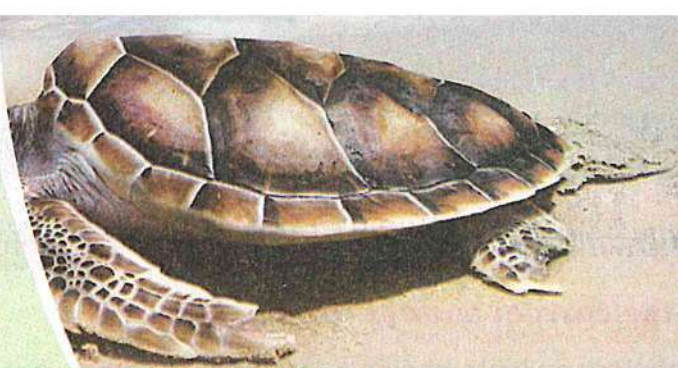
(Two marks for relevance of ideas-One mark for organization - One mark for related vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar "Three mistakes are accepted. Repeated mistakes are marked once only")

Module
3

**The
environment**

7
UNIT

Our world



Objectives

Reading:

A fact file about natural wonders of Egypt; a project about Wadi al-Hitan; Black Beauty by Anna Sewell; an information text about mongooses

Writing:

A fact file about a natural wonder; a short article about an animal

Listening:

A talk about habitats; a description of a natural wonder; a discussion about a story; conversations asking for clarification

Speaking:

Talking about animals, animal habitats and natural wonders; expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification

Language:

The present simple passive with and without by (revision)

The past simple passive with and without by

Life Skills:

Respect for diversity in nature



يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب.

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



wonder (n)	عجوبة - إعجاب - تعجب	fill (ed) (v)	يملأ
shape (n)	شكل / قالب	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
oasis (oases) (n)	واحة (واحات)	surround (ed) (v)	يحيط بـ / يطوق

Natural habitats

coastal habitat	بيئة ساحلية	wetland habitat	بيئة أرض رطبة (مستنقع)
grassland habitat	بيئة عشبية	desert habitat	بيئة صحراوية
polar habitat	بيئة قطبية	forest habitat	بيئة الغابات
rainforest habitat	بيئة غابات مطيرة	mountain habitat	بيئة جبلية

Animals

turtle	سلحفاة	orangutan	إنسان الغاب
caracal	حيوان عناق الأرض (الكراكال)	frog	ضفدع
polar bear	الدب القطبي		



Vocabulary

coast	ساحل	warm	دافئ
the Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	Bedouin people	البدو
meteorite	نيزك	including	بما في ذلك
location	موقع	shooting star	شهاب
appearance	مظهر / شكل	locals	السكان المحليون
volunteer	متطوع	home	موطن
wildlife	الحياة البرية	newsagent	بائع الصحف أو المجلات
environment	البيئة	robot	إنسان آلي
spring	ينبوع ماء	modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	describe (d) (v)	يصف
entire	كامل / كل	pollute (d) (v)	يلوث
rarely	نادراً	cover (ed) (v)	يغطي
date palm trees	نخيل البلح	contain (ed) (v)	يحتوي على
except	ماعدا	destroy (ed) (v)	يدمر / يتلف
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	respect (ed) (n)	يقدّر / يحترم - احترام / تقدير
national park	محمية طبيعية		



Definitions

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

habitat (موطن) بيئة الحيوان أو النبات	the natural home of an animal or plant	
grassland habitat بيئة عشبية	These habitats usually have large green areas and no mountains.	
rainforest habitat بيئة غابات مطيرة	These habitats have a lot of trees. They are usually very hot and have a lot of rain.	
wetland habitat بيئة أرض رطبة (مستنقعات)	There is not always rain in these habitats, but there is always a lot of water.	
polar habitat بيئة قطبية	These habitats are always cold and are often covered by ice.	
coastal habitat بيئة ساحلية	These habitats are next to the sea or the ocean. You often find rocks there.	
desert habitat بيئة صحراوية	There is very little or no rain in these habitats. It can be very hot.	
mountain habitat بيئة جبلية	These habitats are very high. It can be very cold in the highest parts.	
forest habitat بيئة غابات	There are many tall trees in these habitats.	١- ممتلئ
fill يملأ	make something full ⁽¹⁾ , so there is no space ⁽²⁾ for any more of something	٢- مساحة
oasis واحة	an area in the desert where you can find water	٣- دولة اندونيسيا
caracal حيوان عنق الأرض (الكاراكال)	a wild cat with long legs and big ears that lives in Africa and Asia.	٤- المنطقة القطبية الشمالية
orangutan إنسان الغاب	a large animal with long red hair and long arms, which lives in the trees of Indonesia ⁽³⁾	٥- في كل مكان
polar bear الدب القطبي	a large, white bear which lives on the ice of the Arctic ⁽⁴⁾	٦- تل
surrounded by محاط بـ	everywhere ⁽⁵⁾ around you	
wonder عجوبة	something that makes you feel it is beautiful or amazing	
mountain جبل	a very high hill ⁽⁶⁾	
shape شكل	the form made by the outside of something, for example a square, circle, triangle, etc.	
frog ضفدع	a small, green animal with long black legs that lives in or near water	

Synonyms & Antonyms

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
famous	مشهور	well-known		unknown	غير معروف
wet	مبتل / رطب	rainy		dry	جاف
huge	ضخم	very big / enormous massive		small / tiny	صغير / ضئيل
strange	غريب	unusual		usual	معتاد

modern	حديث	new	old/ traditional / ancient	قديم
protect	يحمي	keep / preserve	endanger	يعرض للخطر
locals	السكان المحليون	natives / citizens	foreigners	أجانب
top	قمة		bottom	قاع
entire	كامل / كل	whole	partial	جزء
bright	صاف	clear = translucent	dirty = polluted	قذر

- **Synonym** مرادف = the same meaning as = similar in meaning to = look like
 = (be) replaced by = close in meaning to
 - **Antonym** مضاد / عكس = opposite = different

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

- n = noun	اسم	- v = verb	فعل
- adj = adjective	صفة	- adv = adverb	ظرف / حال

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

يوجد شرح لبادئات ولواحق الكلمات في مقدمة الكتاب
 قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
un-	opposite تعطي عكس المعنى	unusually على غير العادة
-al	n → adj ساحلي / طبيعي	coastal / natural
-ern	تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	western غربي
-ance	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	appearance المظهر
-ion		location موقع
-or	person تكون اسم الفاعل v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	visitor زائر
techno-	تشير إلى الآلات والأجهزة الإلكترونية electronic equipment	technology

Expressions & Prepositions

(be) cut out of منحوت في	on the list في القائمة
show respect for يظهر التقدير لـ	at the bottom of في قاع
make a list of يُعد قائمة بـ	in the middle of في منتصف
a day-trip رحلة من يوم واحد	in the shape of على شكل
as well as بالإضافة إلى	because of بسبب
lay eggs تضع البيض	far from بعيداً عن
look like يشبه	(be) made from مصنوع من
makeinto يحول / يغير.... إلى	cut down trees يقطع الأشجار
fall into يسقط داخل	fillwith يملأ
at the top of في أعلى / في قمة	

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة في آخر الكتاب

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
find	يجد	found	found
get	يحصل على	got	got
know	يعرف	knew	known
fall	يسقط / يقع	fell	fallen
cut down	يقطع	cut down	cut down
build	يبني	built	built
grow	يزرع - ينمو	grew	grown
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
hide	يختم	hid	hidden
lay	تضع (البيض)	laid	laid



Language Notes

1) a three-hour drive

• a three-hour drive = three hours of driving

ثلاث ساعات من القيادة

يمكن أن تتكون بعض الصفات كما يلي :

اسم موصوف + اسم مفرد - عدد + a/an

Ex. Alexandria is a **three-hour drive** from Cairo.

2) call / (be) called / called

• call (v- ed) ينادي / يتصل تليفونيا

Ex. I **called** the waiter and ordered lunch.

Ex. He **called** the police after the accident.

لاحظ استخدام الفعل **call** بطرق مختلفة:

• (be) called يُسمى / يُدعى

Ex. He **is called** Adam.

ويمكن أن تأتي كلمة **called** بدون **verb to be** وتكون صفة:

Ex. A girl **called** Fatma helped me.

3) fill / fall / feel / fail

• fill (ed) يملأ

Ex. I **filled** the bottle with water.

• feel (felt / felt) يشعر

Ex. I always **feel** hungry at night.

• fall (fell / fallen) from - into يسقط

Ex. The book **fell from** his hands.

Ex. His mobile **fell into** the pool.

• fail (ed) يرسب / يفشل

Ex. Adel **failed** his exams and became sad.

4) reach / arrive in - at / get to

• **reach** يصل إلى (بدون حرف جر)

Ex. We **reached** Cairo early in the morning.

• **get to** يصل إلى (مكان كبير أو صغير)

Ex. I **get to** school on time every day.

• **arrive in** يصل إلى مكان كبير

Ex. They **arrived in** London three days ago.

• **arrive at** يصل إلى مكان صغير

Ex. She **arrived at** the airport in time.

5) Ergative verbs الأفعال ذات الاستخدام المزدوج

- هي مجموعة من الأفعال يمكن لمفعولها أن يصبح فاعلها بدون استخدام المبنى للمجهول (أحياناً في اختلاف في المعنى):

cook - break - boil - change - open - close - grow - start - stop - read

Ex. Bassmala **opened** the door.

Ex. The door **opened**.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A old boy was riding a bike when a car hit him.
a. ten-years b. tens-years c. ten-year d. ten year
- What is her name? She Salma.
a. is calling b. call c. calls d. is called
- Don't the glass to the top, please.
a. fail b. fill c. feel d. fall
- When I the club, I was tired.
a. reached b. arrived c. got d. went
- Trees very tall here.
a. grows b. growing c. grown d. grow



Audioscript

SB Page (2)

استمع إلى النصوص



1. **Orangutans**⁽¹⁾ live in **rainforests**⁽²⁾ and spend nearly their **entire**⁽³⁾ lives in trees.



2. **Sea turtles**⁽⁴⁾ rarely leave the **ocean**⁽⁵⁾, **except**⁽⁶⁾ to lay eggs in the sand.



- ١- إنسان الغاب
- ٢- غابات مطيرة
- ٣- كل
- ٤- سلاخف بحرية
- ٥- محيط
- ٦- ما عدا

3. The **polar bear**⁽⁷⁾ is one of the few animals that can live in a polar **habitat**⁽⁸⁾.



4. **Caracals**⁽⁹⁾ live in **grasslands**⁽¹⁰⁾ because they like to hide in the long grass.



5. **Frogs**⁽¹¹⁾ are **wetland**⁽¹²⁾ animals that are able to live on land as well as in water.



- ٧- الدب القطبي
- ٨- بيئة
- ٩- حيوان عنق الأرض
- ١٠- أرض عشبية
- ١١- ضفادع
- ١٢- أرض رطبة (مستنقع)

SB Page (3)

There are many different habitats around the world. **Coastal habitats**⁽¹⁾ are along the coast of the sea. Some animals that live in the sea, such as the sea turtle, will visit land for **egg laying**⁽²⁾. Grasslands are usually found in the centre of large areas of land, between mountains and deserts. This is the **natural**⁽³⁾ habitat of animals such as the caracal, which like to **hide**⁽⁴⁾ in the long grass. Grasslands are found **all over the world**⁽⁵⁾.

Warm, wet habitats that get the most rain, are called rainforests. Trees grow very tall here, so that they can get **sunlight**⁽⁶⁾. More than half of the world's animals live in the rainforest, **including**⁽⁷⁾ the orangutan.

A wetland is a place where the land is often **covered by**⁽⁸⁾ water, for example the **Nile Delta**⁽⁹⁾. Wetland animals like frogs are able to live on land as well as in water.

The top and **bottom**⁽¹⁰⁾ of the Earth are covered by ice. These areas are known as polar habitats. The polar bear is one of the few animals that can live in the **cold temperatures**⁽¹¹⁾ there.

- ١- مواطن ساحلية
- ٢- وضع البيض
- ٣- طبيعي
- ٤- يختبئ
- ٥- في جميع أنحاء العالم
- ٦- ضوء الشمس
- ٧- بما في ذلك
- ٨- مغطاة بـ
- ٩- دلتا النيل
- ١٠- قاع
- ١١- درجات الحرارة الباردة

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The text is mainly about

- a. egg laying b. animal habitats c. grasslands d. temperatures

2. Infer from the text why the sea turtles visit land.

استنتج من النص لماذا تزور السلاحف البحرية اليابسة.

3. Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence.

لخص الفقرة الأخيرة في جملة واحدة.

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. The sea turtles visit land for egg laying.

تزر السلاحف المائية اليابسة لوضع البيض.

2. Grassland habitats are the natural habitat of the caracal.

البيئة العشبية هي البيئة الطبيعية لحيوان عنق الأرض.

3. The orangutan lives in the rainforest habitat.

يعيش إنسان الغاب في بيئة الغابات الممطرة.

4. The polar bear lives in the polar habitat

يعيش الدب القطبي في البيئة القطبية.

3. Polar habitats are always cold and are often covered by ice.

البيئات القطبية دائماً باردة وغالباً ما تغطيها الجليد.

لوضع البيض.

2. For egg laying.

1. b) animal habitats.

Answers

Randa : Which place do you think should be on the list of Egypt's natural wonders⁽¹⁾, Nihal?

Nihal : I would choose Wadi al-Weshwashy⁽²⁾.

Randa : Wadi al-Weshwashy? Where's that?

Nihal : It's on the way to South Sinai, just 15 kilometres away from Nuweiba. It's in the mountains of South Sinai.

Randa : I see. That's a long way away. What kind of place is it?

Nihal : There are areas of water called springs⁽³⁾ there. They make small lakes high in the mountains. They are known as the Green Springs.

Randa : I've never heard of this amazing place! Can you swim there?

Nihal : Oh yes, Randa, it's a wonderful place for swimming. It's mostly visited by the local Bedouin people⁽⁴⁾ who live near there. In fact, Wadi al-Weshwashy is looked after by them. You can ask local tour guides⁽⁵⁾ to take you there on a day trip - otherwise, it's really difficult to get to. But I think that's why it's such a special place.



- ١- عجائب
- ٢- وادي الوشواشي
- ٣- ينابيع ماء
- ٤- البدو
- ٥- مرشدون سياحيون



Reading

Natural wonders⁽¹⁾ of Egypt

Egypt is visited by more than 14 million tourists every year. We have made a list of the natural wonders of Egypt that we think visitors should know about.



1. White Desert National Park⁽²⁾

Where?

This huge⁽³⁾ desert starts on the western side of the River Nile and continues into Libya.

What?

It contains five oases⁽⁴⁾, with rocks that the wind has made into strange shapes⁽⁵⁾.

Why is it a "wonder"?

The colours change at different times of day, and make them beautiful to look at.

- ١- عجائب طبيعية
- ٢- محمية الصحراء البيضاء الطبيعية
- ٣- ضخم
- ٤- واحات
- ٥- أشكال

2. Al Nayzak Lake⁽⁶⁾

Where?

This natural lake is a three-hour drive from Hurghada.

What?

The lake is called the **Shooting Star**⁽⁷⁾ by **locals**⁽⁸⁾, because it is believed that a piece of a star (a **meteorite**⁽⁹⁾) fell into it. The lake is cut out of the rock in the shape of an eye and is **filled with**⁽¹⁰⁾ the bright blue water of the Red Sea.

Why is it a "wonder"?

It is described by visitors as one of the best places to dive and swim.

- ٦- بحيرة النيزك
- ٧- شهاب
- ٨- سكان محليون
- ٩- نيزك
- ١٠- ممتلئ بـ
- ١١- جبل علبة
- ١٢- محاط بـ
- ١٣- ساحل
- ١٤- على غير المعتاد
- ١٥- موقع
- ١٦- يحمي

3. Gebel Elba⁽¹¹⁾

Where?

This national park is **surrounded by**⁽¹²⁾ grasslands, between the Red Sea **coast**⁽¹³⁾ and the mountains.

What?

This national park takes its name from the mountain in the middle of it.

Why is it a "wonder"?

It is **unusually**⁽¹⁴⁾ green and home to many animals and birds. However, as it isn't easy to reach, it isn't visited often. Its **location**⁽¹⁵⁾ should help to **protect**⁽¹⁶⁾ the wildlife there.

WB Page (71)

The **Kharga Oasis**⁽¹⁾ is surrounded by desert, far from the River Nile. It is visited by more and more **tourists**⁽²⁾ every year. Hundreds of **date palm trees**⁽³⁾ are grown here. The dates are sold in many shops

in the area. You can also fill your bags with the **baskets**⁽⁴⁾, shoes and **furniture**⁽⁵⁾ that are also made from the date palm trees. The Kharga Oasis is one of Egypt's natural wonders!



- ١- واحة الخارجة
- ٢- سائحون
- ٣- نخيل البلح
- ٤- سلال
- ٥- أثاث

Videoscript

SB Page (5)

There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert National Park and the Al Nayzak Lake. There are also some wonderful **man-made**⁽¹⁾ wonders, such as the Great Pyramids and the **Citadel of Qaitbay**⁽²⁾ in Alexandria. These and other places are popular places and they are visited by thousands of tourists every year.

Egypt also has some wonders that aren't visited by many tourists, like Gebel Elba. This is because it is difficult to reach. Another wonder that is difficult to reach is **the Lost City**⁽³⁾ of **Thonis-Heracleion**⁽⁴⁾. This is because the city is now under **the Mediterranean Sea**⁽⁵⁾ near Alexandria. It was found by an **archaeologist**⁽⁶⁾ called Franck Goddio in 2000. Thonis-Heracleion was an important city before it was destroyed by the sea more than 1,500 years ago. When it was discovered, Franck Goddio saw lots of very old statues, temples and **monuments**⁽⁷⁾.

Another wonder is **the Great Sand Sea**⁽⁸⁾ in the south of Egypt. This is a part of the Western desert, and here you can find lots of big **sand dunes**⁽⁹⁾. Some unusual glass is also found in the Great Sand Sea. It is believed that this glass is more than 29 million years old. The glass is very special and some of it was found in **King Tutankhamen's tomb**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Egypt's natural and man-made wonders are among the most beautiful in the world. Have you visited any of them?

- ١- من صنع البشر
- ٢- قلعة قايتباي
- ٣- المدينة المفقودة
- ٤- مدينة هرقليون (أبو قير القديمة)
- ٥- البحر المتوسط
- ٦- عالم آثار
- ٧- الآثار
- ٨- بحر الرمال الأعظم
- ٩- كثبان رملية
- ١٠- مقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- يوجد تمارينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي وتمارينات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

Definitions

1. A/An is the natural home of an animal or plant. Longman / الإسخندرية 2023
 a. ocean b. school c. habitat d. sky
2. The is a large, white animal which lives on the ice of the Arctic. العربية 2022
 a. caracal b. polar bear c. frog d. orangutan
3. A/An is a large animal with long red hair and long arms, which lives in the trees of Indonesia. الجزيرة 2022
 a. lion b. turtle c. orangutan d. frog

4. A _____ is a small, green animal with long back legs that lives in or near water. WB
- a. crocodile b. frog c. lizard d. turtle
5. A/An _____ is a very big hill.
- a. mountain b. oasis c. habitat d. wonder
6. _____ habitats usually have large green areas and no mountains.

الوادي الجديد 2022

- a. Coastal b. Desert c. Grassland d. Wetland
7. A _____ has a thick hard shell around its body. Longman
- a. polar bear b. dog c. turtle d. lion

Synonyms & Antonyms

8. That plane is enormous! "_____ " is the synonym of "enormous". الشرقية 2023
- a. Little b. Huge c. Tiny d. Local
9. The ground was wet because of the rain. "Wet" is an antonym of _____.

القاهرة 2024

- a. dry b. rainy c. snowy d. stormy
10. "Famous" is similar in meaning to _____.
- a. unknown b. strange c. usual d. well-known
11. We should protect our environment. "Protect" is similar in meaning to _____ Longman
- a. appear b. damage c. avoid d. preserve
12. Modern technology makes life better for most of us. "Modern" is an antonym of _____.
- a. new b. recent c. old d. usual
13. "Strange" is an antonym of _____.
- a. usual b. unknown c. unusual d. tiny
14. Some large habitats are found at the top of Earth. "_____ " is opposite in meaning to "top". Longman
- a. East b. West c. Bottom d. Button
15. The eye is filled with the bright blue water of the Red Sea. "Bright" is the same as "_____".
- a. shiny b. fresh c. unclear d. dirty



Prefixes & Suffixes

16. The word "coast" is turned into an adjective by adding the suffix

الفيوم 2022

- a. -ance b. -ful c. -al d. -less

17. We add the prefix to the word "usual" to form the opposite.

- a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. im-

18. We turn the verb "visit" into a noun by adding the suffix جنوب سيناء 2022

- a. -less b. -al c. -able d. -or

19. We turn the verb "appear" into a noun by adding the suffix

شمال سيناء 2022

- a. -ance b. -ous c. -ment d. -ive

20. The internet is a wonder of modern technology. The prefix refers to machines and electronic equipment. WB

- a. un- b. techno- c. dis- d. re-

21. Marsa Matrouh is to the west of Egypt. To change "west" into an adjective, we add the suffix ""

- a. -ern b. -ly c. -ive d. -able

Guessing the meaning

22. The rock looks like a pyramid. This means it is in the of a pyramid.

الحيزة 2022

- a. shade b. shake c. shape d. share

23. There are many tall trees in habitats.

- a. mountain b. polar c. coastal d. forest

24. There is a flood which covers the land. This means everything is by water. الشرقية 2022

- a. surrounded b. added c. protected d. painted

25. They lived in a wonderful oasis. An oasis is a place where you can find in the desert. الغربية 2024

- a. seas b. land c. water d. oil

26. The pool was in the of a heart.

- a. eye b. ship c. sheep d. shape



Language

1- The present simple passive (without by)

المبنى للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط

تتكون الجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية من:

1 Subject (فاعل) + verb (فعل) + 2 object (مفعول) + 3

يسمى هذا التكوين مبنى للمعلوم (Active) وهناك صيغة أخرى تسمى "مبنى للمجهول" Passive كما يلي:

Form التكوين

التصريف الثالث للفعل + am / is / are + Agent (نائب فاعل)

نستخدم صيغة المبنى للمجهول بدون (by) عندما يكون الفعل أهم من الفاعل أو عندما لا نعرف الفاعل أو أنه ليس من المهم ذكر الفاعل.

لاحظ طريقة تحويل الجملة من المبنى للمعلوم للمبنى للمجهول بدون ذكر الفاعل.

١- نبدأ الجملة الجديدة بمفعول الجملة المبنية للمعلوم حيث يصبح نائب فاعل.

٢- نضيف قبل الفعل verb to be (am / is / are) في المضارع حسب المفعول الجديد.

٣- نضع الفعل في التصريف الثالث past participle.

Ex. People call warm, wet areas rainforests. (Active)

- Warm, wet areas are called rainforests. (Passive)

Ex. We know these areas as polar habitats. (Active)

- These areas are known as polar habitats. (Passive)

2- The present simple passive (with by)

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول مع وجود (by) آخر الجملة عندما نريد التركيز على الشخص أو الشيء الذي قام بالفعل.

في هذه الحالة تكون الصيغة كالآتي:

فاعل + by + التصريف الثالث للفعل + am / is / are + Agent (نائب فاعل)

Ex. More than 14 million tourists visit Egypt every year. (Active)

- Egypt is visited by more than 14 million tourists every year. (Passive)

Ex. Locals call the lake 'The Shooting Star'. (Active)

- The lake is called 'The Shooting Star' by locals. (Passive)

Ex. Grasslands surround the national park. (Active)

- The national park is surrounded by grasslands. (Passive)

Negative النفي

مفعول + **don't / doesn't + inf.** + فاعل

(Active)

فاعل + **by + التصريف الثالث للفعل + not + am / is / are** + نائب فاعل (Agent)

(Passive)

Ex. Trees **don't surround** the school.

(Active)

- The school **isn't surrounded** by trees.

(Passive)

لاحظ إذا كانت الجملة المبنيّة للمعلوم منفية فذلك تكون الجملة المبنيّة للمجهول منفية لكن باستخدام:

verb to be (am not / isn't / aren't)

Ex. Tourists **don't visit** Gebel Elba.

(Active)

- Gebel Elba **isn't visited** by tourists.

(Passive)

Question السؤال

.....? مفعول + **inf.** + فاعل + **Do / Does** (كلمة استفهام)

(Active)

فاعل + **by + التصريف الثالث للفعل + نائب فاعل + Am / Is / Are** (كلمة استفهام)

(Passive)

Ex. **Do** millions of tourists **visit** Egypt?

(Active)

- **Is** Egypt **visited** by millions of tourists?

(Passive)

Notes

١- لاحظ إذا كان هناك فعل ناقص في الجملة المبنيّة للمعلوم

(**can / could / will / would / must / should / may / might**)

فعند التحويل للمبنى للمجهول نستبدل (**am / is / are**) ب (**be**) قبل الفعل كما يلي:

فاعل + **by + التصريف الثالث للفعل + be + الفعل الناقص + نائب فاعل (Agent)**

Ex. We **can play** football here.

(Active)

- Football **can be played** here.

(Passive)

- وفي النفي ننفي الفعل الناقص بوضع **not** بعده.

Ex. Football **can't be played** here.

(Passive)

٢- لاحظ أن ضمائر الفاعل في الجملة المبنيّة للمعلوم يتم تحويلها إلى ضمائر مفعول بعد (**by**) في الجملة المبنيّة للمجهول كما يلي:

Ex. I watch TV every day.

- TV is watched by **me** every day.

٣- عند تحويل سؤال يبدأ ب (**Who**) إلى المبني للمجهول:

Ex. **Who** plays football?

لاحظ أن الفعل جاء مباشرة بعد (**Who**) وعند التحويل نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Who + is / are + نائب فاعل + by + التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. **Who is** football **played by**?

ع- لاحظ عند التحويل من مبنى للمعلوم الى مبنى للمجهول فان بعض الكلمات تبدو جمع في معناها لكنها تأخذ فعل مفرد مثل: الاخبار **news** / معلومات **information** / معدات **equipment** / نصيحة **advice**

Ex. These websites **provide** you with useful information.

- Useful information **is provided** by these websites.

ه- لاحظ ان جملة الامتحان قد تأتي في صيغة المبنى للمعلوم فلا تنخدع بالجملة وتحولها بالخطأ للمجهول.

Ex. Smoke from fires..... (pollute) the air.



- Smoke from fires pollutes the air.

Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets

- يوجد تمارين إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

SB, WB & Exams

- The land is (cover) by ice in polar habitats. WB دمياط 2023
- Squash (doesn't) played by many students. WB الجزيرة 2022
- Many houses are (building) in coastal areas by people. WB
- Four important wetlands (is) found in Egypt. WB
- Fewer magazines are (sell) today because of the internet.  القليوبية 2024
- Some of the turtles' eggs (eat) by birds and animals. SB
- Ice (cover) large areas of wetlands.  الاسكندرية 2023
- Al Nayzak lake (know) as a natural wonder. الجزيرة 2024

Longman Exercises

- The park (surrounds) by grasslands.
- The national park is (visiting) by many people every year.
- Which kinds of habitats (are finding) at Gebel Elba?
- My room (doesn't tidy) by my sister; I usually tidy it myself.
- Lunch is usually prepared and (serving) by my sister when my mother is away.
- Mobile phones are widely (using) everywhere.

Bit by Bit Exercises

15. (Be) pizza served in this restaurant every day?
16. Ahmed is (take) to school every day by his father.
17. Rice is (grow) in Egypt by many farmers.
18. The news (are) shown on TV daily.
19. The homework (doesn't) done by me.
20. What (hunt) by caracals?
21. English (speak) almost everywhere.
22. Many eggs are (lay) every day by chickens.
23. A lot of trees are (cutting) down for their wood.
24. Many plants (growing) naturally in Egypt every year.
25. These are areas of water (call) springs.
26. These areas of water (call) springs.
27. Fish (kill) by the ink from the printer cartridge every day.
28. It (believe) that a piece of a star fell into it.
29. Which kinds of habitats can (find) at Gebel Elba?



SB



Speaking

1 Talking about animals and animal habitats.

الحديث عن الحيوانات وأين تعيش (بيئتها)

- What's a polar habitat?

ما هي البيئة القطبية؟

- What animal that lives in a grassland habitat?

ما الحيوان الذي يعيش في البيئة العشبية؟

- Where are coastal habitats found?

أين توجد البيئات الساحلية؟

It's always cold and is often covered by ice.

دائماً تكون باردة وغالباً مغطاة بالثلج.

The caracal lives there.

يعيش حيوان عناق الأرض هناك.

They are found along the coast of the sea.

توجد على امتداد ساحل البحر.

2) Talking about a natural wonder; Wadi al-Weshwashy.

الحديث عن إحدى العجائب الطبيعية، وادي الوشواشي

Question

- Where is Wadi al-Weshwashy?
أين يكون؟
- What can you see there?
ماذا يمكن أن تروى هناك؟
- What can you do there?
ماذا يمكن أن تفعل هناك؟

Answer

- It's in south of Sinai.
في جنوب سيناء.
- We can see mountains and a lake.
يمكننا رؤية جبال وبحيرة.
- We can climb mountains and swim in the lake.
يمكننا تسلق الجبال والسباحة في البحيرة.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



- يوجد تمارينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي وتمارينات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

1) Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Osman are talking about animal habitats.

Ahmed : Where were you yesterday?

Osman : ①

Ahmed : Gebel Elba! ②

Osman : It's near the Red Sea.

Ahmed : ③

Osman : You can see many animals and birds there. Do you want to visit it?

Ahmed : ④

Osman : You can come with me the next time.

Ahmed : When will you go?

Osman : ⑤

2) Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

lay - turtles - preserving - rainforests - lie - preserved

Animals live in different habitats. These habitats are well ① Grasslands provide habitats for animals like the caracal. The ② are home to more than half of the world's animals. Sea ③ live in the sea. They come to land to ④ their eggs.

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The habitat is next to the sea and you find rocks there.

- a. mountain b. coastal c. polar d. rainforest

سوهاج 2023

2. The _____ caused the strange shapes of the rocks in the White Desert National Park.
a. internet b. money c. wind d. word
3. The children have some strange ideas, but they are helpful. "Strange" here means "_____".
a. bad b. unusual c. usual d. boring
Longman
4. The locals called the lake "The shooting star". "The antonym of "locals" is _____".
a. natives b. foreigners c. habitats d. citizens
الاسماعيلية 2022
5. They live on the east coast. "Coast" can be an objective by adding "_____".
a. -ous b. -al c. -ive d. -ic
الشرقية 2023
6. A/An _____ is the form made by the outside of something like a square or circle.
a. shop b. ship c. shape d. sheep

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. These pictures are _____ (takes) by my sister.
2. The poor _____ (treat) well by the government.
3. Dates _____ (sell) in many shops in Siwa.
4. Many new cars _____ (make) by robots in factories.
5. What _____ (surround) the Kharga Oasis?
6. Hundreds of date palm trees _____ (grow) by the locals here.

WB

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a visit to a natural wonder in Egypt"

الفيوم 2023

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- Where is this wonder in Egypt?
- Why is this place a wonder?
- What can you see there?
- What can you do there?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- This natural wonder is in
- It is the best place to
- You can see there.
- You can (do) there.

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب.

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

fossils	حفريات	owner	مالك
species	فصيلة / نوع (فصائل / أنواع) (مفرد / جمع)	depression	منخفض
length	طول	stable	استبل
remote	بعيد	preserved (adj)	محفوظ
carriage	عربة يجرها خيول - عربة قطار	preserve (v)	يحفظ / يصون / يحمي
		treat (ed)	يعامل



Vocabulary

southeast	جنوب شرقي	emperor	امبراطور
the latest	الأحدث	remains	بقايا
white rhino	وحيد القرن الأبيض	Greek	يوناني
crocodile	تمساح	capital	عاصمة
whale	حوت	lighthouse	فنارة
researcher	باحث	damage (d)	يتلف / يدمر
valley	وادي	expect (ed)	يتوقع
roof	سطح مبنى	pull (ed)	يجر / يسحب
ingredient	مكون / عنصر	design (ed)	يصمم (شئ)
pipes	أنابيب	park (ed)	يركن سيارة
buffalo	جاموسة		

Important places

the Fayum Depression	منخفض الفيوم	the Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
Pantheon	بانيثيون (معبد يوناني في روما)	Petra	مدينة البتراء (في الأردن)
the Great Wall of China	سور الصين العظيم	the Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي (في الإسكندرية)
the statue of the Sphinx	تمثال أبو الهول	Wadi al-Hitan (The Valley of the Whales)	وادي الحيتان
the Seven Wonders of the World	عجائب الدنيا السبع		



Definitions

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

depression منخفض	the land that is below ⁽¹⁾ the area around it
carriage عربة يجرها خيول	a vehicle ⁽²⁾ pulled by a horse or horses
fossil حفريّة	- part of a plant or animal that lived thousands of years ago, which is now rock ⁽³⁾ - the remains ⁽⁴⁾ of animals or plants that lived in the past
length طول	how long something is
owner مالك	a person who owns ⁽⁵⁾ , or has, something
preserved محفوظ	- if something is preserved, it is kept safe, so it is not damaged or destroyed ⁽⁶⁾ - kept safe from being damaged
remote بعيد	very far from somewhere ⁽⁷⁾
stable اسطبل	a building where people keep horses
species فصيلة/فصائل	a group of animals, plants or birds of the same kind
treat يعامل	behave ⁽⁸⁾ towards ⁽⁹⁾ someone in a certain way ⁽¹⁰⁾

- ١- أسفل
- ٢- مركبة
- ٣- صخرة
- ٤- بقايا
- ٥- يمتلك
- ٦- مدمر
- ٧- مكان ما
- ٨- يتصرف / يتعامل
- ٩- تجاه
- ١٠- طريقة معينة

Synonyms & Antonyms

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
unkind	غير عطوف / قاسي	cruel		kind	عطوف
hard	قاس / صعب	severe / difficult		mild / easy	معتدل / سهل
terrible	فظيخ / سيء	very bad		amazing	مذهل
warm	دافئ	quite hot		cool	بارد - لطيف
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate		unlucky	غير محظوظ
remote	بعيد	far away		near	قريب
preserve	يحفظ	keep		damage	يتلف
international	دولي / عالمي	universal / global		national	محلي

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

يوجد شرح لبادئات ولواحق الكلمات في مقدمة الكتاب

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
un-	opposite تعطي عكس المعنى	un lucky / un kind / un happy غير محظوظ / غير عطوف / حزين
inter-	between تعطي معنى "بين"	inter national
-y	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	windy / lucky / healthy شديد الرياح / محظوظ / صحي

-er / -or	person	تكون اسم الفاعل تحول الفعل إلى اسم	owner/builder/farmer/emperor مالك/بناء/مزارع/امبراطور
-ly	adj → adv	تحول الصفة إلى الحال	badly بشكل سيئ
-ing	v → adj	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	amazing مذهل

Expressions & Prepositions

a / per year	في العام	drive.... away	يقود.... بعيداً
(be) named as	يتم اختياره كـ / يُسمى باسم	take.... away	يأخذ.... بعيداً
get wet and cold	يبتل ويصاب بالبرد	find out	يكتشف / يعرف
look tired	يبدو متعباً	in length	في الطول
keep safe	يبقى آمناً	belong to	ينتمي لـ
give advice	يعطي النصيحة	work for	يعمل لدى
on land	على الأرض	wait for	ينتظر
far from	بعيداً عن	around 27 BCE	حوالي عام ٢٧ قبل الميلاد
		around 120 CE	حوالي عام ١٢٠ بعد الميلاد

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة في آخر الكتاب

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
burn	يحترق	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
see	يرى - يفهم	saw	seen
drive	يقود	drove	driven
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
take away	يأخذ بعيداً	took away	taken away
keep	يحفظ - يحفظ - يظل	kept	kept



Language Notes

1) long / length

• long (adj) طويل (صفة)

Ex. The river is really long.

• length (n) الطول (اسم)

Ex. The river is 6 kilometers in length.

- لاحظ استخدام حرف جر in قبل أسماء القياسات.

2) treat

• treat (ed) يعامل

Ex. She **treats** me like one of the family.

• treat (ed) يعالج

Ex. It was difficult to **treat** all the patients at the same time.

3) late / the latest

• late (adj) متأخر (صفة)

Ex. I am never **late** to school.

• the latest (صيغة تفضيل) الأحدث

Ex. I am interested in **the latest** technology.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The road is 15 kilometres in

a. long b. tall c. heavy d. length

2- All students should be equally.

a. driven b. burnt c. treated d. damaged

3- Have you read about the inventions?

a. late b. latest c. latter d. lately



Reading

(SB page (6))

استمع إلى النصوص



Fossils⁽¹⁾ of the desert

The Fayum Depression⁽²⁾ is an area of desert, southwest⁽³⁾ of Cairo. Many ancient fossils are often found here, but the species^{(4)*} of animal fossil might surprise you: crocodiles⁽⁵⁾, turtles and whales⁽⁶⁾. The most amazing fossils are the whale fossils. At Wadi al-Hitan, 'The Valley⁽⁷⁾ of the Whales', hundreds of fossils of ancient whales were found by scientists in 1902. The scientists were surprised to find out⁽⁸⁾ that these whales had legs, so they once walked on land.

In 2005, the fossils at Wadi al-Hitan were studied by a team of international⁽⁹⁾ scientists. The fossils were preserved⁽¹⁰⁾ really well and some of them were 21 metres in length⁽¹¹⁾. It was discovered that these whales belong to⁽¹²⁾ the same family of animals as camels and giraffes⁽¹³⁾.



- ١- حفريات
- ٢- منخفض الفيوم
- ٣- جنوب شرق
- ٤- فصيلة/فصائل
- ٥- التماسيح
- ٦- الحيتان
- ٧- وادي
- ٨- يكتشف/يعرف
- ٩- دولي
- ١٠- حُفظت
- ١١- الطول
- ١٢- ينتمي إلى
- ١٣- الزراف

The fossils are so important that Wadi al-Hitan was called a **UNESCO**⁽¹⁴⁾ World Heritage Site⁽¹⁵⁾ in 2005. However, it is very **remote**⁽¹⁶⁾. As a result, it is only visited by about 1,000 people a year.

Today, Egyptian scientists are studying some of the fossils at Mansoura University using some of the latest technology, and they hope to learn more about these **amazing**⁽¹⁷⁾ whales of the desert.

*** UNESCO = The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation**
منظمة الأمم المتحدة للتعليم والعلوم والثقافة



* species

ينطق حرف **e** الأول في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق حرفي **ee** في كلمة **bee** وينطق حرفي **ci** مثل نطق [شـ **sh**] في كلمة **fish** وينطق حرف **s** الأخير مثل **z**.

Reading Skill

مهاراة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. What is the text about? عما يتحدث النص؟
2. Infer from the text what the most amazing fossils in the Fayum Depression are. استنتج من النص ما هي أكثر الحفريات في منخفض الفيوم روعة.
3. Summarise the first paragraph in two sentences. لخص الفقرة الأولى في جملتين.

Writing Skill (اجمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. Many ancient fossils are found in the Fayum Depression. توجد الكثير من الحفريات القديمة في منخفض الفيوم.
2. At Wadi al-Hitan, hundreds of fossils of ancient whales were found. تم العثور على آلاف من الحفريات القديمة لحيتان في وادي الحيتان.
3. The fossils were preserved well. كانت الحفريات محفوظة جيدًا.

لقد وجدت الحفريات القديمة لحيتان في وادي الحيتان. كانت الحفريات محفوظة جيدًا.

to find out that these whales had legs.

3. Many ancient fossils of crocodiles, turtles, and whales are found. The scientists were surprised.
2. The whale fossils.
1. Fossils at the Fayum Depression.

Answers

SB Page (8)

Black Beauty (By Anna Sewell)

The next winter was very hard for all the horses. The weather was **terrible**⁽¹⁾. There was rain every day and it was often **windy**⁽²⁾. Some of the drivers were very poor, so their horses worked all night. Other horses didn't have **stables**⁽³⁾. They stayed out all night and got wet and cold. I was **lucky**⁽⁴⁾ because Jerry was a kind **owner**⁽⁵⁾ and I was always put in a warm stable.

One day Jerry and I waited for work next to a park. I watched as an old **carriage**⁽⁶⁾ drove up next to us. It was **pulled**⁽⁷⁾ by a horse who was thin and looked tired. I looked again and saw that it was my old friend, Ginger. She looked terrible.

We talked for a short time. Ginger was very unhappy. She had had many different homes and worked very hard. All her owners were **unkind**⁽⁸⁾ to her and **treated**⁽⁹⁾ her badly. "You're my only friend," Ginger told me before her owner drove her away." I understood that I had a much better life than many other horses.



- ١- سيء
- ٢- شديد الرياح
- ٣- اسطبلات
- ٤- محظوظ
- ٥- مالك
- ٦- عربة يجرها خيول
- ٧- يجر
- ٨- قاس
- ٩- يعامل

The first **Pantheon**⁽¹⁾ in Rome was built in around 27 **BCE**⁽²⁾. * However, it was **burnt down**⁽³⁾ by a fire in around 80 **CE**⁽⁴⁾. * The building that we know today was built by **Emperor**⁽⁵⁾ Hadrian in around 120 CE. It was designed with the help of a famous **Greek builder**⁽⁶⁾, who was called **Apollodorus of Damascus**⁽⁷⁾. Perhaps the most amazing part of the building is a large hole in the **roof**⁽⁸⁾. The hole was used to give the building light. Sometimes, rain falls through the hole, too. However, today, water is taken away by **special**⁽⁹⁾ **pipes**⁽¹⁰⁾ in the floor.



- ١- بانثيون (معبد يوناني)
- ٢- قبل الميلاد
- ٣- يحترق كلياً
- ٤- بعد الميلاد
- ٥- امبراطور
- ٦- بناء يوناني
- ٧- ابولودوروس الدمشقي
- ٨- سطح مبنى
- ٩- من نوع خاص
- ١٠- أنابيب

* **BCE** = Before Common Era

* **CE** = Common Era



Audioscript

A list of the **new Seven Wonders of the World**⁽¹⁾ was made in 2007. The city of **Petra**⁽²⁾ in Jordan was **named**⁽³⁾ as one of them. **The Taj Mahal**⁽⁴⁾ in India is also in the list. This beautiful monument was built by Shah Jahan, to remember his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. Another new wonder of the world is **the Great Wall of China**⁽⁵⁾. Not many people know that the wall was built with an unusual **ingredient**⁽⁶⁾ - rice!



- ١- عجائب الدنيا السبع الجديدة
- ٢- البتراء «مدينة في الأردن»
- ٣- تم اختيارها
- ٤- تاج محل
- ٥- سور الصين العظيم
- ٦- مُكوّن / عنصر

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي وتمرينات لطالب الأزهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

Definitions

1. _____ are the remains of animals or plants that lived in the past.

- a. Species b. Fossils c. Stables d. Carriages

2. The _____ of something is how long it is.

- a. weight b. age c. colour d. length


3. A _____ is something that people travel in and it's pulled by a horse.

- a. car b. boat c. bike d. carriage

Synonyms & Antonyms

4. He is unkind; so I don't like him. "Unkind" is similar in meaning to _____.

- a. kind b. nice c. cruel d. happy

5. The hotel where we stayed was terrible. "Terrible" is an antonym of
 a. amazing b. very bad c. ugly d. expensive
6. The exam was hard and I couldn't answer it. "Hard" is a synonym of
 a. easy b. cool c. difficult d. different
7. I really enjoy warm weather. "Warm" is similar in meaning to
 a. cool b. quite hot c. rainy d. cold
8. Black Beauty was lucky because he had a kind owner. "Lucky" is an antonym of
 a. happy b. pleased c. unlucky d. unkind
9. The opposite of warm is المنا 2022
 a. rare b. hot c. soft d. cool
10. The forecast is for a **hard** winter. The synonym of "Hard" here is 
 a. difficult b. easy c. simple d. severe

Prefixes & Suffixes

11. We add the suffix to turn the word "wind" into an adjective.
 a. -ness b. -ment c. -y d. -ly
12. We add the prefix to make the opposite of happy. الوادي الجديد 2022
 a. im- b. un- c. dis- d. re-
13. We add the suffix to the verb "own" to refer to the "person".
 a. -or b. -ir c. -less d. -er
14. The suffix turns an adjective into an adverb.
 a. -ive b. -ly c. -ment d. -ion
15. The prefix turns the word "lucky" into its opposite meaning.
 a. dis- b. un- c. ir- d. im-
16. We add "....." to the word "national" to give the opposite.
 a. pre- b. un- c. dis- d. inter-

Guessing the meaning

17. If you are nice to someone, this means you them well. SB
 a. hurt b. punish c. treat d. hate
18. If something is, it is kept safe, so it is not damaged or destroyed.
 a. preserved b. thrown c. burnt d. killed
19. The village is 80 km from the nearest city. This means that it is SB
 a. long b. close c. remote d. nearby

20. The horse is in the stable. This means that the horse is now.

- a. working b. learning c. sleeping d. studying

21. There are many are found in Fayum Depression. These are bones of animals.

- a. owners b. fossils c. cars d. bags

القليوبية 2024

22. The village is very It takes three hours to drive there from the nearest city.

- a. near b. connected c. remote d. awesome

المطمية 2023



Language

1- The past simple passive (without by)

المبنى للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

Agent (نائب فاعل) + was / were + التصريف الثالث للفعل

- لاحظ طريقة تحويل الجملة من المبنى للمعلوم للمبنى للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط بدون ذكر الفاعل.

١- نبدأ الجملة الجديدة بمفعول الجملة المبنية للمعلوم ويصبح نائب فاعل.

٢- نضيف قبل الفعل **verb to be (was/were)** في الماضي حسب الفاعل الجديد.

٣- نضع الفعل الأساسي في التصريف الثالث **past participle**.

Ex. Scientists **discovered** that these whales belong to the same family of animals as camels and giraffes. (Active)

- It **was discovered** that these whales belong to the same family of animals as camels and giraffes. (Passive)

2- The past simple passive (with by)

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول مع وجود (by) آخر الجملة عندما نريد التركيز على الشخص أو الشيء الذي قام بالفعل. في هذه الحالة تكون الصيغة كالآتي:

فاعل + by + التصريف الثالث للفعل + Agent (نائب فاعل)

Ex. Scientists **found** hundreds of fossils of ancient whales in 1902. (Active)

- Hundreds of fossils of ancient whales **were found by scientists** in 1902. (Passive)

Negative النفي

(Active) مفعول + didn't + inf + فاعل

(Passive) فاعل + by + التصريف الثالث للفعل + was/were + not + (نائب فاعل) Agent

verb to be (wasn't / weren't)

Ex. Trees didn't surround the school. (Active)

- The school wasn't surrounded by trees. (Passive)

لاحظ اذا كانت الجملة المبنيّة للمعلوم منفية فذلك تكون الجملة المبنيّة للمجهول منفية لكن باستخدام

Ex. They didn't damage the monuments. (Active)

-The monuments weren't damaged. (Passive)

Question السؤال

(Active)مفعول + inf. + فاعل + Did + (كلمة استفهام)

(Passive)فاعل + by + past participle + نائب فاعل + Was / Were + (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Did millions of tourists visit Egypt? (Active)

- Was Egypt visited by millions of tourists? (Passive)

Ex. When did they visit the Cairo Tower? (Active)

- When was the Cairo Tower visited by them? (Passive)

Notes

١- لاحظ اذا كان هناك فعل ناقص في الجملة المبنيّة للمعلوم (could / would / should) فعند التحويل للمبني للمجهول نستبدل was / were بـ be:

فاعل + by + التصريف الثالث للفعل + be + الفعل الناقص + (نائب فاعل) Agent

Ex. We could play football here. (Active)

- Football could be played here. (Passive)

وعند النفي نضع not (n't) بعد الفعل الناقص.

Ex. Football couldn't be played here. (Passive)

٢- عند تحويل سؤال يبدأ بـ (Who) إلى المبني للمجهول:

Ex. Who invented the telephone? (Active)

لاحظ أن الفعل جاء مباشرة بعد (Who) وعند التحويل نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Who + was / were + نائب فاعل + p.p. + by?

Ex. Who was the telephone invented by? (Passive)

٣- الفرق بين استخدام حرف الجر (by - with) مع المبني للمجهول:

By → الشخص / الشيء المسئول عن الفعل

Ex. Trees were blown down by the wind.

With → الأداة - المادة - المكونات المستخدمة من قبل الفاعل

Ex. The Great Wall of China was built **with** rice.

SB 7

ع- حرف الجر (**with**) غالباً يأتي مع أفعال مثل (**Crowd - Fill**):

Ex. The lake is filled **with** the blue water of the Red Sea.

SB 4

ه- تستخدم حروف الجر (**by - in - with**) مع الفعل (**Cover**):

Ex. Their bodies are covered **by** fur.

SB 10

Ex. Roofs will be covered **in** solar panels.

SB 60

Exercises on Language

- يوجد تمارين إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

- The Great Wall of China (is) built with rice. SB
- Whales with legs were (find) by some researchers. SB
- The Taj Mahal was (building) by Shah Jahan. SB
- A list of the new Seven Wonders (made) in 2007. SB
- Fossils (were studying) at Wadi al-Hitan by a team of scientists. SB
- Wadi al-Hitan (visited) by about 1000 people last year. SB
- Animal fossils (found) in the Fayum Depression many years ago. SB
- This house (build) years ago by a famous engineer. أنتاشا في الخارج 2023
- She came late, so she (punish). البحيرة 2022
- The news (be) watched by Omar yesterday. سوهاج 2023
- The Pyramids (build) thousands of years ago. القليوبية 2023
- The Green Wall Initiative (set) up in 2007 by the African Union. الشرقية 2024
- Who was the room (clean) by? الفيوم 2024

Longman Exercises

- The unusual cave (cause) by the sea years ago.
- When was your younger brother (bore)?
- Who (did) this nice photograph taken by?
- When was Petra (name) as one of the new Seven Wonders of the World?
- Rami (isn't) punished yesterday; he wasn't mistaken.

Bit by Bit Exercises

19. Bridges and roads (is designed) by great engineers in the past.
20. In the past rubbish (take away) to remote places.
21. I (surprised) by the present that my friends gave me.
22. Many buildings (are damaged) by the earthquake last month.
23. The carriage was (pull) by one horse.
24. Who (invented this machine) by?
25. Did you go to party? No, I (not invite).
26. My car (break) down last week.
27. The old Man and the Sea (write) by Ernest Hemingway in 1952.
28. The Football World Cup (win) by France in 2018.
29. The pancakes were made (of) Bassant. They were made
..... (by) eggs, flour and milk.



General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



- يوجد تمارين إضافية للواجب المنزلي وتمارين لطلاب الأزهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

stable - was treated - owners - train - treated - carriage

"Black Beauty" is a story about a black horse. This horse had very hard times. He
① badly by most of his ② He had to pull a ③ and he went
fast through the crowded streets. The weather was usually terrible. He was lucky as
he had a ④ to sleep in. Other horses didn't have a place to stay in.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is a group of animals, plants or birds of the same kind. أسبوط 2024
 a. Fossils b. Remains c. Species d. Grasses
2. The antonym of the word "near" is أيناً في الخارج 2023
 a. remote b. close c. closed d. hereabouts
3. "....." means kept safe from being damaged.
 a. Passed b. Preserved c. Revised d. Destroyed
4. "Lucky" is similar in meaning to ".....".
 a. cruel b. different c. fortunate d. cool

5. We turn the verb amaze into an adjective by using the suffix

- a. -ing b. -ly c. -y d. -able

6. There are different species of plants and animals in rainforests. "Species" here is a synonym for ".....".

- a. places b. numbers c. tips d. kinds

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The stadium (not build) in 2005. WB
2. Our flat (is) burnt last month, so we moved to a new one.
3. The statue of the Sphinx (make) like a lion with a person's head. WB
4. The Cairo Tower (designed) by Naoum Shebib in 1956.
5. The Railway Children (write) by an English woman in 1905.
6. When I was ill last month, I (take) to a hospital in Cairo.
7. Which buildings (build) near your home last year?

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about working animals"

مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What kind of work do working animals do?
- How is it difficult for them?
- How should we treat animals?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- They had to work
- They didn't have
- We should treat the working animals.....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 9-11 WB pages 74-76

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في ملحق الكتاب.

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



fur	فراء / فرو	confused	مرتبك / متحير
population	تعداد السكان	label	ملصق / بطاقة (معلومات)
endangered	مهدد بالانقراض	lifestyle	أسلوب حياة
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	skills	مهارات
active	نشيط	personification	تجسيد / تشخيص
appearance	مظهر / شكل خارجي	mongoose	حيوان النمس



Vocabulary

directions	اتجاهات	loss (n)	خسارة / فقد
traffic lights	إشارات المرور	level	مستوى
roundabout	دوران / ملتقى دائري	role	دور
turning	منعطف	aim	هدف
several	عديد	heading	عنوان رئيسي
wild	البرية - بري	forest fires	حرائق الغابات
clarification	توضيح	avoid (ed)	يتجنب
tongue-twister	جملة صعبة النطق	endanger (ed)	يعرض للخطر
seashells	أصداف بحرية	hunt (ed)	يصاد
fighting	قتال / شجار	form (ed)	يشكل
volcano	بركان	deliver (ed)	يوصل - يسلم إلى
products	منتجات	control (ed)	يتحكم في
app (application)	تطبيق (علي الهاتف)	discuss (ed)	يناقش
mainly	بشكل رئيسي / إلى حد بعيد		



Definitions

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

active	نشيط	someone who is active can move and do things easily ⁽¹⁾	1- بسهولة
confused	مرتبك / متحير	unable to understand something clearly ⁽²⁾	2- بوضوح
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	the cutting down of trees in a large area, or the destruction ⁽³⁾ of forests by people	3- تدمير
fur	فراء / فرو	the thick hair that covers the body of an animal	4- يوضح / يفسر
label	ملصق	a word or phrase to explain ⁽⁴⁾ things in a picture, diagram ⁽⁵⁾ , etc.	5- رسم بياني
mongoose	حيوان النمس	a small animal with a long body and tail, which lives in Africa and Asia ⁽⁶⁾	6- قارة آسيا

Synonyms & Antonyms

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
confused	مرتبك	puzzled		clear	واضح
skill	مهارة	talent		inability	عدم القدرة
different	مختلف	unlike		the same	نفس الشيء
thick	كثيف/سميك	dense / heavy		thin / fine	رفيق/ناعم
active	نشط	energetic		lazy	كسول
several	عديد	many		few	قليل
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	logging		afforestation / reforestation	التشجير

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

يوجد شرح لبادئات ولواحق الكلمات في مقدمة الكتاب

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
en-	n → v تحول الاسم إلى الفعل	endanger يعرض للخطر
de-	removing something إزالة شيء	deforestation إزالة الغابات
-ion	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	population / personification / direction السكان / تشخيص / اتجاه
-ed	v → adj تحول الفعل إلى الصفة	confused / coloured / endangered مرتبك / ملون / معرض للخطر
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الحال	mainly أساساً
-ness	adj → n تحول الصفة إلى اسم	happiness سعادة

Expressions & Prepositions

give an example يعطى مثال	in the wild في البرية
a different way/another way بطريقة أخرى	look after يعتنى بـ
I see فهمت	on the sea shore على شاطئ البحر
sound like يبدو كأنه	stay for about يبقى لحوالى
such as مثل	up to 10 years يصل إلى عمر 10 سنوات
has a role to play لديه دوراً ليقوم به	(be) able to قادر على
because of بسبب	famous for مشهور بـ
in the 1800s في بداية القرن التاسع عشر	

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة في آخر الكتاب

Present

hear	يسمع
fight	يتقاتل/يتشاجر
bite	يعض
sell	يبيع
catch	يصطاد - يمسك
mean	يعنى/يقصد

Past simple

heard	heard
fought	fought
bit	bitten
sold	sold
caught	caught
meant	meant

Past Participle

heard	heard
fought	fought
bitten	bitten
sold	sold
caught	caught
meant	meant



Language Notes

1) the young / the poor

تستخدم **the** ويليهما بعض الصفات لتعني فئة من الناس.

• **the young** صغار السن

Ex. We should encourage **the young** to do sports.

• **the poor** الفقراء

Ex. The charity aims to help **the poor**.

the rich الأغنياء / **the blind** المكفوفين / **the deaf** الصم
/ **the dumb** البكم / **the elderly** كبار السن

2) Adjective + -ed / -ing

نستخدم الصفات التي تنتهي بـ **(ed)** لتصف من / ما يشعر بالصفة أما الصفات التي تنتهي بـ **(ing)** تصف مسبب الصفة.

• **confused** مرتبك / متحير

Ex. Although the questions were **confusing**, I wasn't **confused**.

• **confusing** مُربك / مُحير

• **amazed** مندهش

Ex. The students were **amazed** by the **amazing** pictures in the book.

• **amazing** مذهش

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all should help _____.

a. poor

b. rich

c. the poor

d. the rich

2. I didn't know what to do, the situation was _____.

a. confused

b. confusing

c. amazed

d. interested



Audioscript

SB Page (9)

استمع إلى النصوص



Samir : I like the way the writer uses **personification**⁽¹⁾ to describe the horses.

Taha : Personification? I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean by that.

Samir : I mean that she makes the horses **sound like**⁽²⁾ people.

Taha : Could you give me an example?

Samir : Yes, for example, the writer calls the horses "I" or "she" not "it" and she talks about the horses' **feelings**⁽³⁾. I think the writer is trying to make you feel that you and the horses are not very different species.



١- تجسيد / تشخيص
٢- يبدو كأنه
٣- مشاعر

- Taha** : When you say "not very different species", do you mean the writer thinks that people and horses are the same?
- Samir** : Yes. *Humans⁽⁴⁾ and horses are on the same level⁽⁵⁾. Do you see what I mean?*
- Taha** : No, I'm still *confused⁽⁶⁾*. Could you say that another way?
- Samir** : OK. I feel that personification makes us understand the horses better. We can all feel happy or sad.
- Taha** : Ah, I see. I understand that now.

٤- البشر
٥- على نفس المستوى
٦- مرتبك / متحير

SB Page (9)

1 Asking for *directions⁽¹⁾*

- Man 1** : So, cross the road at the *traffic lights⁽²⁾*, and then, just before the bridge, you'll get to a *roundabout⁽³⁾*.
- Man 2** : I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by roundabout?
- Man 1** : Oh, you know, it's a circle in the road where there are four roads meet. Take the second road, in other words, *go straight ahead⁽⁴⁾*.
- Man 2** : Sorry. I'm still confused. Could you say that in another way? Do I take the second road, or go straight ahead?
- Man 1** : Sorry, what I mean is, don't take the first *turning⁽⁵⁾*, take the second one, which is also the road straight ahead of you.

١- اتجاهات
٢- إشارات المرور
٣- ملتقى دائري / دوران
٤- سر بشكل مستقيم
٥- منعطف
٦- تطبيق «على الهاتف»
٧- عادات

2 Explaining how something works

- Randa** : This is an amazing *app⁽⁶⁾*! It can name any plant you want to find out about. You just need to take a photo of it.
- Nihal** : I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean. Could you say it another way?
- Randa** : OK, let's say you see a plant that you want to know the name of. You just take a photo of it on your phone, and then choose find, and the app will tell you the name of the plant.

3 Discussing an opinion

- Boy 1** : The problem isn't just that animals' habitats are disappearing. The problem is they are disappearing because of our bad *habits⁽⁷⁾*!
- Boy 2** : When you say our bad habits, do you mean what we are doing?
- Boy 1** : Yes. I mean that it's because we want certain products so badly, we are prepared to destroy our environment to get them.
- Boy 2** : Can you give me an example?
- Boy 1** : We are destroying forests to build more roads, for example.



Reading

SB page (10)



Introduction

There are about 30 different species of **mongooses**⁽¹⁾ in the world.

Appearance

A mongoose has a long body, with short legs and a long **tail**⁽²⁾. Their bodies are covered by **thick fur**^{(3)*}.

Skills

Mongooses can see and hear very well, which helps them to find food and **avoid**⁽⁴⁾ danger. Mongooses are famous for **fighting**⁽⁵⁾ snakes. They are able to kill snakes by **biting**⁽⁶⁾ them.

Habitat

The mongoose is found in Africa, **Asia**^{(7)*} and parts of **Europe**⁽⁸⁾. It lives in forests, wetlands or grasslands, under the ground or rocks. In the 1800s, mongooses were taken to live in **several**⁽⁹⁾ islands in **Hawaii**⁽¹⁰⁾ and the **Caribbean**⁽¹¹⁾ to control the **rat populations**⁽¹²⁾ there. However, they are **endangered**⁽¹³⁾, mainly because of **deforestation**⁽¹⁴⁾ and **loss of habitat**⁽¹⁵⁾.

Mongooses eat small animals such as rats, birds, frogs and **lizards**⁽¹⁶⁾, and also seeds, eggs and **nuts**⁽¹⁷⁾.

Lifestyle

Mongooses are **active**⁽¹⁸⁾ during the day and sleep at night. Although some live alone, many live in large groups of **up to 50**⁽¹⁹⁾, where each one has a **role**⁽²⁰⁾ to play: some **hunt**⁽²¹⁾ and others look after the young. They can live for up to ten years in **the wild**⁽²²⁾.

* **fur*** **Asia**ينطق حرفي **ur** في كلمة **fur** كما ينطق في كلمة **burn**ينطق حرف **a** الأول في هذه الكلمة كما ينطق في كلمة **make** وينطقحرفي **si** إما مثل حرفي **sh** في **fish** أو مثل نطق **s** في **usually**

- ١- حيوان النمس
- ٢- ذيل
- ٣- فراء سميك
- ٤- يتجنب
- ٥- قتال
- ٦- عض
- ٧- قارة آسيا
- ٨- قارة أوروبا
- ٩- عديد
- ١٠- جزر هاواي
- ١١- منطقة الكاريبي
- ١٢- تعداد الفئران
- ١٣- مهدد بالانقراض
- ١٤- إزالة الغابات
- ١٥- خسارة / فقدان
- الموطن
- ١٦- سحالي
- ١٧- مكسرات
- ١٨- نشيط
- ١٩- يصل إلى عمر ٥٠
- ٢٠- دور
- ٢١- يصطاد
- ٢٢- البرية

SB Page (11)

Much of the south of England is a coastal habitat next to the sea. Today, sheep and cows enjoy the green grassland where they can eat. However, 250 million years ago, part of this coast was very different. It was then a hot, wetland habitat where animals like crocodiles lived in the wet land. We know this because hundreds of fossils are often found here. *Many of them are very well preserved, so scientists can study many species of animals from long ago.*

Hania : The sentence in this poem⁽¹⁾ is a tongue-twister⁽²⁾.

Malak : Tongue-twister? I'm sorry, but I'm not sure⁽³⁾ I understand what you mean by that.

Hania : I mean that it is very difficult to say.

Malak : Could you give me an example?

Hania : Yes, I'll read it: She sells seashells⁽⁴⁾ on the sea shore⁽⁵⁾.

Malak : So when you say it's a tongue-twister, do you mean the letters in the words are all the same?

Hania : They aren't all the same, but they are hard to read.

Malak : No, I'm still⁽⁶⁾ confused. Could you say that another way⁽⁷⁾?

Hania : OK. In a tongue-twister, the words are hard to say together quickly.

Malak : Ah, I see⁽⁸⁾. I understand that now.



- ١- قصيدة
- ٢- صعبة النطق
- ٣- لست متأكد
- ٤- أصداف بحرية
- ٥- شاطئ
- ٦- مازلت
- ٧- بطريقة أخرى
- ٨- فهمت

Caracals

1- Appearance

The caracal⁽¹⁾ is a beautiful gold-coloured⁽²⁾ wildcat⁽³⁾ with large ears. Caracals are not very big – they grow to about 90 centimetres long.

2- Skills

Caracals' large ears help them to hear very well. They also have a lot of fur on their feet, which makes it difficult for other animals to hear them when they are trying to catch⁽⁴⁾ them. Caracals can also jump very high and are able to climb trees.

3- Habitat

Caracals are found in many places in Africa and the Middle East⁽⁵⁾. They live in deserts, but also in grasslands and forests.

4- Food

Caracals catch and eat many animals, including⁽⁶⁾ mongooses, birds and rabbits.

5- Lifestyle

Caracals are usually active during⁽⁷⁾ the night and most live alone. Mother caracals often live in holes that are made by other animals. Caracals usually have between three and six babies (called kittens⁽⁸⁾), who stay with their mother for about ten months. Caracals can live for up to⁽⁹⁾ 12 years in the wild.



- ١- حيوان عناق الأرض
- ٢- ذهبي اللون
- ٣- قطبة برية
- ٤- يصطاد
- ٥- بما في ذلك / مشتملاً على
- ٦- أثناء
- ٧- هريرة
- ٨- «قطعة صغيرة»
- ٩- يصل إلى
- ٩- الشرق الأوسط

Reading Skill

مهاراة القراءة (الإجابات أسفل)

1. The passage is mainly about

- a. mongooses b. caracals
c. wildcats d. rabbits

2. Infer from the text why this animal can hear well.

استنتج من النص لماذا يمكن لهذا الحيوان أن يسمع بشكل جيد.

3. Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence.

لخص الفقرة الأخيرة في جملة واحدة.

Writing Skill (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. The caracal is a wildcat.

حيوان عناق الأرض هو قط بري.

2. It has large ears.

له أذنان كبيرتان.

3. It has a lot of fur on their feet.

له فرو كثيف على قدميه.

4. It lives in deserts, grasslands and forests.

يعيش في الصحراء والبيئة العشبية والغابات.

3. Caracals live in holes. They can live up to 12 years in the wild.

لحيوان عناق الأرض

2. It has large ears.

1. b) caracals.

Answers

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- يوجد تمارينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي وتمارينات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

Definitions

1. is the cutting down of trees in a large area, or the destruction of forests by people. حفر الشيخ 2023 / Longman

- a. Pollution b. Deforestation c. Population d. Direction

2. Someone who is can move and do things easily.

- a. lazy b. confused c. active d. alone

3. is the thick hair that covers the body of an animal. Longman

- a. Fossil b. Fur c. Beak d. Jacket

Synonyms & Antonyms

4. "Skill" is similar in meaning to

- a. talent b. inability c. difficulty d. danger

5. "Active" is an antonym of

- a. fast b. quick c. lazy d. hard

6. There are many different types of clothes. "Different" is similar in meaning to

- a. the same b. similar c. unlike d. alike

7. The word "several" and the word "....." have the same meaning.

- a. many b. little c. few d. no

8. Mongooses' bodies are covered by thick fur. "Thick" is an antonym of
 a. big b. large c. huge d. thin
9. The antonym of "deforestation" is
 a. logging b. desertification c. afforestation d. station
10. The noun from the verb "lose" is
 a. loss b. loose c. lost d. lossy



Prefixes & Suffixes

11. We turn the verb "confuse" into an adjective by using the suffix
 a. -ly b. -ed c. -an d. -ion
12. We turn the noun "danger" into a verb by adding the prefix
 a. in- b. on- c. en- d. un-

Guessing the meaning

13. Waleed has the ability to do things well. He has a
 a. marathon b. link c. skill d. distance
14. Could you say that another way? This means I'm
 a. frightened b. endangered c. bored d. confused
15. She always has an attractive This means she always looks beautiful.
 a. population b. deforestation c. direction d. appearance
16. Muhammad has healthy food and does sports. This means that he has a healthy
 a. house b. lifestyle c. manager d. word
17. She sells sea shells on the sea shore. This sentence represents a
 a. simile b. tongue-twister
 c. personification d. metaphor

SB

البحيرة 2022



Speaking

1) Expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification.

التعبير عن عدم اكتمال الفهم وطلب التوضيح.

- تستخدم العبارات التالية لطلب التوضيح

- I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by that.
- آسف، لكنني غير متأكد ماذا تقصد بذلك.
- I'm still confused. Could you say that another way?
- مازلت متحير. هل يمكنك قول ذلك بطريقة أخرى؟
- When you say.....do you mean.....?
- عندما تقول هل تقصد؟
- Could you give an example?
- هل يمكن أن تعطيني مثالاً؟
- Ah, I see. I understand that now.
- فهمت. لقد فهمت الآن.

2) Asking for and giving directions

السؤال عن الاتجاهات والإجابة
- نسأل ونجيب عن الاتجاهات كالآتي:

Question

- How do I get from....to?
كيف يمكنني الذهاب من إلى؟
- Excuse me, how do I go to the.....?
من فضلك، كيف يمكنني الذهاب إلى.....؟
- How do I get from the school to the supermarket?
كيف يمكنني الذهاب من المدرسة إلى السوبر ماركت؟

Answer

- Take the second turning/ turn right / turn left /go straight ahead. It's on the corner.
خذ المنعطف الثاني / استدر يمينا / استدر يساراً / انطلق للأمام مباشرة. إنه عند الناصية.
- Take the second turning, the supermarket is next to the bank.
خذ المنعطف الثاني، السوبر ماركت بجوار البنك.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



- يوجد تمارين إضافية للواجب المنزلي وتمارين لطلاب الأزهر الشريف في ملحق الكتاب

1) Finish the following dialogue:

Sohaila and Jana are talking in the library.

Sohaila : Hello Jana, what are you doing here?

Jana : Hello Sohaila, ①

Sohaila : Reading a book! ②

Jana : It's about the Pyramids of Giza.

Sohaila : ③

Jana : They were built by Ancient Egyptian.

Sohaila : Have you ever visited them?

Jana : ④

Sohaila : When did you visit them?

Jana : ⑤

Sohaila : That's great.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

avoid - endangered - found - fur - keep - are found

I have read an interesting book about mongooses. They have long bodies and short legs. Their bodies are covered by thick ① They can see and hear very well, which helps them to ② danger. They ③ in Africa. They are ④ because of deforestation and loss of habitat.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. means unable to understand something clearly.
a. Confused b. Endangered c. Included d. Produced
2. My new manager can move and do things easily. This means he's
a. lazy b. active c. weak d. sad
3. Mongooses are active during the day and sleep at night. "Active" is opposite in meaning to
a. lazy b. fast c. careless d. strong
4. A mongoose has a long body, with short legs and a long tail. Its body is covered by thick
a. skin b. bones c. fur d. leather
5. The is a small animal with a long body and tail.
a. turtle b. orangutan c. frog d. mongoose
6. Fur is the short, "**fine**" hair of an animal. "fine" has a similar meaning to
a. fat b. tall c. thin d. thick
7. We turn the noun "danger" into an adjective by adding
a. -ous b. en- c. in- d. -er

Longman

Longman

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about an amazing animal"

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- What is the name of this animal?
- What is special about it?
- Where does it live?
- What does it look like?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- This animal is called
- It has a
- It is found in
- It eats

Key Vocabulary

fossils	حفريات	depression	منخفض	skills	مهارات
species	فصيلة / نوع	fur	فراء / فرو	oasis (oases)	واحة (واحات)
length	طول	population	تعداد السكان	lifestyle	أسلوب حياة
remote	بعيد	endangered	مهدد بالانقراض	preserve (d)	يحفظ / يصون
shape	شكل / قالب	deforestation	إزالة الغابات	protect (ed)	يحمي
personification	تجسيد	active	نشط	fill (ed)	يملأ
depression	مُنْخَفَض	appearance	مظهر	surround (ed)	يحيط بـ / يطوق
owner	مالك	confused	مرتبك / متحير	treat (ed)	يعامل
stable	استبل	label	ملصق		
wonder	عجوبة - إعجاب - تعجب	preserved (adj)	محمي / محفوظ		
carriage	عربة يجرها خيل				

Natural habitats

coastal habitat	بيئة ساحلية	wetland habitat	بيئة أرض رطبة (مستنقع)
grassland habitat	بيئة عشبية	desert habitat	بيئة صحراوية
polar habitat	بيئة قطبية	forest habitat	بيئة الغابات
rainforest habitat	بيئة غابات مطيرة	mountain habitat	بيئة جبلية

Animals

turtle	سلحفاة	orangutan	إنسان الغاب
caracal	حيوان عنق الأرض (الكراكال)	frog	ضفدع
polar bear	الدب القطبي	mongoose	حيوان النموس

Language

1- The present simple passive المبني للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط

تتكون الجملة في المبني للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط كالتالي:

فاعل + (by) + past participle + is / am / are + (نائب فاعل) Agent

Ex. Some people play football in the club.

- Football is played in the club.

(Active)

(Passive)

Negative النفيAgent (نائب فاعل) + am / is / are + **not** + past participle + by + فاعلEx. Omar **doesn't do** sport.

(Active)

- Sport **isn't done** by Omar.

(Passive)

Question السؤال

Am / Is / Are + نائب فاعل + past participle. + by + فاعل (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Does your brother **speak** English?

(Active)

- Is English **spoken** by your brother?

(Passive)

2- The past simple passive

المبنى للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط

تتكون الجملة في المبنى للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط كالتالي:

Agent (نائب فاعل) + was/were + past participle + by + فاعل

Ex. Adel **phoned** me yesterday.

(Active)

- I **was phoned** by Adel yesterday.

(Passive)

Negative النفيAgent (نائب فاعل) + was/were + **not** + past participle + by + فاعلEx. Trees **didn't surround** the school.

(Active)

- The school **wasn't surrounded** by trees.

(Passive)

Question السؤال

Do / Does + فاعل + inf. + مفعول? (كلمة استفهام)

(Active)

Am / Is / Are + نائب فاعل + التصريف الثالث للفعل + by + فاعل (كلمة استفهام)

(Passive)

Ex. Do millions of tourists **visit** Egypt?

(Active)

- Is Egypt **visited** by millions of tourists?

(Passive)

1) Expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification.

التعبير عن عدم اكتمال وطلب التوضيح.

- تستخدم العبارات التالية لطلب التوضيح

- I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by that.

- I'm still confused. Could you say that another way?

- When you say.....do you mean.....?

- Ah, I see. I understand that now.

2 Asking for and giving directions

السؤال عن الاتجاهات والإجابة
- نسأل ونجيب عن الاتجاهات كالآتي:

Question

- How do I get from....to?
- Excuse me, how do I go to the.....?
- How do I get from the school to the supermarket?

Answer

- Take the second turning/ turn right / turn left /go straight ahead. It's on the corner.
- Take the second turning, the supermarket is next to the bank.

General Exercises on Unit 7

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Malak and Noha are talking about a trip to Wadi Al-Hitan.

الغربية 2022

Noha : Have you heard of Wadi Al-Hitan?

Malak : ① Many ancient fossils are found there.

Noha : ② ?

Malak : It is in the Fayoum Depression, southwest of Cairo.

Noha : Do you think it is a good place to visit?

Malak : ③ ?

Noha : There will be a school trip there next mid-year holiday. We could go together.

Malak : How much does it cost?

Noha : ④ ?

Malak : That is not expensive. ⑤ ?

Noha : No, I haven't told my parents about it yet. I am sure they will agree.

Malak : If our parents agree, I think we can join this school trip.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1 find - live- fur - catch - found - teeth

I have read a book about caracals. They're amazing animals. They have a lot of ① on their feet, which makes it difficult for other animals to hear them when they are trying to ② them. Caracals are ③ in many places in Africa and the Middle East. Caracals can ④ for up to 12 years in the wild.

2 lay - turtles - preserving - rainforests - lie - preserved

Longman

Animals live in different habitats. These habitats are well ① Grasslands provide habitats for animals like the caracal. The ② are home to more than half of the world's animals. Sea ③ live in the sea. They come to land to ④ their eggs.

3 mountains - tourists - Citadel - built - wonders - were built

Longman



Egypt is rich in its great civilisation. There are some wonderful man-made ①
The Great Pyramids and the ② of Qaitbay are two excellent examples. These
places ③ a very long time ago. They attract ④ from all over the world.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is an area in the desert where you can find water.
a. forest b. oasis c. ocean d. garden
2. We should protect our tourist places. To get the noun from the verb "protect," add the suffix.
a. -ment b. -ity c. -ation d. -ion
3. She seemed very happy. To change "happy" into a noun, delete "y" and add ".....".
a. -ness b. -iness c. -ity d. -ment
4. The turtle lives near the sea. This means that it lives in a habitat.
a. polar b. desert c. coastal d. forest
5. Hanaa was named one of the cleverest girls. "Named" here means
a. surname b. nickname c. chosen d. shouted

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This school (built) five years ago. SB
2. These trees (plant) by clever school boys last summer.
3. Who (break) the glass of this window? SB
4. It is a nice photo; it (take) by my brother two days ago. SB
5. The National Park (visit) by many people a year. بنى سويف 2023
6. Our house (has been built) in 2005. Longman
7. The high heat (cause) the forest fires last month. SB

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a visit to an Egyptian natural wonder"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- What is this place called?
- Where is it in Egypt?
- What is special about it?
- What did you do there?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- I visited
- It is in
- There are.....
- I took many photos.



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Youssef and Omar are talking about deforestation.

القاهرة 2024

Youssef : Hello, Omar. What are you doing now?

Omar : I'm reading about ①

Youssef : ②?

Omar : Deforestation means that there are fewer trees in rainforests.

Youssef : Is it dangerous for the environment?

Omar : ③ It damages the natural habitat of many animals.

Youssef : That's too bad.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

believed - million - wonders - believes - Desert

Egypt has some wonders. The Great Sand Sea is one of these ① This is a part of the Western ②, and here you can find lots of big sand mountains and some unusual glass. It is ③ that the glass is more than 29 ④ years old.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Horses are beautiful animals. People like to watch horses because they are very attractive. Horses have long legs, and big eyes that can see almost all the way around them. Horses can live up to 20 or 25 years. Sometimes people can tell how old a horse is by looking at its teeth! Horses generally sleep standing up. They only need about three hours of sleep per day! For food, horses eat foods such as grass, hay, corn, apples, and carrots.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do people like watching horses?

2. How do people know the age of a horse?

3. How long can a horse live?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to

a. horses b. people c. eyes d. legs

5. Horses need to sleep about hours per day.

a. 4 b. 2 c. 3 d. 5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are amazing of dinosaurs in the Science Museum.
 a. products b. fossils c. pipes d. lighthouses
2. Siwa is a very famous in Egypt.
 a. oases b. lake c. oasis d. valley
3. That lake was hundreds of years ago by a volcano. SB
 a. formed b. form c. forms d. forming
4. Rice in Egypt by farmers.
 a. grow b. were grown c. grows d. is grown

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A great project (achieve) in Egypt last year.
2. The park (take) its name from the mountain.
3. English (teach) at our school.

6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

"An invention"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al Azhar Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A Vocabulary

SB & WB Exercises

1. My grandfather always fruit in a jar with sugar and water.
 a. throws b. preserves c. destroys d. pays
2. The farmer keeps his horses in a next to his house.
 a. table b. tape c. tap d. stable
3. Who is the of this car? It should not be parked here.
 a. officer b. owner c. teacher d. loser
4. Could you me an example?
 a. give b. take c. keep d. hand
5. have green areas between deserts and mountains.
 a. Wetlands b. Coasts c. Seas d. Grasslands

Longman Exercises

6. Alexandria is a big _____ city on the Mediterranean Sea.
 a. deserted b. farm c. coastal d. desert
7. Oh! Your shirt isn't different; it's the _____ as mine.
 a. like b. same c. similar d. difference
8. Gebel Elba is unusually green and _____ to many animals and birds.
 a. home b. delta c. valley d. well
9. A _____ is a large area of water surrounded by land.
 a. desert b. lake c. hell d. mountain
10. The people in that destroyed village aren't safe; they are _____.
 a. in peace b. in danger c. in fact d. in short
11. Unfortunately, we didn't win the match; we _____ it.
 a. lost b. disappeared c. avoided d. earned

Bit by Bit Exercises

12. The river is 10 kilometers in _____.
 a. weight b. age c. length d. colour
13. Our school is _____ by trees.
 a. happened b. surrounded c. included d. interested
14. A: What _____ is the table? B: It's round.
 a. colour b. shape c. time d. size
15. The mongoose's body is covered by thick _____.
 a. feather b. fur c. screen d. leather
16. There is always a lot of water in a _____ habitat.
 a. grassland b. desert c. wetland d. forest
17. _____ students usually get high marks.
 a. Lazy b. Active c. Dangerous d. Modern

B Language

18. The Pyramids _____ by a lot of tourists every year.
 a. are visited b. visited c. is visiting d. are visiting
19. Who was the watch _____ by?
 a. invent b. invents c. inventing d. invented
20. The national park _____ by many people every year. SB
 a. visited b. visits c. is visited d. was visiting
21. Every year eggs _____ laid by turtles on the beach. SB
 a. are b. is c. was d. would
22. My grandfather's house _____ in around 1850. WB
 a. build b. is built c. was built d. built

Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

1- "A review of a visit to a natural wonder in Egypt" (Lessons 1 & 2)

Last week, our school went on a fantastic trip. We visited one of Egypt's natural wonders. It is called Gebel Elba. It is a national park that is surrounded by grasslands. It is located between the Red Sea coast and the mountains. It took its name from the mountain in the middle of it. We saw many endangered species of animals. The park is home to many animals and birds. As it isn't easy to reach, not many people visit it. Its location should help to protect the wildlife there.

2- "A short story about working animals" (Lessons 3 & 4)

I've just read a story. It was about working animals. They were a buffalo, a camel, a dog and a horse. They had to work day and night. The buffalo had to work on a farm. The camel carried people and heavy things. It didn't have time to rest. The dog had to guard a house. The horse had to pull a carriage. The horse's owner didn't give it enough food. When the animals got sick their owners treated them well. Finally, the author gave us a great message about how we should treat animals.

3- "A short story about an amazing animal" (Lessons 5 & 6)

I have read a story about an amazing animal. It is called the caracal. It is a beautiful gold-coloured wild cat. Once, it

wanted to hunt for food. It went at night.

There was a rabbit so the caracal walked slowly towards it. The rabbit couldn't hear the caracal because it had a lot of fur on its feet. This made it difficult for other animals to hear it. The caracal caught the rabbit and took it to its hole. It was a nice meal for the caracal's little kittens.

4- An invention (Al Azhar)

In the past, people faced a lot of troubles washing clothes. The first washing machine was invented in 1846. The water used in the wash was cold, so people warmed it on a fire. The first electric washing machine was designed in 1908. It was more useful because it could warm water. Today, all the hard work is done for us while we sit and relax.

5- "A short story you have read" (Test)

I have read an amazing story. It's called "Black Beauty". It is about the life of a working horse. Black Beauty had many owners. Some of them were kind but others were cruel. Black Beauty had to work in crowded streets. Although Beauty worked day and night, he was lucky to stay in a warm stable. Some horses weren't lucky to have one. Ginger, it was Black Beauty's best friend. She worked for unkind owners. They made her work hard and they didn't give her enough food. Black Beauty met her one day and they talked. Beauty realized that he had a much better life than many other horses.



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue

Amina is talking to Safaa about a natural wonder.

WB

Amina : I visited Wadi al -Weshwashy last week.

Safaa : ①

Amina : It's a natural wonder.

Safaa : ②

Amina : It's on the way to South Sinai.

Safaa : What did you see there?

Amina : ③

Safaa : What could you do there?

Amina : ④ Would you like to come with me next time?

Safaa : ⑤

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:



whole - amazing - was - building - got - hole

The first pantheon in Rome ① built in 27 BCE. However, it was burnt down by a fire. The ② that we know today was built by Emperor. The most ③ part of the building is a large ④ in the roof.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions

: الشارقة 2022

An artist went to a beautiful village near Aswan for a holiday, and stayed with a farmer. Every day, he went out with his brushes and painted from morning to evening, and then when it got dark, he went back to the farmer's house and had a good dinner before he went to bed.

At the end of his holiday, he wanted to pay the farmer, but the farmer said, "No, I do not want money, but give me one of your pictures. What is money? In a week, it will all be finished, but your painting will still be here." The artist was very pleased and

thanked the farmer for saying these kind words about his paintings.

The farmer smiled and answered, "It is not that. I have a son in London. He wants to become an artist. When he comes here next month, I will show him your picture, and then he will not want to be an artist any more, I think. In fact, an artist is born, not made."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The farmer the artist's style of painting.
a. loves b. enjoys c. dislikes d. admires
- The farmer's son will come back from London in time.
a. a week's b. thirty day's c. two day's d. a year's

B. Answer the following questions:

- How much money did the artist have to pay at the end of the holiday?
.....
- How do you think the artist felt when he heard the farmer's reply?
.....
- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own.
.....
- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A is something that makes you feel it is beautiful or amazing.
a. wonder b. storm c. volcano d. fight
سوهاج 2024
- A is a word or phrase to explain things in a picture, diagram, etc.
a. table b. label c. tablet d. top
- We excluded Rahaf from the list because she was sick. "....." is the antonym for "exclude"
a. Improve b. Separate c. Include d. Contain
- We turn the verb "visit" into a noun by adding the suffix
a. -er b. -ful c. -al d. -or

5. Seals live near the seas. This means that they live in a habitat.

المصنفة 2022

- a. forest b. coastal c. desert d. polar

6. The fossils were preserved well for further study. This means they were

- a. discovered b. kept c. chosen d. sold

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When was the Great Wall of China (build)?

SB

2. The forest fires (cause) by the high heat last month.

SB

3. Egypt (visit) by tourists every year.

المصنفة 2023

4. Physics (teach) at our school every year.

5. That lake (form) hundreds of years ago by a volcano.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

[مجاب عنه قبل اختبار الوحدة]

"A short story you have read"

كفر الشيخ 2023

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:
- What is this short story about?
 - Who wrote it?
 - How does it end?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- The short story is about
 - wrote it.
 - In the end,.....

Prep.
3

**New
Hello!**

8 UNIT

Protecting our planet

Objectives

Reading:

An article about climate change; a post about a school project; blogs about a recycling project and weaving; a text about seagrass

Writing:

A plan for a recycling project; a speech about how to keep air clean; a short report about a habitat

Listening:

A radio report about an environmental problem; a discussion about printer cartridges; identifying word stress; a speech about helping the environment

Speaking:

Discussing environmental problems; giving a speech

Language:

Verb + to or -ing

Life Skills:

Problem solving and decision making



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



planet	كوكب	global	عالمي
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري
melting ice	ذوبان الثلج	methane	غاز الميثان
warmer seas	بحار زادت حرارتها	carbon dioxide	غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون
landfill sites	مقالب القمامة	renewable energy	الطاقة المتجددة
environmental problems	مشكلات بيئية	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
volunteer	متطوع	waste (d) (n)	يهدر - يبدد - نفايات
drought	الجفاف	avoid (ed)	يتجنب
climate change	التغير المناخي	absorb (ed)	يمتص
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحراري	slow (ed) down	يبطئ



Vocabulary

serious	خطير	Arctic	القطب الشمالي
seagrass	أعشاب بحرية	Antarctic	القطب الجنوبي
metal	معدن / معدني	sunny	مشمس
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	waves	أمواج
recycling	إعادة تدوير	wind power	طاقة / قوة الرياح
flood	فيضان	electrical equipment	معدات كهربائية
oil	البترول / الزيت	electricity	الكهرباء
rubbish	قمامة	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
industry	الصناعة	produce (d)	ينتج
farming	الزراعة	cause (d)	يسبب
oxygen	أكسجين	collect (ed)	يجمع
transport	النقل	plan (ned)	يخطط
chemical	مادة كيميائية		



Definitions

air pollution

تلوث الهواء

damage caused to the air by chemicals and waste

- ا- يذفن

landfill site

مقلب القمامة

- a place where people leave rubbish on the land
- a place where rubbish is taken, often to be **buried⁽¹⁾** under the ground

melting ice ذوبان الثلج	a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic because of global warming
warmer seas بحار زادت حرارتها	something that can kill coral reefs
drought الجفاف	- a long period ⁽²⁾ of dry weather when there is not enough water for plants and animals to live - a long period of low rainfall ⁽³⁾ that leads to a shortage ⁽⁴⁾ of water
climate change التغير المناخي	how the Earth's weather changes
greenhouse gas غاز الاحتباس الحراري	a gas in the air such as carbon dioxide which can cause global warming
fossil fuel الوقود الحفري	natural material ⁽⁵⁾ such as petrol and oil that you can burn for energy
methane غاز الميثان	- a natural gas often produced by animals and dead plants - a greenhouse gas from landfill sites
absorb يمتص	take in liquid or gases through a surface
renewable energy الطاقة المتجددة	- natural energy that does not disappear or burn when you use it - clean energy from the sun or wind
solar energy الطاقة الشمسية	energy from the sun
carbon dioxide غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون	a gas which we breathe out and which is produced by burning fossil fuels
avoid يتجنب	deliberately ⁽⁶⁾ stay away from someone or something
deforestation إزالة الغابات	cutting down all the trees in a large area
slow down يبطئ	reduce how fast something goes/ slow the speed of something
keep يستمر/ يظل	continue doing or do again and again

٢- فترة زمنية
٣- هطول المطر
٤- نقص
٥- مادة طبيعية
٦- عمداً

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
global	عالمي	international		local / national	محلي
absorb	يمتص	take in		release	يطلق
slow down	يبطئ	delay		speed up	يسرع
damage	يتلف	hurt / destroy		fix / repair	يصلح
fantastic	رائع	wonderful		terrible	سئ - فظيع
pollute	يلوث	dirty / stay		clean	نظف - ينقى

avoid	يتجنب	keep away from	face	يواجه
pass	يجتاز / ينجح	succeed	fail	يرسب / يفشل
save	يوفر / يدخر	keep	waste	يهدر
keep	يحافظ / يستمر	preserve / continue	endanger / stop	يعرض للخطر / يتوقف
serious	جاد / خطير	dangerous	safe / unserious	آمن / غير جاد
problem	مشكلة	trouble	solution	حل

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
re-	again تفيد إعادة الفعل مرة أخرى	recycle / renewable يعيد تدوير / متجدد
-ion		pollution / collection التلوث / مجموعة
-ing	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	farming الزراعة
-ment		government / equipment حكومة / معدات
-al	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	environmental / global بيئي / عالمي
-y		sunny مشمس
-ity	adj → n تحول الصفة إلى الاسم	electricity الكهرباء
-ous	adj تفيد الصفة	serious / dangerous جاد / خطير
trans-	move across تعطي معنى «ينقل»	transport النقل
-able	v → adj تحول الفعل إلى الصفة	renewable متجدد

Expressions & Prepositions

recycle rubbish	يعيد تدوير القمامة	make (a) noise	يحدث ضوضاء
pollute the air	يلوث الهواء	good for	مفيد لـ
save water	يوفر المياه	for too long	لمدة طويلة
get worse	يزداد سوءاً	in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
get / become hotter	يصبح أكثر حرارة	breathe* in	يستنشق "شهيق"
take away	يُبعد	breathe out	يخرج الهواء "زفير"
take a shower	يستحم	move to	ينتقل إلى "يعزل"
keep the air clean	يحافظ على نظافة الهواء	leave/put rubbish into landfill site	يضع / يترك القمامة في مقلب القمامة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost	lost
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
leave	يترك / يغادر	left	left
pay	يدفع مالا	paid	paid



Language Notes

1) reason / cause

• reason (for) مبرر / تفسير لـ

Ex. What is the **reason for** getting low marks?

• cause (of) سبب

Ex. Do you know the **cause of** global warming?

• reason (why) تفسير (لماذا)

Ex. I'd like to know the **reason why** she didn't accept the job.

2) help + (to) + inf.

يأتي بعد الفعل help (المصدر + to) أو (المصدر بدون to):

Ex. This project will **help (to) stop** environmental problems.

3) breathe / breathing / breath

• breathe (v) (in / out) يتنفس (شهيق وزفير)

Ex. Trees **breathe in** carbon dioxide and **breathe out** oxygen.

• breathing (n) عملية التنفس

Ex. His **breathing** is deep and regular.

• breath (n) نَفَس (الهواء الذي يدخل الرئتين)

Ex. Let your **breath** out slowly to feel relaxed.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He gave no for leaving work early today.
a. reasons b. seasons c. connects d. causes
- A lot of volunteers help the project.
a. to complete b. completing c. complete d. a & c are correct
- We all in oxygen to live.
a. bathe b. breathe c. bring d. buy



Audioscript

SB Page (13)

استمع إلى النصوص



In the cities of Cairo, Giza and Fayoum, there is a project that is teaching people about **climate change**⁽¹⁾ and how to help the environment by **recycling rubbish**⁽²⁾.

Over 400 women **volunteers**⁽³⁾ visit houses in these cities every week. The volunteers ask people to put their rubbish into three different bins: for plastic, paper and metal. When the volunteers come back a week later, they **pay**⁽⁴⁾ the families money for the rubbish they have collected. Then they **take away**⁽⁵⁾ the rubbish for recycling. "If families **collect**⁽⁶⁾ their paper, plastic and metal, we will pay them for it," says Dalia. "Then we can take away the rubbish and recycle it. It's a great **solution**⁽⁷⁾ to a big problem, because the family get some money and we help the environment".



- ١- تغير المناخ
- ٢- إعادة تدوير القمامة
- ٣- متطوعات
- ٤- يدفع (مالاً)
- ٥- يُبعد
- ٦- يجمع
- ٧- حل



Reading

SB Page (14)

What produces a lot of carbon dioxide?

Our planet is getting hotter and our weather is changing. There are more **floods**⁽¹⁾, **droughts**⁽²⁾ and **forest fires**⁽³⁾ than at any time in history. One of the reasons for this is climate change.

Climate change is caused by **greenhouse gases**⁽⁴⁾ such as **carbon dioxide**^{(5)*}. These are made when we burn **fossil fuels**⁽⁶⁾ such as oil. Rubbish in **landfill sites**⁽⁷⁾ makes a greenhouse gas called **methane**⁽⁸⁾. **Deforestation**⁽⁹⁾ also produces greenhouse gases. Trees **absorb**^{(10)*} carbon dioxide from the air. When we **cut down trees**⁽¹¹⁾, the carbon dioxide stays in the air.

If we keep burning fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. So, we need to use cleaner **renewable energy**⁽¹²⁾ such as **solar energy**⁽¹³⁾ and **wind power**⁽¹⁴⁾. We must start recycling more rubbish and stop putting rubbish in landfill sites. If we recycle more paper, we can avoid cutting down our forests. This will help **slow down**⁽¹⁵⁾ climate change.



- ١- فيضانات
- ٢- حالات جفاف
- ٣- حرائق الغابات
- ٤- غازات الاحتباس الحراري
- ٥- غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون
- ٦- الوقود الحفري
- ٧- أماكن مقابل القمامة
- ٨- غاز الميثان
- ٩- إزالة الغابات
- ١٠- يمتص
- ١١- يقطع الأشجار
- ١٢- الطاقة المتجددة
- ١٣- الطاقة الشمسية
- ١٤- طاقة / قوة الرياح
- ١٥- يبطئ

Say it
correctly

- * drought ينطق الجزء الملون **ought** مثلما تنطق كلمة **out**
- * dioxide ينطق حرفي **أ** من هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق ضمير المتكلم **I**
- * absorb ينطق حرف **s** من هذه الكلمة **Z**
- * breathe لاحظ أن حرفي **th** في هذه الكلمة ينطقان مثلما ينطقا في كلمة **this**

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The passage is mainly about

- a. fossil fuels b. climate change
c. greenhouse gases d. deforestation

يتحدث النص أساساً عن

2. Infer from the text two causes of climate change.

استنتج من النص سببين للتغير المناخي.

3. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence.

لخص الفقرة الأولى في جملة واحدة.

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. Our planet is getting hotter than before.

يصبح كوكبنا أكثر حرارة عن ذي قبل.

2. Greenhouse gases, rubbish and deforestation cause climate change.

تسبب غازات الاحتباس الحراري والقمامة وإزالة الغابات التغير المناخي.

3. When we cut down trees, carbon dioxide stays in the air.

إذا قطعنا الأشجار يظل غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الهواء.

4. We need to use renewable energy such as solar energy and wind power

نحتاج لاستخدام طاقة متجددة مثل الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح.

3. Climate change causes floods, droughts and forest fires to our planet.

2. Greenhouse gases and deforestation
1. b. climate change.

Answers

WB Page (78)

Buildings cause 6% of our greenhouse gases. If we keep building houses in the same way, **global warming**⁽¹⁾ will continue. I think we should **decide**⁽²⁾ to build houses that need to use less **electricity**⁽³⁾ from fossil fuels. We can do this by **planning**⁽⁴⁾ to build houses that use renewable energy. We should also avoid leaving all our **electrical equipment**⁽⁵⁾ on when we are not using it!

١- الاحتباس الحراري

٢- يقرر

٣- الكهرباء

٤- تخطيط

٥- معدات كهربائية

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. is a greenhouse gas from landfill sites.

Longman SB

- a. Oxygen b. Methane c. Petrol d. Oil

2. energy is clean energy from the sun or wind.

SB

- a. Solar b. Electrical c. Renewable d. Chemical

3. is cutting down all the trees in a large area.

خفر الشيخ 2023

- a. Flood b. Melting ice c. Drought d. Deforestation

4. A is a place where people leave rubbish on the land.

- a. website b. landfill site c. depression d. playground

5. change is how the Earth's weather changes.

- a. Planet b. Globe c. World d. Climate

6. _____ is to reduce how fast something goes.
 a. Speed up b. Speak up c. Slow down d. Stay away
7. "_____ " is the time when the weather is very dry, and there is no or little rain. المونوفية 2024
 a. Flood b. Drought c. Forest d. Gas

Synonyms & Antonyms

8. Global Warming is a serious problem. "Global" here means _____. Longman
 a. international b. local c. national d. coastal
9. I always keep my room "clean". "Clean" here is opposite in meaning to _____. Longman
 a. tidy b. unsafe c. noisy d. dirty
10. We shouldn't pollute the environment. The antonym of "pollute" is _____.
 a. dirty b. destroy c. clean d. change
11. The accident on the road slowed us down. "Slowed down" means _____.
 a. increased b. delayed c. repaired d. recycled
12. Fortunately, I didn't fail, I _____ the exam. Longman
 a. passed b. disappeared c. avoided d. earned
13. How do you think we can save energy? "Save" here has the opposite meaning of _____. Longman
 a. stop b. use c. keep d. waste
14. Tahya Masr Bridge is a fantastic project. The antonym of "fantastic" is _____.
 a. terrible b. wonderful c. brilliant d. excellent
15. The verb _____ is an antonym of "damage".
 a. pollute b. cycle c. fix d. harm
16. Trees absorb carbon dioxide and give out oxygen. "Absorb" here means _____. Longman
 a. take in b. give out c. give up d. send out
17. The verb avoid means to _____ from doing something. السويش 2023
 a. keep away b. keep a way c. stay way d. stay a way
18. "Preserve" is the same meaning of _____. أسبوت 2022
 a. keep b. destroy c. graduate d. retire

Prefixes & Suffixes

19. We add the suffix _____ to the noun "environment" to give the adjective. الوادي الجديد 2023
 a. -ity b. -al c. -y d. -able

20. The prefix _____ is added to the word "port" to refer to buses, planes etc.
 a. super- b. trans- c. techno- d. astro-
21. We add the suffix _____ to the verb "renew" to give the adjective. دمياط 2023
 a. -ous b. -ion c. -action d. -able
22. We add the prefix _____ to the verb "cycle" to mean do again. سوهاج 2023
 a. un- b. re- c. bi- d. per-
23. We turn the adjective "electric" into a noun by adding the suffix _____
 a. -ity b. -ous c. -ing d. -able
24. I am not joking. I'm serious. The opposite of serious here is _____
 a. safe b. save c. funny d. sad
25. We add the suffix " _____ " to get the noun from the verb "farm". القليوبية 2024
 a. -ed b. -ly c. -ing d. -tion
26. Try to recycle paper. The prefix "-re" means to do it _____ الشرقية 2024
 a. first b. fast c. again d. next
27. We add the suffix _____ to the "verb" collect to get the noun. الجيزة 2022
 a. -ed b. -en c. -ion d. -al

Guessing the meaning

28. Solar energy never ends. That means, it is _____ مطروح 2022
 a. renewable b. melting c. warm d. changing
29. Egypt is usually sunny, so it is a great place to use _____
 a. solar energy b. fossil fuels
 c. carbon dioxide d. global warming
30. Ibrahim works for a charity for free. This means he is a _____ طوب سيناء 2022
 a. power b. governor c. manager d. volunteer
31. If we keep building houses, global _____ will continue.
 a. warming b. learning c. warning d. farming



Language

1- (If / When) for future predictions

• تستخدم (If / When) في الحالة الشرطية الأولى (first conditional) لعمل تنبؤات في المستقبل كما يلي:

If / When



مضارع بسيط



will / won't + inf.

Ex. If families collect their paper, plastic and metal, we will pay them for doing this.

will + inf.



if / when



مضارع بسيط

Ex. Coral reefs will die if our seas become warmer.

Notes

١- توضع فاصلة (,) بين جزئي الجملة عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (If / When) :

Ex. If I go out, I will meet my friends.

٢- في حالة الاستفهام يستخدم الأسلوب الآتي:

...مضارع بسيط + when / if + inf. → Will + فاعل + (كلمة إستفهام)

If / When + مضارع بسيط , → will + فاعل + inf?

Ex. What will you do if you have much free time?

Ex. Will Muhammad travel to London if he has a visa?

Ex. If you are ill, will you see a doctor?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أي من جزئي الجملة (أو كلاهما) منفيًا :

Ex. If Hossam doesn't study hard, he will fail.

Ex. If I don't call my friend, he will get angry.

Ex. If Naglaa doesn't study hard, she won't succeed.

٤- نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس (will + inf.) في فعل الشرط بعد (If / When).

Ex. If Mariam stays at home, she will watch TV.

٥- يستخدم الأمر (مثبت / منفي) في جملة جواب الشرط في حالة عدم وجود فاعل.

Ex. If you see Asmaa, tell her to call me.

٦- يتم استخدام (shouldn't / should) بدلاً من (will (not) للتعبير عن النصيحة.

Ex. If you have a cold, you should see the doctor.

Exercises on First Conditional

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

- Our environment will be cleaner if we _____ (recycled) our rubbish. **SB**
- What will you do if you _____ (didn't) pass your exams this year? **WB**
- What _____ (would) you do if you don't understand the homework? **WB**
- If it is hot tomorrow, we _____ (would) go to the beach. **الجيزة 2023**
- What _____ (you do) if you don't catch the train? **الدقهلية 2022**
- If the train is late, I _____ (phone) you. **الفيوم 2022**
- If our seas become warmer, coral reefs _____ (would die). **SB**
- If we _____ (will burn) plastic rubbish, we will pollute the air. **SB**
- What _____ (happen) if I put this plastic in the fire? **WB**
- If you eat an apple daily, you _____ (be) very healthy. **الشرقية 2024**
- Fares _____ (not buy) the car if he doesn't have enough money. **القليوبية 2023**

Longman Exercises

12. If we _____ (not stop) using oil, we will have more pollution.
13. What _____ (you buy) if you go to the supermarket?
14. Wael, _____ (will contact) Adel if you want to visit him?
15. If less energy _____ (uses), we will keep our planet safer.



Bit by Bit Exercises

16. When it _____ (rain), I will take my umbrella.
17. What _____ (Hani does) if he has a test?
18. If I get tired, I _____ (will) go to school tomorrow.
19. If Ali _____ (not work) hard, he won't get much money.
20. If Mona _____ (have) time, she will visit her friend.
21. How will Tarek _____ (feels) if he goes to bed very late tonight?
22. If you feel ill, you _____ (see) a doctor.
23. _____ (Hager speak) good English if her parents move to Canada?
24. If you want to be better, _____ (will waste) your time.
25. If the question _____ (answer), Mr Ahmed will be so happy.



2- verbs + to + inf. / verbs + v-ing

A- Verbs + to + inf.

• بعض الأفعال يتبعها (to + inf.) فقط مثل:

need	يحتاج	decide	يقرر	expect	يتوقع	choose	يختار
arrange	يرتب	promise	يعد	hope	يأمل	offer	يعرض
ask	يسأل/ يطلب	want	يريد	refuse	يرفض	agree	يوافق
learn	يتعلم	aim	يهدف	plan	يخطط	encourage	يشجع

Ex. We **need to use** cleaner renewable energy.

Ex. Amr has **decided to go** to Italy next year.

B- Verbs + V-ing

• بعض أفعال يتبعها (V - ing) مثل:

enjoy	يستمتع بـ	prevent	يمنع	dislike	لا يحب	mind	يمنع
avoid	يتجنب	suggest	يقترح	practise	يمارس		
finish	ينهي	prefer	يفضل	keep	يحافظ على		
recommend	يوصي بـ	go	يذهب	spend	يقضى (وقت)		

Ex. We must **avoid polluting** the environment.

Ex. Nada **enjoys drawing** pictures.

C- Verbs + to + inf. / V - ing

هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها: (to + inf.) أو (V - ing) دون تغيير في المعنى، مثل:

start	يبدأ	prefer	يفضل	love	يحب
hate	يكره	like	يحب		

Ex. I like playing football when I have free time.

Ex. I like to play football today.

هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (V + ing) مع وجود تغيير في المعنى ومن هذه الأفعال:

Verb	Examples
forget	I forgot to call my friend. ينسى أن يفعل شيء ما I forgot calling my friend. فعل شيء ثم نسي أنه فعله
regret	I regret to say that you are mistaken. يشعر بالأسف لأنه من الضروري أن يفعل شيء ما I regret saying that you are mistaken. يشعر بالأسف لأنه فعل شيء ما
remember	He remembered to lock the door. يتذكر أن يقوم بعمل شيء ما He remembered locking the door. يتذكر أنه فعل شيء ما
stop	They stopped to buy some products. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء ما They stopped buying American products. يتوقف عن فعل شيء ما

عبارات يأتي بعدها (to + inf.)	عبارات يأتي بعدها (V - ing)
It's time	حان الوقت
used to	اعتاد أن
It's difficult	من الصعب أن
It's nice	من اللطيف أن
The first ...	أول ...
The next ...	التالي ...
The last ...	الأخير ...



١- كثير من الصفات - التي تصف المشاعر - يأتي بعدها (to + inf.).

happy - stupid - surprised - fit

Ex. The scientists were surprised to find out that these whales had legs.

SB 6

٢- لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد (the first / second / last / next)

Ex. Their country would be the first to launch a satellite.

SB 64


Exercises on (to + inf / v-ing)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:


SB, WB & Exams

1. We need _____ (use) more renewable energy. 2023 الدقهلية SB
2. The government plans _____ (planting) a lot of trees along the sides of streets. SB
3. We should avoid _____ (eat) unhealthy food. 2023 السويس SB
4. Ahmed has chosen _____ (studying) maths at university. WB
5. That bird keeps _____ (to make) a loud noise! WB
6. What do I need _____ (buy) from the shops, Mum? WB
7. If we keep _____ (burn) fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. SB
8. If we don't avoid _____ (cut) down our rainforests, we won't stop climate change. SB
9. If we keep _____ (put) rubbish in landfill sites, we'll make more methane gases. SB
10. The colours make the picture beautiful _____ (look) at. 2023 الشرقية
11. Salma decided _____ (buy) a new laptop last summer. 2024 الغربية

Longman Exercises

12. If we keep _____ (cut) trees, pollution will get worse.
13. We should all avoid _____ (to pollute) the environment.
14. I enjoy _____ (read) short stories.
15. I plan _____ (to spending) the weekend in my village.
16. Do you think _____ (recycle) is good for the environment? 

Bit by Bit Exercises

17. Magid agreed _____ (help) me with my homework.
18. I like _____ (play) chess when I have free time.
19. It's time _____ (leaving). Let's go.
20. It's difficult _____ (answer) this test.
21. Omar was the first _____ (finish) the exam.
22. I'm looking forward to _____ (visit) the zoo.
23. On my way home, I stopped _____ (buying) a newspaper.
24. They stopped _____ (to talk) and listened to me carefully.
25. We are happy _____ (see) you again. 



Speaking

Discussing recycling rubbish

مناقشة إعادة تدوير القمامة

Question

- Do you think that the recycling project in Giza, Cairo and Fayoum is a good idea? Why?
هل تعتقد أن مشروع إعادة تدوير القمامة في الجيزة والقاهرة والفيوم فكرة جيدة؟ لماذا؟
- What does your family do with waste plastic, paper and metal?
ماذا تفعل عائلتك بالنفايات البلاستيكية والورقية والمعدنية؟
- What will happen if we don't recycle rubbish?
ماذا سيحدث إذا لم نقوم بإعادة تدوير القمامة؟

Answer

- Yes, I think so, because this will keep our environment clean.
نعم، أعتقد ذلك، لأن ذلك سيحافظ على بيئتنا نظيفة.
- They collect them to take them to the recycling factory in our city.
يقومون بجمعها وأخذها إلى مصنع إعادة التدوير في مدينتنا.
- Rubbish will be everywhere and this will pollute the environment.
ستكون القمامة في كل مكان وسوف يؤدي ذلك إلى تلوث البيئة.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel is talking to Amir who is reading an article about pollution.

البحيرة 2022

Adel : What are you reading, Amir?

Amir : ①

Adel : What is this article about?

Amir : ②

Adel : ③?

Amir : We can stop pollution by planting more trees.

Adel : ④?

Amir : Because trees absorb carbon dioxide and keep the air clean.

Adel : ⑤



Amir : I agree with you. Recycling our rubbish can also solve this problem.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

to pollute - planet - renewable - polluting - plant - healthy

We should keep the environment clean. We should avoid ① the Nile. We should ② more trees. Also, we should use ③ energy. Thus, we will be able to live in a ④ environment.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is a long period of low rainfall that leads to a shortage of water. Longman 
a. Draught b. Drought c. A stream d. A well
- energy is clean energy from the sun, water, or wind. Longman
a. Polluting b. Polluted c. Non-renewable d. Renewable
- Be careful; slow down, please. "Slow down" is an antonym for ".....". Longman
a. make up b. find out c. speed up d. come out
- When we add the suffix to the word "sun", it gives the adjective.
a. -y b. -ly c. -er d. -ing
- Keep running!. The verb "keep" here is close in meaning to 
a. safe b. preserve c. save d. continue
- Did you know that some plants absorb pollution from the air? This means some plants pollution. WB
a. take action b. take part c. take off d. take in
- We form the noun from "pollute" by adding the suffix المنيا 2022
a. -ment b. -ness c. -ion d. -ity

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- We need (using) cleaner renewable energy. القاهرة 2023
- Adel wants (buy) a new mobile phone. Longman
- Did you finish (do) your homework? Longman
- I prefer (read) when I'm free.
- Where do you suggest (to go) on holiday?
- My friends are going to start (do) research on cleaning the environment.
- Mesk was the first (win) a gold medal in the Olympics.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A review of things that you can recycle at school or in your house." WB الأقصر 2022

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- Do you have things in your house/school you don't need?
- What are these things?
- Will you put them in the landfill site?
- Do you think about recycling them?
- How can this help the environment?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات:

- I / We have..... in my / our house/school I / we don't need.
- These things are.....
- I won't put them in.....
- I think about
- This can help.....

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



printer	طابعة	traditional	تقليدي
printer cartridge	حُبَّارة (عبوة الحبر) للطابعة	loom	نول (آلة النسيج)
ink	الحبر	thread	خيط
weaving	نسيج - نسج	fabric	قماش
weaver	عامل نسيج		



Vocabulary

water pollution	تلوث المياه	jewellery	مجوهرات
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	fishing net	شبكة صيد السمك
blog	مدونة (على الانترنت)	wool	صوف
head teacher	مدير مدرسة	lovely	جميل
recycling box	صندوق التدوير	stone	حجر (كريمة)
recycling centre	مركز التدوير	brick	قالب طوب
material	مادة (خام)	bottle top	غطاء زجاجة
leather	جلد مدبوغ	design (n) (ed)	تصميم - يصمم (شيء)
handbag	حقيرة يد	cross (ed)	يشبك - يعبر
item	عنصر / مادة	print (ed)	يطبع
plastic football field	ملعب كرة قدم بلاستيكي	discuss (ed)	يناقش



Definitions

ink	حبر	a liquid used in pens or printers for writing, drawing, etc.
printer cartridge	حُبَّارة	- a piece of plastic which contains and supplies ⁽¹⁾ ink for a printer - a small container of ink for use in a printer
weaving	نسيج - نسج	the art of making cloth by crossing ⁽²⁾ threads using a special ⁽³⁾ machine
weaver	نساج	a person who makes cloth by weaving
traditional	تقليدي	being part of traditions of a country or group of people
loom	نول (النسيج)	a machine used for weaving
thread	خيط	a long piece of cotton, silk ⁽⁴⁾ , etc. which people can use to sew ⁽⁵⁾ or make clothes
fabric	قماش	cloth or material which can be used to make clothes, bags, etc.

- ١- يزود / يمد بـ
- ٢- تشبيك
- ٣- من نوع خاص
- ٤- حرير
- ٥- يخيّط

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
traditional	تقليدي	classical / old / ancient		modern / new	حديث
expensive	غالي الثمن	pricey		cheap / inexpensive	رخيص
horrible	فظيع	terrible		lovely/ beautiful	جميل
connect	يربط / يوصل	link		disconnect	يفصل
allow	يسمح	let		prevent	يمنع
broken	مكسور	damaged		undamaged	سليم / غير تالف
collect	يجمع	gather		spread/ throw away	ينشر / يلقى

Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
-er	person / thing تكون اسم الفاعل	printer - weaver طابعة - عامل نسيج
-ing	v → n تحويل الفعل إلى الاسم	weaving - recycling نسيج - إعادة تدوير
-ion		discussion مناقشة
-ful	n → adj تحويل الاسم إلى الصفة	colourful زاهي الألوان
-al		traditional تقليدي
-ed	v → adj تحويل الفعل إلى الصفة	surprised - connected مدهش - متصل بـ

Expressions & Prepositions

throw away	يتخلص من	at the moment	في اللحظة
keep clean	يحافظ على... نظيفاً	work on	يعمل في (مشروع)
start a project	يبدأ مشروع	get into	يدخل إلى
find a way	يجد طريقة	fall into	يسقط في
under and over	أسفل وأعلى	recycle ... into	يعيد تدوير... إلى
each other	بعضهم البعض	make into	يصنع - يحول... إلى
bad for	ضار لـ	according to	طبقاً لـ
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	agree with	يتفق مع

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
send	يرسل	sent	sent
break	يكسر	broke	broken
say	يقول	said	said



Language Notes

1) allow / let

• **allow + object** مفعول + to + inf.

يسمح ل... أن ...

Ex. My dad always **allows** me **to use** his laptop.

• **let + object** مفعول + inf.

يسمح ل... أن ... (بدون to)

Ex. Omar always **lets** me **use** his laptop.

2) would ('d) like

• **would ('d) like to = want to + inf. / n** يرغب - يود أن / يريد أن

Ex. I **would('d) like / want to** buy this jacket.

Ex. I **would('d) like / want** sea food, please.

3) (be) made of / (be) made from

• **(be) made of** مصنوع من
(تستخدم عندما لا تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء.)

Ex. These shoes are **made of** leather.

• **(be) made from** مصنوع من
(تستخدم عندما تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء.)

Ex. Bread is **made from** flour.

4) connect / contact / communicate

• **connect (ed)** يصل / يوصل

Ex. Mustafa can **connect** his phone to the computer.

• **contact (ed)** يتصل بـ «لا تتبع بحرف جر»

Ex. If you want any help, **contact** me at once.

• **communicate (d)** يتواصل

Ex. Many people **communicate** with each other on the internet.

5) It's + صفة + to + inf.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة لوصف عمل شيء

Ex. **It's important to keep** our environment clean.

Ex. You can make pizza. **It's easy to make.**

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The head teacher let us a recycling box in the classroom.
a. put b. putting c. to put d. to putting
- I'd like shopping tonight.
a. go b. going c. to going d. to go
- It's not easy mobile phones.
a. make b. to making c. to make d. made
- Jewellery made old glass bottles is not expensive.
a. of b. in c. with d. from
- I the printer to my computer.
a. connected b. contacted c. corrected d. communicated



Audioscript

SB Page (16)

استمع إلى النصوص



Dalida : I want to **print**⁽¹⁾ an article from the internet, but the **printer**⁽²⁾ is broken.

Sherifa : Really? What's wrong; Dalida? Let me look. No, the printer isn't broken. It needs a new **printer cartridge**⁽³⁾.

Dalida : Of course. You're right, Sherifa. I think there's a new one in the **cupboard**⁽⁴⁾.

Sherifa : What are you going to do with the old one?

Dalida : I'll throw it away. I always throw them away.

Sherifa : You can't throw it away!

Dalida : Why not?

Sherifa : That is very bad for the environment. **Ink**⁽⁵⁾ from the printer cartridge can get into rivers and the sea. The ink kills fish and other sea animals. It's really **terrible**⁽⁶⁾ You must recycle it.

Dalida : Oh, no. I didn't know that. That sounds horrible.

Sherifa : Look! There's an address on the box. If we send the printer cartridge to that address, they will recycle it.

Dalida : OK. Let's do that. What happens to all the printer cartridges at school?

Sherifa : I don't know. I think they're thrown away.

Dalida : Well, why don't we start a **recycling project**⁽⁷⁾?

Sherifa : That's a great idea .



- ١- يطبع
- ٢- طابعة
- ٣- حبار
- ٤- دولاب
- ٥- الحبر
- ٦- فضيعة
- ٧- مشروع تدوير



Reading

SB Page (17)

Our school recycling project!

-The problem

Five classrooms in our school have a computer and a printer. At the moment, we **throw away**⁽¹⁾ the printer cartridges with the school rubbish. But the ink inside printer cartridges is very bad for the environment. So we want to start a school recycling project.

- What we are going to do

We have asked our **head teacher**⁽²⁾, Mr Hamdi, if we can start a recycling project, and he said yes. He will let us put a **recycling box**⁽³⁾ in the classrooms with printers. We have written emails to all our teachers. We have asked them to put the old printer cartridges in the recycling boxes.

- How you can help us

We will take the recycling boxes to the **recycling centre**⁽⁴⁾ every month. But we need volunteers to help us. If you would like to be a volunteer, please write your name and email below.

Thank you.

Dalida and Sherifa



- ١- يتخلص من
- ٢- مدير المدرسة
- ٣- سلة تدوير
- ٤- مركز التدوير

SB Page (18)

Hassan's Blog

Weaving⁽¹⁾ is an Egyptian **tradition**⁽²⁾, but there aren't many **traditional**⁽³⁾ **weavers**⁽⁴⁾ in Egypt today. So I was **surprised**⁽⁵⁾ to see three weavers working on traditional **looms**⁽⁶⁾ when I visited the Reform Studio in Cairo.

When Mariam Hazem and Hend Riad were students at university, they wanted to do something about plastic rubbish. They found a way of making old plastic bags into long **threads**^{(7)*}, which they could make into **fabric**⁽⁸⁾ on a traditional loom. Then they used the plastic fabric to make **colourful**⁽⁹⁾ bags, chairs and small carpets.

Today their bags, chairs and carpets are sold in shops in Cairo and London. This is a fantastic project because it is great for the environment and great for one of our Egyptian traditions!



- ١- النسيج - النسيج
- ٢- تقليد
- ٣- تقليدي
- ٤- عمال نسيج
- ٥- مندهش
- ٦- ائوال (آلات)
- النسيج
- ٧- خيوط
- ٨- قماش
- ٩- زاهي الألوان

Say it
correctly

ينطق الجزء الملون **read** من هذه الكلمة مثلما تنطق كلمة **thread** **red**

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The passage is about

يتحدث النص عن

- a. traditions
b. weaving
c. looms
d. the environment

2. Infer from the text what problem Mariam and Hend wanted to solve.

استنتج من النص المشكلة التي أرادت مريم وهند حلها.

3. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence.

لخص الفقرة الأولى في جملة واحدة.

Writing Skill (اجمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. There aren't many traditional weavers in Egypt today.

لا يوجد العديد من النساجون المصريون اليوم.

2. Mariam Hazem and Hend Riad made bags, chairs and small carpets from plastic rubbish.

صنعت مريم حازم وهند رياض حقائب وكراسي وسجاد صغير من قمامة البلاستيك.

3. It is a fantastic project for the environment.

أنه مشروع رائع للحفاظ علي البيئة.

3. Weaving on looms is an Egyptian tradition.
2. plastic rubbish
1. b. weaving.

Answers

WB Page (79)

We all enjoy having new mobile phones, but what should we do with our old phones? Should we keep throwing them away? Remember that it is not easy to make mobile phones. They need to have a lot of important materials⁽¹⁾ inside them. When you throw away⁽²⁾ a phone, these materials can be very bad for the environment. I think that one day, we will not need to buy a new phone every few years. People will design^{(3)*} phones that can use the latest technology⁽⁴⁾, even when it changes. Then, we will avoid throwing away our old phones. That will be very good for the environment!



- ١- مواد
٢- يتخلص من
٣- يصمم
٤- أحدث التكنولوجيا

Say it correctly

*design

لا ينطق حرف g من هذه الكلمة

WB Page (80)

There are a lot of traditional arts in Egypt. I learned about the traditional art of weaving at school today. A weaver uses a machine called a loom. This crosses threads under and over each other to make fabric. Weavers can make very beautiful things.

Waste is a big problem around the world. However, many of the things that we throw away can easily be recycled.

- Russia⁽¹⁾ used a plastic football field⁽²⁾ in the 2018 World Cup. It was made from 50,000 plastic cups.
- You can recycle cotton⁽³⁾ and wool⁽⁴⁾ to make new clothes. You can also use old plastic bottles to make rubbish bags⁽⁵⁾ and plastic bags for shopping.
- You can make lovely⁽⁶⁾ new handbags⁽⁷⁾ from pieces of leather that factories do not use.
- Some stones⁽⁹⁾ are very expensive, but you can make beautiful jewellery⁽¹⁰⁾ from old glass bottles.
- When plastic fishing nets⁽¹¹⁾ fall into the sea, they are very bad for sea animals. We can collect the fishing nets and recycle them into other plastic items⁽¹²⁾, like sunglasses⁽¹³⁾ for example.
- You can make bricks⁽¹⁴⁾ to build houses from old plastic bottle tops⁽¹⁵⁾. They are very strong!



- ١- دولة روسيا
- ٢- ملعب
- ٣- القطن
- ٤- الصوف
- ٥- أكياس قمامة
- ٦- جميل
- ٧- حقائب يد
- ٨- جلد مدبوغ
- ٩- أحجار كريمة
- ١٠- مجوهرات
- ١١- شبك صيد
- ١٢- السمك
- ١٣- عناصر / مواد
- ١٤- نظارات شمسية
- ١٥- قوالب بطوب
- ١٥- أغطية

Videoscript

SB Page 18

Every day, thousands of people collect rubbish from homes and the streets of Cairo. These people collect more than two million tonnes⁽¹⁾ of paper, plastic, wood and metal every year. Around 85% of this rubbish is recycled or reused in many different ways. This makes it one of the most successful⁽²⁾ recycling programs in the world. Some of the rubbish is sold to factories so that it can be used again. Some of it is used to make jewellery, bags and carpets⁽³⁾, which are then sold in shops around Egypt and online around the world. The people who collect rubbish work with a charity⁽⁴⁾ called the Association for the Protection of the Environment⁽⁵⁾ to make these items.

There is also a project between the people who collect rubbish, the government⁽⁶⁾ and some international companies to help people to stop using so much plastic in Egypt. When people collect an empty⁽⁷⁾ plastic bottle that belongs to one of these companies, the company will pay the collector⁽⁸⁾ some money. So the people who collect rubbish are working hard to help to protect Egypt's environment.

We all need to recycle and reuse our rubbish. If we don't, we will destroy⁽⁹⁾ the planet.

- ١- أطنان
- ٢- ناجح
- ٣- سجاد
- ٤- جمعية خيرية
- ٥- جمعية الحفاظ على البيئة
- ٦- الحكومة
- ٧- فارغ
- ٨- جامع القمامة
- ٩- يتلف / يدمر

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A _____ is a person who makes cloth by weaving.
a. head teacher b. weaver c. volunteer d. cleaner
2. _____ is a liquid used in pens or printers for writing, drawing, etc.
a. Fabric b. Ink c. Loom d. Thread
3. _____ is a material that is used to make clothes, bags, etc. البخيرة 2024
a. Glass b. Fabric c. Fact d. Wood
4. The art of making cloth by crossing threads using a special machine is called _____ الفيوم 2023
a. shopping b. designing c. weaving d. collecting
5. A printer _____ is a piece of plastic which contains and supplies ink for a printer. خفر الشيخ 2024
a. cartridge b. carriage c. banking d. glass

Synonyms & Antonyms

6. My parents don't allow me to watch TV late. The synonym of the word "allow" is _____. إسماعيلية 2024
a. find b. protect c. prevent d. let
7. I like this lovely dress. The word "lovely" means _____. الاقصر 2022
a. bad b. ugly c. old d. beautiful
8. Jewellery made from old glass bottles is not expensive. The antonym of "expensive" is _____. WB
a. pricey b. lovely c. cheap d. pleasant
9. The word "horrible" is similar in meaning to _____.
a. lovely b. terrible c. pleasant d. interesting
10. The printer isn't connected to the computer. The verb "connected" means _____. SB
a. linked b. disconnected c. collected d. designed
11. There are a lot of traditional arts in Egypt. The word "traditional" here means _____. أسبوط 2023
a. ancient b. difficult c. new d. modern
12. The vase is broken. Who threw it to the ground? "Broken" here is opposite in meaning to _____. Longman
a. quiet b. unsafe c. dangerous d. undamaged
13. We collect rubbish and recycle it. "Collect" here means _____. Longman
a. gather b. throw c. renew d. sell

14. Dalia is wearing a lovely dress. The word "lovely" here is a/an
 a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb

Prefixes & Suffixes

15. To get the adjective from "colour", we add the suffix
 a. -er b. -ful c. -ness d. -ly

بور سعيد 2023

16. To give the adjective from the noun "tradition", we add the suffix

أبناؤنا في الخارج 2023

- a. -ful b. -y c. -ly d. -al
 17. We add the suffix to give the noun from the verb "weave".
 a. -ful b. -ing c. -al d. -ed
 18. What can I do to print this document? To get the noun from the verb "print", add the suffix ".....".
 a. -or b. -er c. -ist d. -ment

Guessing the meaning

19. In this old factory, they use traditional machines for weaving. This means they use
 a. looms b. printers c. cartridges d. computers
 20. Reem is wearing some rings and necklaces. This means she is wearing
 a. plastic b. wool c. jewellery d. leather



Speaking

Discussing what is worse for the environment مناقشة ما هو أكثر ضرراً للبيئة

Question

A: What do you think is worse for the environment? Why?

ما أكثر ضرراً للبيئة في رأيك؟ لماذا؟

A: What do you think of rubbish in landfill sites?

ما رأيك في القمامة التي توضع في أماكن مقالب النفايات؟

Answer

B: I think it is air pollution, because smoke and dust may damage our lungs.

أعتقد أنه تلوث الهواء، لأن الدخان والغبار ربما يدمران رئتيّنا.

B: I think water pollution is worse, because polluted water may make us ill.

أعتقد أن تلوث المياه أكثر ضرراً. لأن الماء الملوّث ربما يصيبنا بالمرض.

B: I think it is the worst because it makes a greenhouse gas called methane.

أعتقد أنها الأسوأ لأنها تكون غاز الاحتباس الحراري المسمى بالميثان.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



القاهرة 2023

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about planting trees.

- Amr : What shall we do this summer?
- Abdo : ①
- Amr : Good, planting trees is a good idea.
- Abdo : ②?
- Amr : My brother will help us and we can ask Mr. Ahmed, too.
- Abdo : ③ , he will be happy to do so.
- Amr : Where can we start?
- Abdo : ④
- Amr : ⑤?
- Abdo : We will start after our exams.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

to use - pollution - weaving - energy - used - recycling

Many governments are working to control ① They are trying ② fewer fossil fuels. They are getting ③ from the sun, the wind, water and other ways that produce less pollution. They are ④ old things to reduce pollution.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A printer is a small container of ink for use in a printer. Longman
a. cartridge b. carriage c. glass d. cup
- A/An is a machine on which thread is woven into cloth. Longman
a. engine b. axe c. loom d. room
- What a horrible movie! "Horrible" has the same meaning as ".....". Longman
a. terrific b. awful c. long d. bored
- In the past, we used traditional ways of farming. The antonym of "traditional" is
a. modern b. old c. expensive d. far
جنوب سيناء 2023
- We add the prefix "....." to get the opposite of "connected"
a. in- b. dis- c. un- d. b and c

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

"A short story" "A recycling project at school"

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



seagrass	أعشاب بحرية / طحالب	wetland	أرض رطبة
ocean	محيط	conclusion	خاتمة
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	conclude (d)	يختم
rainforest	غابة استوائية مطيرة	finish (ed)	ينتهي / ينتهي



Vocabulary

speech	حديث / خطاب	poster	ملصق
washing up	غسيل الأطباق	factual	حقيقي / واقعي
tips	نصائح	lift	مصعد
time	مرة	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
herbs	أعشاب	introduce (d)	يقدم
spider plant	نبات الغيلان / العنكبوت (نبات متسلق)	include (d)	يشتمل على
solution	حل	remind (ed)	يُذكر
temperature	درجة الحرارة	water (ed)	يروي بالماء
naturally	بشكل طبيعي	contrast (ed)(n)	يقارن / تناقض
baker's	مخبز	respect (ed)	يقدر / يحترم
diver	غواص	present (ed)	يُقدم
square metre	متر مربع		



Definitions

seagrass	أعشاب بحرية / طحالب	plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast
farming	الزراعة	the business of growing crops and looking after animals for food.

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
conclusion	خاتمة	end		start	بداية
attractive	جذاب	beautiful		unattractive	غير جذاب
safe	آمن	secure		unsafe	غير آمن
familiar	مألوف	usual		unfamiliar	غير مألوف
disappear	يختفي	hide / vanish		appear	يظهر
begin	يبدأ	start		finish - end	ينتهي / ينتهي
turn on	يشغل جهاز	switch on		turn off / switch off	يطفىء جهاز

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
re-	again تفيد إعادة الفعل مرة أخرى	reuse يعيد استخدام
dis-	opposite تعطي عكس المعنى	disappear يختفي
-ive	v → adj تحول الفعل إلى الصفة	attractive جذاب
-ful		careful حريص
-ion	v → n تحول الفعل إلى اسم	conclusion خاتمة
-y	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	healthy / windy صحي / شديد الرياح
-er	person تكوّن اسم الفاعل	diver / speaker غواص / متحدث
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الحال	naturally بشكل طبيعي

Expressions & Prepositions

stop air pollution يوقف تلوث الهواء	begin with يبدأ بـ
do/ give / make a speech يلقي حديث / خطبة	turn off يطفىء جهاز
absorb pollution يمتص التلوث	at the end في النهاية
take care of يعتنى بـ	careful of حريص بشأن
keep the sea healthy يحافظ على سلامة البحر	walk down the road يسير في الطريق
used to be اعتاد أن يكون	on the right على اليمين
catch the train يلحق بالقطار	
along the UK coast على امتداد ساحل المملكة المتحدة	

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

begin	يبدأ	began	begun
read	يقرأ	read	read
smell	يشم	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
ride	يركب (دراجة / حيوان)	rode	ridden
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn



Language Notes

1) Expressing cause, result & contrast

A- Expressing cause

- because / since / as / this is because لأن

نستخدم الكلمات والتعبيرات السابقة للتعبير عن السبب

Ex. Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass **because / since / as** it is a safe place.

Ex. I can't stay anymore. **This is because** I have to catch my plane.

C- Expressing contrast

- However / Nevertheless مع ذلك / بالرغم من ذلك

نستخدم الكلمات السابقة للتعبير عن التناقض

Ex. Plastic is bad for the environment. **However / Nevertheless**, it is easy to recycle.

B- Expressing result

- that is why لهذا السبب

نستخدم التعبير السابق للتعبير عن النتيجة

Ex. We stopped for shopping; **that is why** we are late.

2) Although and But

- although الفكرة الرئيسية although نتيجة غير متوقعة

Ex. He refused to drink **although** he was thirsty.

- but نتيجة غير متوقعة but الفكرة الرئيسية

Ex. He was thirsty, **but** he refused to drink.

3) make يجعل

- make + مفعول + inf.

Ex. Comedy films **make me laugh**.

- make + مفعول + adjective

Ex. Your success makes **us happy**.

4) Verbs + adjectives

بعض الأفعال يليها صفة (وليس حال) مثل:

smell / look / feel / be / taste

Ex. Some food **smells bad** or **looks unusual**.

Ex. I think the meal **tastes delicious**.

كما يمكن أن تستخدم بعض هذه الأفعال كأسماء:

smell رائحة **taste** مذاق **look** منظر

Ex. Chocolate has a **sweet taste**.

- **smell (I)** فعل لازم بمعنى (يفوح منه)

Ex. Some plants **smell nice**.

5) Everyone + singular verb

- يأتي بعد الضمير (everyone) فعل لفاعل مفرد ونعود عليها بالضمائر (they / their) :

Ex. Everyone loves **their** homeland.

6) coast / beach

• **coast** ساحل
(المنطقة التي يتقابل بها البحر مع اليابسة على الخريطة)

Ex. We drove along the Red Sea **Coast**.

• **beach** شاطئ
(المنطقة التي بها رمال أو حصي على البحر)

Ex. The kids went to the **beach** and built sand castles.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was busy yesterday; that is I couldn't attend the meeting.
a. because b. when c. why d. since
2. Eating too much fat may make you
a. ill b. been ill c. being ill d. illness
3. Don't eat that food, it bad.
a. smell b. smells c. feels d. falls
4. Not everyone plants in their houses.
a. have b. get c. make d. has
5. There used to be a lot of sea grass along the UK
a. coast b. lost c. cost d. post



Audioscript

SB Page (19)

استمع إلى النصوص



Ziad : Today, I'm going to talk about what we can do to help the environment. I'd like to start by saying that we should all use less energy. For example, **turn off**⁽¹⁾ the TV and computer at night. Remember to turn off the lights when you leave a room. And we should all use **stairs**⁽²⁾ and not the **lift**⁽³⁾. This saves energy and keeps us fit and healthy.

In the next part of my **speech**⁽⁴⁾, I'd like to talk about water. We need to save water, so please turn off the **tap**⁽⁵⁾ when you brush your teeth. And when you water your plants, use your **washing up water**⁽⁶⁾. And please stop buying water in plastic bottles. Buy a glass water bottle that you can use again. This saves **plastic waste**⁽⁷⁾. And it's really important to recycle as much as possible. Recycle your plastic, glass and paper at home. And why not start a recycling project at school?

I'd like to finish by saying, we can all help the environment. We need to understand that the environment is our home and it is important that we **respect**⁽⁸⁾ it.



- ١- يطفئ جهاز
- ٢- سلالم
- ٣- مصعد
- ٤- حديث
- ٥- صنبور (حنفية)
- ٦- ماء لغسيل
- ٧- مخلفات بلاستيكية
- ٨- يقدر / يحترم



Reading

SB Page (20)

Seagrass

Seagrass⁽¹⁾ is found in the sea along the coast⁽²⁾ of many countries. It is food for many sea animals, including⁽³⁾ turtles⁽⁴⁾. Baby fish⁽⁵⁾ and sea animals live in seagrass because it is a safe place.

Seagrass helps keep the sea healthy and it can help stop climate change. This is because seagrass absorbs 10% of the ocean's⁽⁶⁾ carbon dioxide every year. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That is why seagrass can help stop climate change.

About 90% of all seagrass has disappeared⁽⁷⁾ from the UK's coast in the last 100 years. However⁽⁸⁾, there is an environmental project in the UK that is growing⁽⁹⁾ new seagrass. When the plants are big enough, divers⁽¹⁰⁾ will plant them along the coast. The plants will still be quite small. Nevertheless⁽¹¹⁾, they will grow into 20,000 square metres of seagrass.



- ١- أعشاب بحرية /
- ٢- ساحل
- ٣- مشتملة على
- ٤- سلاحف
- ٥- صغار السمك
- ٦- محيط
- ٧- اختفت
- ٨- مع ذلك
- ٩- زراعة
- ١٠- غواصون
- ١١- بالرغم من ذلك

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The text is mainly about

يتحدث النص أساساً عن

a. turtles

b. oceans

c. seagrass

d. divers

2. Infer from the text why seagrass is important for the environment.

استنتج من النص لماذا تعد الأعشاب البحرية مهمة للبيئة.

3. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence.

لخص الفقرة الأولى في جملة واحدة.

Writing Skill (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. Seagrass is found along sea coasts.

توجد الأعشاب البحرية على امتداد سواحل البحر.

2. It's food for many sea animals.

إنها طعام للعديد من الحيوانات البحرية.

3. It can help stop climate change.

يمكنها أن تساعد في توقف التغير المناخي.

4. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide.

تمتص الأعشاب البحرية غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون.

تعد الأعشاب البحرية طعاماً للعديد من الحيوانات البحرية مثل السلاحف.

3. Seagrass is food for many sea animals like turtles.

تساعد الأعشاب البحرية على توقف التغير المناخي.

2. It helps keep the sea healthy and it helps stop climate change.

1. c. seagrass

Answers

Today, I'm going to talk about plants in the house. Not everyone *has them, but I think you should!* I'd like to start by saying that plants are very good for your health.

To begin with, plants breathe out oxygen, which is a gas that we need to breathe. Also, plants often absorb pollution in the air, making it cleaner for us.

In the next part of my *speech*⁽¹⁾, I'd like to talk about where to put your plants. Some plants *smell nice*⁽²⁾, so I put these in my *balcony*⁽³⁾. And you can eat the *leaves*⁽⁴⁾ of plants called *herbs*⁽⁵⁾, so put these in your kitchen! *Spider plants*⁽⁶⁾ look *attractive*⁽⁷⁾, so I put them in an *open place*⁽⁸⁾, like the *living room*⁽⁹⁾.

I'd like to finish by saying that it is best to choose plants that grow *naturally*⁽¹⁰⁾ in Egypt. They will look better in your house *since*⁽¹¹⁾ they will look *familiar*⁽¹²⁾. Plants that grow naturally in Egypt are easier to take care of.

- ١- حديث / خطبة
- ٢- رائحتها لطيفة
- ٣- شرفة
- ٤- أوراق النباتات
- ٥- أعشاب
- ٦- نباتات الغيلان
- (متسلق)
- ٧- جذاب
- ٨- مكان مفتوح
- ٩- غرفة المعيشة
- ١٠- بشكل طبيعي
- ١١- لأن
- ١٢- مألوف

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ is a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast.

- a. Seafood b. Seagrass c. Seabed d. Seabird

2. _____ plants look attractive, so I put them in an open place.

- a. Snake b. Spider c. Insect d. Caracal

3. _____ is the business of growing crops.

- a. Tourism b. Medicine c. Engineering d. Farming

Synonyms & Antonyms

4. The word "attractive" means _____.

- a. beautiful b. unattractive c. wet d. expensive

5. The word "familiar" is the opposite of _____.

- a. well-known b. popular c. special d. unfamiliar

6. Nabil : Did you _____ the light in the room, Ahmed?

Ahmed : No, I turned it off before leaving the room.

- a. switch off b. turn on c. put on d. see off

7. The synonym of "safe" is _____.

- a. dangerous b. lovely c. secure d. unsafe

8. The antonym of "conclusion" is

- a. end b. start c. finish d. address

9. Your baby has an attractive smile. The opposite of "attractive" is

- a. beautiful b. friendly c. unsafe d. unattractive

10. Moaaz has wonderful career skills. However, he didn't get the job. "However" can be replaced with

- a. although b. because c. as d. but



Prefixes & Suffixes

11. To give the noun from "conclude", we delete "de" and add the suffix

- a. -ful b. -ive c. -sion d. -ation

12. We add the suffix to turn the verb care into an adjective.

- a. -ful b. -ion c. -ive d. -ly

13. Reuse old plastic bottles. The prefix "re-" means to use it

- a. next b. again c. first d. last

14. The sun disappears at sunset. The prefix "dis-" here gives the of "appear".

- a. meaning b. opposite c. adjective d. noun

Guessing the meaning

15. The speaker concluded his speech in a friendly way. This means that the of his speech was friendly.

- a. end b. next c. start d. beginning

16. The Nile view here is beautiful. This means that the view is

- a. awful b. attractive c. horrible d. terrible

17. Alexandria has a long area along the sea. This means that Alexandria has a long

- a. ocean b. canal c. coast d. seagrass

Speaking

Expressions used in a speech

تستخدم التعبيرات الآتية أثناء إلقاء حديث / خطبة

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| - Today, I'm going to talk about ... | اليوم، سوف أتحدث عن..... |
| - I'd like to start by saying ... | أود أن أبدأ بقول أن..... |
| - To begin with,... | لنبدأ ب..... |
| - In the next part of my speech, I'd like to.. | في الجزء التالي من حديثي، أود أن... |
| - To conclude, ... | لكي أختتم، |
| - I'd like to finish by saying ... | أود أن أنهى بقول أن..... |

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Dina is giving a speech about seagrass.

Ramy : What will you talk about in your speech, Dina?

Dina : ①

Ramy : ②

Dina : Yes, I've read a lot about seagrass.

Ramy : ③

Dina : Seagrass is food for many sea animals.

Ramy : Does seagrass help our environment?

Dina : ④

Ramy : I wish you all the best in your speech.

Dina : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

oceans - will - reefs - would - why - where

If you look around, you ① probably see plastic everywhere. That's ② plastic is becoming a serious problem, especially along the world's seas and ③ Plastic is very harmful to sea animals and coral ④ So many countries do their best to recycle plastic.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The verb "vanish" is a synonym to the verb

- a. conclude b. disappear c. begin d. contrast



2. We add the prefix "un-" to give the opposite of

- a. familiar b. appear c. use d. polite



3. The opposite of the verb "begin" is

- a. end b. start c. hide d. become

4. The prefix gives the opposite of "appear"

- a. un- b. im- c. dis- d. il-

الاسكندرية 2023

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Plastic is bad for the environment (Because) , it is easy to recycle. **WB**
2. Deserts are very dangerous. (That is why), many tourists like to visit them. **WB**
3. He got low marks (because) he studied hard. **أسوان 2023**
4. Trees are good for the environment (that is however) we shouldn't cut them down. **WB**
5. Baby fish live in seagrass (but) it is a safe place. **SB**

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A review of a habitat you have researched"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- Where is the habitat?
- What are the interesting facts about it?
- Are there any environmental projects to help protect this habitat?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- Today, I'm going to talk about a habitat in.....
- To begin with, there are interesting facts.....
- In the next part of my articles, I'd like to write about environmental projects
- ...
- To conclude,

Key Vocabulary

planet	كوكب	printer	طابعة	carbon dioxide	غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	loom	نول (آلة النسيج)	fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	thread	خيوط	methane	غاز الميثان
melting ice	ذوبان الثلج	fabric	قماش	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
rubbish	قمامة	rainforest	غابة خطيرة	ocean	محيط
ink	الحبر	global	عالمي	greenhouse gas	غاز الاحتباس الحراري
weaving	نسيج - نسج	warmer seas	بحار زادت حرارتها	environmental problems	مشكلات بيئية
weaver	عامل نسيج	climate change	التغير المناخي	conclude (d)	يختتم
printer cartridge	حجّارة	wetland	أرض رطبة	avoid (ed)	يتجنب
conclusion	خاتمة	traditional	تقليدي	absorb (ed)	يمتص
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	renewable energy	الطاقة المتجددة	slow (ed) down	يبطئ
volunteer	متطوع	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	finish (ed)	ينهي / ينتهي
landfill sites	مقالب القمامة			waste (d)(n)	يهدر - يبدد - نفايات
seagrass	أعشاب بحرية / طحالب				
drought	الجفاف				



Language

1- (If / When) for future predictions

• تستخدم (If / When) في الحالة الشرطية الأولى (first conditional) لعمل تنبؤات في المستقبل كما يلي:

If / When

مضارع بسيط

will / won't + inf.

Ex. If we keep our planet clean, we will live a better life.

will + inf.

if / when

مضارع بسيط

Ex. We will face many problems if we pollute the environment.

2- verbs + to + inf. / verbs + v-ing

A- Verbs + to + inf.

• بعض الأفعال يتبعها (to + inf.) فقط مثل:

arrange	يرتب	promise	يعد	offer	يعرض
ask	يسأل / يطلب	aim	يهدف لـ	choose	يختار
hope	يأمل	learn	يتعلم	encourage	يشجع

Ex. Hossam **promised to help** me.

B- Verbs + V-ing

• بعض أفعال يتبعها (V - ing) مثل:

enjoy	يستمتع بـ	fancy	يتخيل	mind	يمنع	go	يذهب
suggest	يقترح	keep	يحافظ على	spend	يقضي (وقت)		

Ex. Hanaa **enjoys writing** stories.

C- Verbs + to + inf. / V - ing

• هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها: (to + inf.) أو (V - ing) دون تغيير في المعنى، مثل:

start	يبدأ	prefer	يفضل	love	يحب
hate	يكره	like	يحب		

Ex. I **love learning / to learn** English.

عبارات يأتي بعدها (to + inf.)	عبارات يأتي بعدها (V - ing)
It's time	look forward to
used to	(be) used to
It's easy	Would (Do) you mind ..?
It's difficult	
It's nice	
The first ...	
The next ...	
The last ...	

Speaking

1) Discussing recycling rubbish

مناقشة إعادة تدوير القمامة

Question

- Do you think that the recycling project in Giza, Cairo and Fayoum is a good idea? Why?
- What does your family do with waste plastic, paper and metal?
- What will happen if we don't recycle rubbish?

Answer

- Yes, I think so, because this will keep our environment clean.
- They collect them to take to the recycling factory in our city.
- Rubbish will be everywhere and this will help pollute the environment.

2) Discussing what is worse for the environment

مناقشة ما هو أكثر ضرراً للبيئة

Question

A: What do you think is worse for the environment? Why?

A: What do you think of rubbish in landfill sites?

Answer

B: I think it is air pollution, because smoke and dust may damage our lungs.

B: I think water pollution is worse, because polluted water may make us ill.

B: I think it is the worst because it makes a greenhouse gas called methane.

3) Expressions used in a speech

تستخدم التعبيرات الآتية أثناء إلقاء حديث / خطبة

- Today, I'm going to talk about ...
- I'd like to start by saying ...
- To begin with, ...
- In the next part of my speech, I'd like to..
- To conclude, ...
- I'd like to finish by saying ...

General Exercises on Unit 8

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Emad and Mustafa are talking about the environment.

Emad : What problem does our environment face?

Mustafa : ①

Emad : ②?

Mustafa : One of the causes is climate change.

Emad : ③

Mustafa : It is the way the world's weather is changing.

Emad : How can we stop this?

Mustafa : ④

Emad : Do you think that using solar power will help slow down climate change?

Mustafa : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1 ride - planet - drive - to take - rubbish - taking

Earth is our ① We need ② care of it. We can work together. We can keep Earth clean. Put your ③ in bins, and never leave it on the ground. We can walk or ④ bikes instead of driving cars.

2 use - keep - teeth - to use - tooth - up Longman

Water is very important for our life. We can't live without water. Therefore, you must ① it by all means. You must learn how ② water carefully. You must turn off the tap after you brush your ③ When you water your plants, use your washing ④ water.

3 to pollute - planet - renewable - polluting - plant - healthy Longman

We should keep the environment clean. We should avoid ① the Nile. We should ② more trees. Also, we should use ③ energy. Thus, (بذلك) we will be able to live in a ④ environment.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a piece of plastic which contains and supplies ink for a printer.
a. keyboard b. hard disc c. memory d. printer cartridge
2. At the conclusion of the email, he greeted me. The synonym of "conclusion" is...
a. opening b. end c. middle d. start
3. At last the sun appeared. The antonym of "appear" is.....
a. reappear b. appearance c. appearing d. disappear
4. We add the suffix to give the adjective from the noun "health".
a. -ation b. -ion c. -y d. -ment
5. This worker is clever at using looms. This means he is a good
a. winner b. swimmer c. weaver d. manager

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We'll save water if we only (took) short showers. SB
2. We can avoid (to cut) down the trees by building the road in a different place. SB
3. I decided (buying) a water bottle that I can reuse from the shops. SB
4. (Would) Dina speak good English if her parents move to Canada? WB
5. Do you enjoy (to play) the piano? WB

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of a recycling project you have read about"

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

WB

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- What is the project about? - How did you know about it?
- What is your opinion about this project?
- Is it useful for the environment or not? Why / Why not?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- I read a recycling project about..... - I read about it in.....
- In my opinion,
- I think it's useful / not useful for the environment because.....



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Reda is going to give a speech about recycling.

المناقشة 2024

Youssef : Hello, Reda. You look worried. Why?

Reda : ①

Youssef : ② ?

Reda : Because recycling is important for the environment.

Youssef : ③ ?

Reda : I'd like to start by saying everyone has a role.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

will - renewable - fuels - won't - recycle - cut

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We mustn't ① down trees because they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn fossil ② to avoid climate change. We should use ③ energy such as solar energy and wind power. So, we ④ be able to live in a safe environment.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We must take care of our planet. We can save it by growing trees, changing our diet habits and using renewable energy. We can drive less, recycle plastic waste and **green** our cities. In fact, a lot of people think that this is a serious problem to solve, and if they do something, our planet will be a better place to live in. World Environment Day is held every year to protect nature. Young people, communities and businessmen have to share in facing the environmental problems of the planet.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do we need to save our planet?

.....

2. How can we save it?

.....

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. can't share in facing the environmental problems.

a. Babies

b. Youth

c. Businessmen

d. Communities

5. The underlined word "**green**" means more trees.

a. cutting

b. planting

c. burning

d. drawing

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People cut a lot of our rainforests every year.
a. down b. out c. in d. of
2. There aren't many weavers in Egypt today.
a. colourful b. chemical c. traditional d. electrical
3. If you get up early, you be late.
a. will b. would c. wouldn't d. won't
4. What do I need from the shops, mum?
a. buy b. to buy c. buying d. bought

المينا 2024

القاهرة 2024

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I (be) in trouble, will you help me?
2. What do you need (buy) from the shop, Mum?
3. We should avoid (pollute) the environment.

أسوان 2024

الشرقية 2024

6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

"A review of a habitat you have researched"

.....

.....

.....

Al Azhar Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:


A Vocabulary

SB & WB Exercises

1. The long threads are made into on looms.
a. fabric b. iron c. plastic d. wood
2. There used to be a lot of along the UK coast.
a. sunglasses b. seagrass c. solar energy d. global warming
3. Rainforests carbon dioxide.
a. pause b. recycle c. absorb d. renew
4. Rubbish that isn't recycled is put into
a. fossil fuels b. landfill sites c. seagrass d. environment

Longman Exercises

5. makes air, water, soil etc. dangerously dirty and not suitable for people to use.
a. Cultivation b. Deforestation c. Pollution d. Population

6. A/An _____ is someone who does a job for free.
a. professional b. volunteer c. employee d. manager
7. Forest fires are increasing because our planet is getting _____.
a. deeper b. warmer c. colder d. cooler
8. Greenhouse gases are gases in the earth's _____ that trap heat. 
a. ground b. land c. atmosphere d. soil
9. Earth is the fifth-largest _____.
a. universe b. star c. planet d. plant
10. To _____ something is to turn it into something that can be used again.
a. invent b. cut c. recycle d. throw
11. _____ comes from fossil fuels.
a. Renewable energy b. Oil
c. Electricity d. Water
12. Landfill _____ are places where some people throw rubbish.
a. sets b. sites c. seats d. sates
13. A/An _____ is much bigger than a sea.
a. canal b. ocean c. waterfall d. river

Bit by Bit Exercises

14. Sherifa doesn't know how to recycle the printer _____.
a. cartridge b. trash c. bag d. bridge
15. Looms cross threads under and over each other to make _____.
a. ink b. plastic c. fabric d. energy
16. Seagrass takes _____ carbon dioxide from the ocean.
a. in b. out c. to d. about
17. A/An _____ is an area of land that is often flooded by water.
a. desert b. habitat c. wetland d. ocean
18. Rubbish in landfill sites makes a greenhouse gas called _____.
a. fuel b. methane c. energy d. waste

B Language

19. My family has decided _____ to Jordan next year. WB
a. going b. go c. to going d. to go
20. Climate change will get worse if we _____ more action now.
a. doesn't take b. don't take c. take d. took
21. _____ you don't hurry, you won't catch the train.
a. If b. Because c. After d. Without

Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

1- "A review of things that you can recycle at school or in your house" (Lessons 1 & 2)

I have many old things at home that I don't need. I used to put them in a nearby landfill site. My science teacher told me that rubbish in landfill sites makes a greenhouse gas called methane. He advised me to recycle them instead. So, I sent my old things to the recycling centre. I asked my head teacher if we could start a recycling project, and he said yes. We used to throw away the printer cartridges with the school rubbish. Now, we try to recycle them for other purposes.

2- "A short story" "A recycling project at school" (Lessons 3 & 4)

Hossam is a student in preparatory three. In his classroom, students use computers connected to special printers. When the computer cartridges finish, they throw them away as rubbish. Hossam has read that this is bad for the environment. Hossam decides to start a recycling project with his classmates. They began to collect the old cartridges. They washed them to become very clean. Now, they are ready to use again. They suggest using them in many ways. They use them as containers. It is a great project.

3- "A review of a habitat you have researched" (Lessons 5 & 6)

I have done some research on a habitat. I'm going to write this review of it. It's the habitat of the whale "the ocean". I like reading about that. Whales are wonderful creatures. They are the largest living animals. The largest whale is the blue whale. They reach a length between 26-30 metres and weigh up to 200 tons. Whales have huge bodies and flat heads.

They have big fins and large tails on their bodies to help them move in oceans.

4- "A review of a recycling project you have read about" (General Exercises)

I've read about a recycling project. It will lead to a much better place to live in. Reduce, reuse and recycle are the secrets. When people reduce, it means they are using less of something. This means less waste. Turning off the water tap when we brush our teeth is a way of reducing. Reusing is to use the things we already have again. We can use shopping bags made of cloth instead of plastic bags. Using both sides of the paper is also a way of reusing. Finally we can recycle. Recycling is to create new materials from old ones.

5- "How to keep our air clean" (Al Azhar)

Air pollution is an environmental problem. Smoke from factories and cars cause air pollution. Industry leads to many harmful gases such as carbon dioxide. To reduce air pollution, we should change some of our daily habits. We should stop cutting down trees. We should use public transports.

6- "A short story about a trip you had to a recycling factory" (Test)

Yesterday, our science teacher, Mr Moshen, took us on a trip. It was a surprise to visit a recycling factory. We all met at school in the morning. A big bus took us to the factory. An engineer was waiting for us outside the factory. We asked him some questions first. He answered them all. The engineer showed us how they recycle old materials. We saw many machines recycling old paper, glass, plastic and other materials. We spent a wonderful time there.



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue

Doaa and Malak are talking about the environment.

Doaa : Hello, Malak. What are you doing?

Malak : Hello, Doaa ①

Doaa : What is this article about?

Malak : ②

Doaa : Our environment is being polluted severely. ③

Malak : We can plant more trees to prevent that.

Doaa : ④

Malak : Yes, we can use less plastic.

Doaa : ⑤

Malak : Actually, this will help save the environment.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

absorb - made - plant - take - planet - makes

Life is not possible without plants. Plants are the beauty of our ① They are useful gifts of nature. When a plant grows, it ② the area around it cleaner and beautiful. Plants produce oxygen and ③ carbon dioxide. It is a fact that people who live near plants are healthier and happier. We should ④ care of plants.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our home planet Earth is a rocky planet. It has a surface with mountains, valleys, and so much more. Water covers 70% of Earth's surface. That's why scientists called it the blue planet. Water is the most important liquid on Earth. No one can live without water. So polluting water causes illness to humans and animals.

Earth is a great planet to live on because it has air. Air is made mostly of nitrogen and has plenty of oxygen for us to breathe. Since we live here, you might think we know everything about Earth. There is still a lot that we can learn about our home planet.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about the
a. layers b. air c. Earth d. space
- Land is about % of Earth's surface.
a. 70 b. 24 c. 6 d. 30

B. Answer the following questions:

- Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence.
.....

- Infer from the text why scientists called the Earth "the blue planet".
.....

- Why is air important for us to live?
.....


- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is natural energy that does not disappear or burn when you use it.
a. Non-renewable energy b. Renewable energy
c. Fossil fuels d. Oil
- This song was a part of traditions of Egypt in the past. It is a/an song.
a. traditional b. colourful c. international d. electrical
- The antonym of "global" is
a. universal b. general c. local d. international
- We add the suffix to give the adjective from the verb attract.
a. -ation b. -ion c. -ive d. -ment
- A is a long period of dry weather when there is not enough water for plants and animals to live.
a. rain b. melting c. drought d. flood
- They used the plastic fabric to make bags, chairs and small carpets. They have different bright colours.
a. colourful b. modern c. ugly d. horrible

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Miss Huda wants(doing) a recycling project at school. **SB**
2. If we burn plastic rubbish, the air(pollute). 
3. We enjoy(recycle) our rubbish. It's fun and it helps the environment. **SB**
4. You should avoid(to sit) on that wall because it is dangerous. **WB**
5. Jewellery made from glass is very popular.(That is nevertheless) it looks good and is not expensive.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about a trip you had to a recycling factory"

الجيزة 2023

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Where was the trip?
- When and where did it happen?
- What did you see there?
- What was the end of the story?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Yesterday, our teacher took us
- The trip was to
- There, we saw
- We learnt many useful things and

Prep.

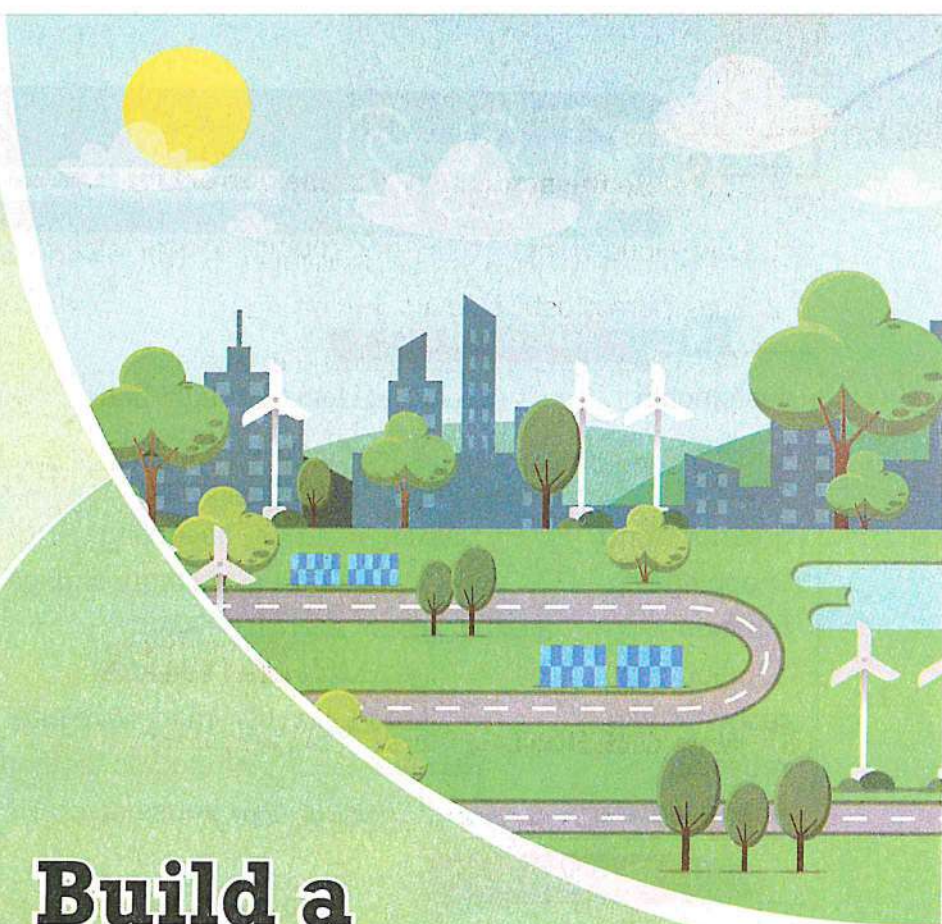
3

**New
Hello!**

9

UNIT

Build a greener world



Objectives

Reading:

A webpage about mangrove trees;
The Iron Woman by Ted Hughes;
short web posts about how to help the environment; a report about the Great Green Wall initiative

Writing:

A report about a green initiative in Egypt or Africa; answers to a survey

Listening:

A conversation about sustainable living; a discussion about a story; a television interview about a solar farm

Speaking:

Discussing how to live more sustainably; asking about, giving and responding to opinions; conducting a survey

Language:

The second conditional

Life Skills:

Problem solving and decision making



استمع إلى المفردات



Key Vocabulary

sustainable	مستدام / صديق للبيئة	light bulb	مصباح
product	منتج	battery	بطارية
paper	ورق / ورقي	crops	محاصيل
greener world	عالم خالي من التلوث	seedling	نبته
shopping bag	حقيبة تسوق	climate change	التغير المناخي
bamboo	نبات خشب الخيزران (البامبو)	rising	ارتفاع / تزايد
bamboo cup	كوب من الخيزران	sea level	مستوى سطح البحر
rechargeable	قابل لإعادة الشحن	mangrove tree	شجرة المانجروف
reusable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	electric toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان كهربائية
energy-saving	موفر للطاقة	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام



Vocabulary

hairbrush	فرشاة شعر	carbon footprint	بصمة كربونية
seawater	مياه البحر	position	مكان - وضع
community	مجتمع	hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية
safer place	مكان أكثر أماناً	environmental	بيئي
coffee shop	مقهى	provide (d)	يزود بـ - يمد بـ
grandparents	أجداد	charge (d)	يشحن
webpage	صفحة على الإنترنت	cause (d)	يسبب
shop window	فاترينة (محل)	affect (ed)	يؤثر على
petrol	بنزين	plant (ed) (n)	يزرع - نبات
mangrove forests	غابات المانجروف	plug (ged)....in	يوصل ... (بالكهرباء)



Definitions

sustainable	مستدام / صديق للبيئة	causing little or no damage ⁽¹⁾ to the environment.	١- تلف ٢- عشب ٣- طاقة
bamboo	نبات خشب الخيزران (البامبو)	- a tall plant which we can use to make cups and chairs - a tall tropical plant that has hollow stems.	
bamboo cup	كوب من الخيزران	a cup made from a tall, strong grass ⁽²⁾	
energy-saving light bulb	مصباح موفر للطاقة	a glass object that uses less electricity than usual to give light	
rechargeable battery	بطاريه قابلة لإعادة الشحن	something that gives power ⁽³⁾ to a machine, toy, car, etc. and which you can continue to add energy to, so they continue to work	
battery	بطارية	something that gives power to a machine ,toy and car.	

carbon footprint بصمة كربونية	is the amount of carbon dioxide released into the atmosphere as a result of the activities of a particular person.
light bulb مصباح	a glass object that you put in lights ,which changes electricity into light.
reusable قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	able to be used again
rising sea levels ارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر	when the sea becomes higher because climate change melts ⁽⁴⁾ the ice at the Poles ⁽⁵⁾
mangrove tree شجرة المانجروف	a small tree with roots ⁽⁶⁾ above the ground, which grows in or near the coast or rivers
seedling نبته	- a small plant which has started to grow from a seed - a young plant
crop محصول	a plant such as wheat ⁽⁷⁾ , rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food

٤- يذوب
٥- القطبين
٦- جذور
٧- القمح

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
sustainable	مستدام / صديق للبيئة	renewable / continual		non-renewable	غير مستدام / غير متجدد
pass	يجتاز / ينجح	succeed in		fail	يرسب
provide	يزود بـ / يمد بـ	supply / give		prevent / take	يمنع / يأخذ
rising	ارتفاع	increasing		decreasing	انخفاض
plug in	يوصل (بالكهرباء)	connect		plug out	يفصل (الكهرباء)
give up	يقطع عن / يتنازل عن	stop		continue	يستمر
reusable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	recyclable		non-recyclable	غير قابل لإعادة التدوير

Prefixes & Suffixes

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
re-	تفيد إعادة الفعل مرة أخرى	rechargeable / reusable قابل لإعادة الشحن / قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
un-	تعطي عكس المعنى	unusual غير عادي
-able	v → adj تحول الفعل إلى الصفة	sustainable / rechargeable مستدام / قابل لإعادة الشحن
-ic	n → adj يحول الاسم إلى الصفة	electric كهربائي
-y		healthy صحي
-ling	small; not important تأتي في الأسماء بمعنى صغير/غير مهم	seedling نبته صغيرة duckling بطة صغيرة

Expressions & Prepositions

get higher / lower	يصبح أعلى / أكثر انخفاضاً	grow into	ينمو ليصبح.....
solve problems	يحل مشكلات	come onto	يأتي إلى
pass a test	يجتاز اختبار	by the sea	بجوار البحر
use less	يستخدم بشكل أقل	protect from	يحمي..... من
on a farm	في مزرعة	get..... from	يحصل على..... من
on holiday	في إجازة	along the Red Sea coast	على امتداد ساحل البحر الاحمر
for longer	لمدة أطول		
because of	بسبب		

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
give	يعطي	gave	given
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
come	يأتي	came	come



Language Notes

1) provide for / provide with

• provide sth for sb يوفر لـ

Ex. Parents **provide** different needs **for** their children.

• provide sb with sth يزود بـ

Ex. She **provides** her young girl **with** all what she wants.

2) community / society

• community جماعة
(مجموعة من الناس يعيشون في منطقة واحدة)

Ex. The **community** inside my village respects the elders.

• society مجتمع
(مواطني دولة يتبعون نفس القوانين والتنظيمات)

Ex. The new projects will affect all the **society** positively.

3) rise / raise

• rise (rose / risen)
يرتفع (لا يتبعه مفعول) / تشرق الشمس

Ex. The sun **rises** in the east.

Ex. Smoke was **rising** from the chimney.

• raise (d)
يرفع (يتبعه مفعول)

Ex. If you know the answer, **raise** your hand.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Our school provides us _____ all books every year.
a. to b. with c. for d. by
- The _____ in Sinai is very kind to tourists.
a. country b. camp c. comment d. community
- Temperature _____ in summer.
a. raises b. rises c. prays d. bears



Audioscript

SB Page (23)

استمع إلى النصوص



Dalia : I want to do something to protect the environment, but I don't know what to do.

Reem : That's easy. Use less plastic. My family used to get all our shopping in plastic bags. But now, we use **reusable**⁽¹⁾ shopping bags.

Dalia : That's a good idea.

Reem : Also, get a bamboo coffee cup. Look at mine. You can't usually recycle the cups that you get from coffee shops. Bamboo is **sustainable**⁽²⁾, so bamboo products help the environment. I've also got a bamboo **toothbrush**⁽³⁾.

Dalia : Wow! I like your cup. It doesn't look like bamboo.

Reem : Do you use **energy-saving light bulbs**⁽⁴⁾ at home?

Dalia : Yes, we do. We didn't use to use energy-saving light bulbs, but we do now.

Reem : So do we. So you are doing something.

Dalia : OK, but I don't think I could **give up**⁽⁵⁾ my electric toothbrush for a bamboo toothbrush.



- ١- يمكن إعادة استخدامه
- ٢- مستدام/صديق للبيئة
- ٣- فرشاة اسنان
- ٤- مصابيح موفرة للطاقة
- ٥- يتنازل عن



Reading

SB page (24)

Climate Change ⁽¹⁾

Climate change means that many countries have more **floods**⁽²⁾ now because of **rising sea levels**⁽³⁾. Most trees and plants can't live in **seawater**⁽⁴⁾. When seawater comes onto **farms**⁽⁵⁾, the salt in the water kills the **crops**⁽⁶⁾ and farmers can't grow anything for many years. So, people lose their farms and their homes.

However, in hot countries like Egypt, **mangrove trees**⁽⁷⁾ grow in the sea along the **coast**⁽⁸⁾. **Mangrove forests**⁽⁹⁾ **protect**⁽¹⁰⁾ farms



- ١- التغير المناخي
- ٢- فيضانات
- ٣- ارتفاع مستوي سطح البحر
- ٤- ماء البحر
- ٥- مزارع
- ٦- المحاصيل
- ٧- شجر المانجروف
- ٨- الساحل
- ٩- غابات المانجروف
- ١٠- يحمي

and **communities**⁽¹¹⁾ from strong winds and storms. They provide **homes**⁽¹²⁾ for plants, fish and **sea animals**⁽¹³⁾. If there were more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.

Now in Egypt, people are growing thousands of mangrove **seedlings**⁽¹⁴⁾ to plant **along**⁽¹⁵⁾ the Red Sea coast. The problems caused by rising sea levels could **get worse**⁽¹⁶⁾ if they didn't plant new mangrove forests. So, they are going to plant 300,000 seedlings every year. When they grow into mangrove forests, they will protect the coast from rising sea levels.

- ١١- مجتمعات
١٢- مواطن / بيئات
١٣- حيوانات بحرية
١٤- نباتات
١٥- علي امتداد
١٦- تزداد سوءاً

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- A cup is a cup made from a tall, strong grass.
a. bamboo b. glass c. metal d. plastic
- means that the sea becomes higher because climate change melts the ice at the Poles.
a. Sustainable b. Rising sea levels c. Rechargeable d. Recycle
- A is a small plant which has started to grow from a seed. أسبوط 2023
a. hairbrush b. battery c. seedling d. crop
- To be is something causing little or no damage to the environment. بلي سويف 2023
a. inexpensive b. sustainable c. remote d. special
- A carbon is the amount of carbon dioxide released into the atmosphere. SB
a. footsteps b. acid c. footprint d. feet
- are small, young plants. دمياط 2024
a. Seeds b. Crops c. Seedlings d. Forests
- trees grow in the sea along the coast. Longman
a. Mango b. Mangrove c. Shark d. Coral
- "....." is a tall tropical plant that has hollow stems. فنا 2022
a. Corn b. Olive tree c. Bamboo d. Palm tree

Synonyms & Antonyms

- Petrol for cars isn't sustainable. The synonym of "sustainable" is
a. renewable b. raising c. interesting d. non-renewable

10. The opposite of "give up" is
 a. continue b. save c. stop d. waste
11. Plug in the computer. "Plug in" has a similar meaning to
 a. comment b. connect c. communicate d. congratulate
12. The synonym of the verb "provide" is
 a. take b. continue c. receive d. give
13. The antonym of "rising" is
 a. decreasing b. sending c. climbing d. increasing
14. is the opposite of "plug in".
 a. Turn on b. Give up c. Plug out d. Take in
15. The rise in prices is a problem in most countries. "Rise" is a synonym of ".....".
 a. decrease b. number c. increase d. amount
16. Yusuf succeeded in the exam last year. The word "succeeded in" means
 a. post b. pest c. past d. passed

الشرقية 2024

Longman

القليوبية 2022

Prefixes & Suffixes

17. These batteries are rechargeable. The suffix "-able" gives the
 a. adverb b. opposite c. noun d. adjective
18. The suffix "-ling" in seedling means
 a. important b. big c. small d. large
19. Mangrove trees are unusual. The prefix "un-" gives the
 a. meaning b. same c. opposite d. noun
20. The noun "health" is turned into an adjective by adding the suffix
 a. -ive b. -ing c. -y d. -ly
21. We use the suffix to form the adjective from "electricity"
 a. -ous b. -ic c. -ing d. -ment
22. You need to recharge your mobile. The prefix "re-" means to charge it
 a. again b. next c. less d. hard
23. To get the adjective from "sustain", you add the suffix
 a. -able b. -al c. -ment d. -tion

السويس 2023

Guessing the meaning

24. We can use that bag again. To use something again is to it. **WB**
 a. recharge b. reuse c. revise d. resolve
25. We should all help to live in clean environment. This means that we need environment.
 a. rechargeable b. greener c. polluted d. dirty

26. Dalia and Reem have energy-saving light bulbs at home. This means they _____ energy.

- a. give b. save c. waste d. solve

27. We can't continue to use petrol for cars because it is not _____. خفر الشيخ 2022

- a. simple b. surrounded c. sustainable d. rechargeable

28. Which of these is not a crop? _____

- a. Potatoes b. Bananas c. Fields d. Oranges

29. The seedling is _____ than the seed.

- a. smaller b. larger
c. more dangerous d. nice

SB



Language

1- Remember: اعتاد أن used to

• تستخدم (used to) في الإثبات بمعنى «اعتاد أن» للتعبير عن فعل كان يتكرر في الماضي ولم يعد يحدث في الوقت الحاضر:

مصدر الفعل + used to + inf. + فاعل

Ex. We **used to get** all our shopping in plastic bags, but now we don't.

Ex. I **used to play** football when I was young, but now I don't.

• في النفي نستخدم:

لم يكن معتاد أن + didn't use to + inf. + فاعل

Ex. We **didn't use to buy** energy-saving light bulbs, but we do now.

• في حالة السؤال بمعنى «هل» نستخدم:

Did + فاعل + use to + inf..... ?

Ex. A: **Did** you **use to play** games when you were young?

B: Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

• في حالة السؤال «بكلمة استفهام» نستخدم:

use to + inf.... ? + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

Ex. A: What **did you use to do** when you were in Alexandria?

B: I **used to go** swimming on holidays.

- He **used to be alone**, but now he (won't).

الوادي الجديد 2023

- انتبه: في الجملة السابقة الفاعل اعتاد أن يكون وحيداً (صفة) وجاء قبلها فعل (be)، وعند الحل نستخدم (isn't) بدلاً من (won't)

Answer : He **used to be alone**, but now **he isn't**.

- أما إذا كان الجزء الأول يحتوي على فعل، فلا بد أن تكون الإجابة (don't / doesn't)

- He **used to waste** water, but now he (not).

البحيرة 2022

Answer : He **used to waste** water, but now **he doesn't**.

في حالة النفي يمكن استخدام (never) بدلاً من (didn't) لكن لاحظ:

Didn't use to = Never used to

Ex. Shahd didn't use to play tennis.

= Shahd never used to play tennis.

Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

- The Ancient Egyptians (use) to use a form of writing called hieroglyphics. WB
- My grandparents (doesn't use) send emails - they wrote letters. WB
- We used to (wasting) water, but now we try to save water. الدقهلية 2023
- Ahmed (not use) to like cheese, but now he loves it. WB
- This building (used be) white, before they painted it blue. WB
- Heba (used to) like cheese, but now she does. شمال سيناء 2023
- They didn't (used to) drive electric cars in the past. الغربية 2022
- He used to waste water, but now he (not) . البحيرة 2022
- We (use) to use energy-saving light bulbs, but we do now. الشرقية 2023
- He used to walk to school, but now he (ride) his bike. الشرقية 2024

Longman Exercises

- Our grandparents used (to living) in a small village.
- My father (don't) use to get up late when he was young.
- Did you (used) to walk to work, dad?
- When he (be) a child, he used to like eating sweets.
- Gaber used to play football when he was a student, but nowadays he (do).

Bit by Bit Exercises

- Which park did you (used) to go to when you were young?
- Did Seham (use) go shopping when she was abroad?
- Who (does) you use to visit when you were on holiday?
- I used (have) a small car, but I have a bigger one now.
- Ali used to be late for work, but now he (won't).

21. Did your grandma (used to) tell you stories?
22. Tamer (use) to ride a bike when he was five.
23. (Do) you use to come to school late in the past?
24. What clothes (you did) use to wear when you were younger?
25. In the past, people (use) cups made of clay.
26. We are eating out more often than we (use).
27. Wessam (doesn't) used to listen to music.



2- The second conditional

الحالة الشرطية الثانية

• تعبر الحالة الشرطية الثانية عن مواقف تخيلية أو غير محتملة الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر والمستقبل:

Form التكوين

If + فاعل + would / could + inf. ➔ ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) + فاعل + If

Ex. If there **were** more mangrove trees, there **would be** fewer floods.



- يمكن أن تأتي **if** في وسط الجملة كالآتي:

Ex. There **would be** fewer floods **if** there **were** more mangrove trees.

- لاحظ أننا لا نضع فاصلة (comma) إذا جاءت **if** في وسط الجملة ونضعها إذا جاءت **if** في أول الجملة.

Question السؤال

... ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) + فاعل + if ➔ if + فاعل + would / Could (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. **Would they win** the match **if they trained** hard?

Ex. **If they trained** hard, **would they win** the match?

Usage الاستخدام

• يمكن أن نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية مع (could / might) بمعنى ربما كان سوف (would perhaps / possible)

Ex. The problems caused by rising sea levels **could get** worse **if they didn't plant** new mangrove forests.

Ex. **If I had** a car, I (might / would possible) go to work faster.

لإعطاء النصيحة (If I were...)

• نستخدم **were** مع **if** لإعطاء النصيحة

Ex. **If I were** you, I **would do** sport.

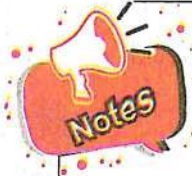
- لاحظ استخدام (were) مع الفاعل المفرد في حالة التخيل والنصيحة في الحالة الشرطية الثانية

Ex. **If Manal weren't / wasn't busy**, she **would help** you.

- If I (be) in trouble, would you help me?

Answer : **If I were** in trouble, would you help me?

ما 2022



أ- هناك أفعال مثل (cut - put - hit - shut - read etc.) لا تتغير عند تصريفها وتعتبر في الماضي البسيط إذا لم يضاف لها (s) مع (he - she - it) :

Ex. If he shut the door, the thieves wouldn't break into the house.

ب- تستخدم (Unless) بمعنى (إذا لم) أو تساوي (If.... did not) كالاتي :

Ex. If we didn't do the homework, our teacher would be angry.

- Unless we did the homework, our teacher would be angry.

لاحظ أننا استخدمنا بعد (Unless) الماضي البسيط من (do) أي أن

If + فاعل + didn't do = Unless + فاعل + did

Exercises on "The second conditional"

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

1. I would write to Nahla more often if I (know) her address. WB
2. The volleyball team (will win) the match if they had better players.
3. I would plant more trees if I (be) in your position. SB
4. If they (cutting) so many trees, they would have bigger forests. SB
5. We could visit our cousins more often if they (not live) in Canada. WB
6. More people (will use) that shop if it was open for longer. SB
7. What would you do if you never (watch) television? WB
8. What would you do if you (be) rich? WB القاهرة 2022
9. If we lived in Hurghada, we (go) to the beach. WB القاهرة 2023
10. If I were a millionaire, I (help) the poor. WB القليوبية 2023
11. If he read the question well, he (answers) it. WB الشرقية 2022

Longman Exercises

12. If he (wouldn't) stop smoking, he would have health problems.
13. What (did) you do if you lost your mobile in the park?
14. Would you help me if I (am) in trouble?
15. If less energy (was using), we wouldn't have this high pollution.



16. If I (have) enough time, I'd visit you.
17. Would she (enjoys) her time if she were with us?

Bit by Bit Exercises

18. Where (you go) if you had a holiday?
19. If there (is) electricity, I would recharge the batteries.
20. I would visit you if I (have) time.

21. Unless Noura (didn't finish) cooking, we wouldn't have lunch.
 22. We would (having) fewer storms if climate change stopped.
 23. If I (am) in your place, I would do sports.
 24. (Unless) I were you, I would take part in the project.
 25. If you (did) your project, you wouldn't get the degree.
 26. We would build a solar farm for our community if we (can buy) the land.
 27. If Abdullah was taller, he (be) a very good basketball player.



Speaking

1) Discussing how to live more sustainably

مناقشة كيف تعيش بطريقة أكثر محافظة على البيئة.

Question

- What could you stop using or buying that is bad for the environment?

ما الذي يمكنك التوقف عن استخدامه أو شراءه عندما يكون ضاراً للبيئة؟

- What could you do to live a more sustainable life?

ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل لكي تعيش حياة أكثر محافظة على البيئة؟

Answer

- I could stop using / buying things made of plastic.

يمكنني التوقف عن استخدام / شراء أشياء مصنوعة من البلاستيك.

- I could use less paper / plastic.

يمكنني استخدام ورق / بلاستيك بشكل أقل.

- I could use energy-saving light bulbs.

يمكنني استخدام مصابيح موفرة للطاقة.

2) Discussing visiting the Red Sea coast

مناقشة زيارة ساحل البحر الأحمر

Question

- Why do people visit the Red Sea coast?

لماذا يزور الناس ساحل البحر الأحمر؟

- What do they like to do there?

ما الذي يودون أن يفعلوه هناك؟

- How will new mangrove forests help the people who live in and visit the area?

كيف تساعد غابات المانجروف الجديدة الناس الذين يعيشون في المنطقة ومن يزورونها؟

Answer

- To enjoy the beautiful beaches.

للاستمتاع بالشواطئ الجميلة.

- They like to go swimming, diving and shopping.

هم يحبون السباحة والغطس والتسوق.

- Mangrove forests protect farms and communities from strong winds and storms.

تحمي غابات المانجروف المزارع والمجتمعات من الرياح القوية والعواصف.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Magda is at the supermarket. She wants to buy a shopping bag.

جنوب سيناء 2022

Assistant : Hello, how can I help you?

Magda : ①

Assistant : What type? Normal or reusable one .

Magda : ②

Assistant : Good choice. This is good for the environment.

Magda : ③?

Assistant : It's only fifty pounds.

Magda : That's great, ④?

Assistant : Yes, it is well made.

Magda : OK. ⑤ Thank you.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

would have - reusable - protect - will have - pollute - less

I want to do something to protect our environment. If we work together to keep the environment clean, we ① a healthy life. We should use ② plastic. We can buy ③ shopping bags. Also, we can use bamboo coffee cups. Bamboo is sustainable and doesn't ④ the environment.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a tall plant which we can use to make cups and chairs. سوهاج 2023

a. mangrove b. seagrass c. bamboo d. seedling

2. are rice and vegetables that we grow on farms.

a. Crooks b. Coasts c. Crops d. Areas

3. We should have sustainable development. "Sustainable" here means

..... Longman
a. known b. short c. continual d. limited

4. We have rising sea levels. This means the sea is getting

a. lower b. hotter c. fatter d. higher


5. I can use this plastic bags again. This means they are

a. reusable b. rechargeable c. rising d. repaired

6. We should use rechargeable batteries. "Rechargeable" means that we can charge them

a. again and again b. once c. first d. at the beginning Longman

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you wanted to do a green initiative, what it (be)? Longman
2. Did you use (to travelling) by train when you were at the university? Longman
3. Rodina used to have short hair but now she (had) long hair. Longman
4. What (you would do) if you didn't catch the school bus?
5. My grandpa (uses to) work as a science teacher.
6. Ali (will) pass the test, if he studied harder. دمياط 2022
7. I want to buy a (use) car. It can be cheap. 

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

"A review of a visit to the Red Sea"

مطروح 2022

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- Where is the Red Sea?
- What do you think of the visit?
- What can you see and do there?
- What are the problems that affect people there?
- Suggest solutions to these problems.

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- The Red Sea is in
- A visit to the Red Sea is
- Some visitors can harm
- We can protect the coast by

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



enormous	ضخم	water wheel	ساقية
power	قوة	wind turbines	توربينات الرياح
air conditioning	نظام تكييف الهواء	diagram	رسم بياني
remote control	جهاز التحكم عن بعد	produce (d)	ينتج
electric car	سيارته تعمل بالكهرباء	promise (d)	يوعد
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة	destroy (ed)	يدمر
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية		



Vocabulary

message	رسالة	inexpensive	رخيص الثمن
factory workers	عمال المصنع	screen	شاشة
pollution	تلوث	heating	تدفئة
especially	خصوصاً	accident	حادثة
surprised	مندهش	horrible	بشع / فظيع
frightened	خائف / مرعوب	superhero	بطل خارق
green	صديق للبيئة - أخضر	roof	سطح مبنى
ability	قدرة	fridge	ثلاجة
the Iron Woman	المرأة الحديدية «قصة»	reduce (d)	يقلل
web post	منشور على الإنترنت	absorb (ed)	يمتص
truck	سيارة نقل «شاحنة»	ski (ed)	يتزلج / يتزحلق
totally	كلياً / تماماً	plan (n) (ned)	خطة - يخطط



Definitions

enormous	ضخم	very big/ massive	
destroy (ed)	يدمر	damage something so badly that you cannot repair it	
promise (d)	يوعد	say you will do something	
power	قوة	special ability ⁽¹⁾ to do something	١- قدرة
produce (d)	ينتج	make or create ⁽²⁾	٢- يخلق / يبدع
air conditioning	جهاز تكييف هواء	a system that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm	٣- بعيد
remote control	جهاز التحكم عن بعد	- a machine that you can use to control something from far away ⁽³⁾	
computer mouse	فأرة الكمبيوتر	- you use it to control your television	
		you can use it to move around the computer screen	

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
enormous	ضخم	huge / massive		tiny / small	ضئيل / صغير
destroy	يدمر	finish and end / damage		build / repair	يبني / يصلح
produce	ينتج	make / create		consume	يستهلك
right	صحيح	true / correct		wrong	خطأ
frightened	خائف	scared		safe	آمن
inexpensive	رخيص	cheap		expensive	غالي الثمن
easy	سهل	simple		difficult / hard	صعب
agree	يوافق	accept		disagree	لا يوافق
turn on	يشغل جهاز	switch on		turn off	يطفى جهاز

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
in-	opposite تعطي عكس المعنى	in expensive رخيص
-ion	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	pollut ion التلوث
-er	v → n تحول الاسم إلى فعل	work er عامل
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الحال	total ly / especial ly تماماً/ خصوصاً
-ed	adj → n تحول الصفة إلى الاسم	surpris ed / frighten ed مندهش/ خائف

Expressions & Prepositions

find an answer to	يجد إجابة لـ	(be) friends with	يكون صداقة مع
once more	مرة أخرى	work at	يعمل في
keep your house cool	يحافظ على برودة منزلك	at the end of	في نهاية
save electricity	يوفر الكهرباء	look at	ينظر إلى
(be) able to	قادر على	come from	ينبعث من
get used to	يعتاد على	move around	يتحرك حول / يتجول
worried about	قلق بشأن	give up	يقطع عن
on the roof	على السطح	travel from one place to another	يسافر من مكان لآخر

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
let	يترك/ يسمح	let	let



Language Notes

1) less / fewer

• **less** أقل للكمية (تأتي مع الأسماء التي لا تعد)

Ex. If we used greener energy, we would produce **less** pollution.

• **fewer** أقل للعدد (تأتي مع الأسماء التي تعد)

Ex. We would have **fewer** storms if climate change stopped.

2) air conditioning / air conditioner / air conditioned

• **air conditioning**

نظام تكييف الهواء — إسم مفرد لا يعد

Ex. I wish my car had **air conditioning**

• **air conditioner**

جهاز تكييف الهواء — إسم مفرد يعد

Ex. In hot weather, clean your **air conditioner**.

• **air conditioned: having air conditioning = (adj)** مُكَيَّف (للمكان)

Ex. My company has **air-conditioned** offices.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Try to use _____ water. It's better for the environment.

a. fewer b. many c. less d. lots

2. I have _____ in my room.

a. air conditioning b. air conditioned c. air pollution d. aeroplane



Reading

SB page (26)

استمع إلى النصوص



The Iron Woman

One day, a girl called Lucy was **surprised**⁽¹⁾ to see **the Iron Woman**⁽²⁾. She was **enormous**⁽³⁾, with big red eyes. Lucy was **frightened**⁽⁴⁾, but she found that the woman wanted Lucy to help her. Lucy's father worked at a factory and the Iron Woman asked her where the factory was. **Pollution**⁽⁵⁾ from the factory was killing all the fish in the river, so she wanted to **destroy**⁽⁶⁾ it.



The Iron Woman had **special powers**⁽⁷⁾ so that she was able to make all the factory workers become fish. The workers all had to live in the river and started to understand how difficult life was for the fish.

Lucy wanted to help the Iron Woman, but she was **worried**⁽⁸⁾ about her father. So after the Iron Woman left, Lucy called a boy called Hogarth. He was friends with the Iron Man.

- ١- مندهشة
- ٢- المرأة الحديدية
- ٣- ضخمة
- ٤- خائفة
- ٥- التلوث
- ٦- تدمر
- ٧- قوى / قدرات خاصة
- ٨- قلق

'If you brought the Iron Man here,' said Lucy, 'we could find an answer to the problem.'

The next day, Lucy met Hogarth and the Iron Man at the factory. When the Iron Woman arrived, the Iron Man told her that he had a **plan**⁽⁹⁾. Soon, the Iron Woman let them become people again. They could stay people if they **promised**⁽¹⁰⁾ that the factory would not **produce**⁽¹¹⁾ any more pollution. They all agreed, and the river became **clean**⁽¹²⁾ once more.

٩- خطة

١٠- يوعد

١١- ينتج

١٢- نظيف

SB Page (28)

What do you do to help the environment? Have you given up anything?

We're using the **air conditioning**⁽¹⁾ less often. In summer when it's very hot, that's difficult, **especially**⁽²⁾ at night, but you **get used to**⁽³⁾ it. We can't use our computer less often, though, because we need it for work.

Dom and Julia Baldwin, USA.

I always used to get the **newest**⁽⁴⁾ phone. I've stopped doing that now because it isn't sustainable. Oh, and now I use rechargeable batteries for the TV **remote control**⁽⁵⁾ and my computer mouse.

Sawsan, Egypt

I live in the country and I need to have a car. I've bought an **electric car**⁽⁶⁾ because it's **greener**⁽⁷⁾. Also, I always take a reusable bag when I go shopping.

Greta, Australia

We're going to give up living in the city because we want to grow our own vegetables and live a **simpler life**⁽⁸⁾. If we stayed in the city, we wouldn't be able to do that.

Luc and Emile, France



١- تكييف هواء

٢- خصوصاً

٣- يعتاد على

٤- الأحدث

٥- جهاز التحكم عن

بعد

٦- سيارة كهربائية

٧- أكثر حماية للبيئة

٨- حياة أبسط

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The passage is mainly about....

a. air conditioning

b. helping the environment

c. rechargeable batteries

d. living a simpler life

2. Infer from the text what Sawsan from Egypt stopped doing.

استنتج من النص ماذا الذي توقفت سوسن من مصر عن فعله.

3. Summarise Luc and Emile's speech in a short sentence.

لخص حديث لوك وإميل في جملة قصيرة.

Writing Skill (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. We should use air conditioning when it's very hot. يجب أن نستخدم تكييف الهواء عندما يكون الطقس حاراً جداً.

2. The newest phones are not sustainable.

الهواتف الأحدث ليست صديقة للبيئة.

3. We should use rechargeable batteries.

يجب أن نستخدم بطاريات قابلة لإعادة الشحن.

4. Electric cars are greener.
5. Life in villages is simpler.

السيارات الكهربائية أكثر حفاظًا على البيئة.
الحياة في القرى حياة أبسط.

They are going to live a simpler life away from the city.

2. she stopped using the newest phones.

1. b. helping the environment.

Answers

WB Page (86)

A large factory in Denmark⁽¹⁾ has an inexpensive way⁽²⁾ of producing renewable energy. It burns rubbish⁽³⁾! If the factory did not burn the rubbish, it would go to landfill sites⁽⁴⁾. By burning the rubbish, the factory produces enough⁽⁵⁾ electricity for 150,000 homes. If the factory burned fossil fuels⁽⁶⁾ to make this electricity, it would produce a lot more greenhouse gases. There is a garden on the roof⁽⁷⁾ of the factory. The plants there absorb⁽⁸⁾ some of the air pollution that comes from⁽⁹⁾ the factory. You can also ski down⁽¹⁰⁾ the roof! Isn't that amazing?



- ١- دولة الدنمارك
- ٢- طريقة رخيصة
- ٣- يحرق القمامة
- ٤- مقالب القمامة
- ٥- كافي
- ٦- الوقود الحفري
- ٧- السطح
- ٨- يمتص
- ٩- ينبعث من
- ١٠- يتزلج



Audioscript

SB Page (27)

Judy : What did you think of the story, Dina?

Dina : I liked it. I think the message⁽¹⁾ is easy to understand. Factories⁽²⁾ should not produce pollution.

Judy : I agree, but the Iron Woman wanted to destroy the factory. I don't think that's right. If we didn't have factories, we wouldn't have so many things to buy in the shops.

Dina : That's why the Iron Man had a different plan. He didn't want to destroy the factory.

Judy : I didn't like his plan. Some of the factory workers probably⁽³⁾ didn't like the pollution, but if they didn't work at the factory, they wouldn't have any money.

Dina : But Judy, when they became people again, they promised that the factory would not produce any more pollution. So his plan was a good one!

Judy : That's true. How do you think they made the river clean once more?

Dina : Perhaps⁽⁴⁾ the factory started to use renewable⁽⁵⁾ energy.

Judy : You're right. If the factory used renewable energy, it wouldn't produce pollution.

Dina : And if it didn't produce pollution, then everyone would be happier.



- ١- رسالة
- ٢- مصانع
- ٣- من المحتمل
- ٤- ربما
- ٥- متجدد

Injy : Hana, have you seen this **diagram**⁽¹⁾ of what uses most **electricity**⁽²⁾ in the home?

Hana : No, I haven't. What does it say, Injy?

Injy : It says that air conditioning and **heating**⁽³⁾ use the most electricity. In fact, these use **nearly**⁽⁴⁾ 50% of the home's electricity.

Hana : That's a lot! What uses the second most?

Injy : Hot water. That uses about 15% of the home's electricity.

Hana : What about things in the kitchen? Don't they use much electricity?

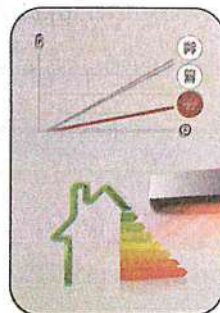
Injy : They don't use very much. The fridge and the **oven**⁽⁵⁾ both use about 4%.

Hana : That's interesting. And what about the TV and computers?

Injy : Televisions use about 3% and computers about 1%.

Hana : OK. So if I wanted to **save**⁽⁶⁾ electricity, I would use less air conditioning and heating?

Injy : **That's right**⁽⁷⁾. Oh, and turn off the lights, too. They use about 12% of the house's electricity.



- ١- رسم بياني
٢- الكهرباء
٣- تدفئة
٤- تقريباً
٥- فرن
٦- يوفّر
٧- هذا صحيح

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. _____ is a system that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm.

الدفعلية 2023

- a. Factory b. Remote control c. Water wheel d. Air conditioning

2. To say that you will do something is to _____.

دمياط 2022

- a. absorb b. destroy c. promise d. produce

3. A _____ control is a device that helps you control and deal with a television, for example.

Longman

- a. full b. near c. far d. remote

4. _____ is a special ability to do something.

مرسى مطروح 2024

- a. Project b. Power c. Crop d. Great

Synonyms & Antonyms

5. The word _____ is close in meaning to "finish and end".

أبناؤنا في الخارج 2022

- a. fright b. design c. destroy d. find

6. The synonym of "enormous" is _____.

بنى سويف 2022

- a. massive b. classical c. usual d. national

7. "Frightened" is the same meaning as
 a. excited b. bored c. safe d. scared
8. The word "make" can give similar meaning to the word
 a. give b. advise c. produce d. take
9. The antonym of "inexpensive" is
 a. cheap b. expensive c. renewable d. reusable
10. The boy was frightened of the snake. The opposite of "frightened" is
 a. expensive b. happy c. scared d. safe
11. The antonym of "hard" is
 a. remote b. difficult c. simple d. far

2022 ق.ب

السويس 2023

Prefixes & Suffixes

12. We add the prefix to the word "agree" to form the opposite.
 a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. im-
13. We add the suffix to the verb "work" to refer to "person".
 a. -ing b. -er c. -ed d. -full
14. The prefix gives the opposite of "expensive".
 a. in- b. un- c. dis- d. il-
15. Smoke from factories pollutes the air. We use the suffix to give the noun of "pollute".
 a. -ed b. -ly c. -ion d. -ive
16. To turn the adjective "total" into an adverb we add the suffix
 a. -ly b. -ing c. -ous d. -er

الشرقية 2022

Guessing the meaning

17. This factory uses the sun to produce electricity. This means it uses
 a. electric cars b. remote controls c. water wheels d. solar panels
18. I use this machine to control my TV. This means I use
 a. air conditioning b. a battery c. a mouse d. a remote control
19. I told Hatem that I'll help him. This means that I to help him.
 a. produced b. reduced c. promised d. disagreed
20. Air makes the air inside a building cold.
 a. conditioned b. conditioner c. conditioning d. cooler
21. The earthquake destroyed the building. The building is now
 a. preserved b. repaired c. damaged d. recycled

البحيرة 2024

Speaking

1) Discussing pollution from factories

مناقشة التلوث الصادر من المصانع

Question

- Why are factories important?
لماذا تعد المصانع مهمة؟
- Do you think that all factories produce pollution?
هل تعتقد أن كل المصانع ينتج عنها تلوث؟
- What would you do if a factory in your area produced a lot of pollution?
ماذا كنت ستفعل لو أن مصنعاً في منطقتك انبعث منه تلوثاً كبيراً؟

Answer

- Factories are important because they produce our needs.
المصانع مهمة لأنها تنتج احتياجاتنا.
- No, I don't think so, because some factories are environmentally-friendly.
لا اعتقد ذلك. لأن بعض المصانع صديقة للبيئة.
- I would call the police to stop it from polluting our community.
كنت ساتصل بالشرطة لمنعهم من تلويث مجتمعنا.

2) Talking about renewable energy

التحدث عن الطاقة المتجددة

Question

- Would you choose solar panels to have a renewable energy in your area? Why?
هل كنت ستختار الألواح الشمسية لإنتاج الطاقة المتجددة في منطقتك؟ لماذا؟
- Would you choose water wheels to have a renewable energy in your area? Why?
هل كنت ستختار سواقي المياه لإنتاج الطاقة المتجددة في منطقتك؟ لماذا؟

Answer

- Yes, because Egypt enjoys sunny weather almost round the year.
نعم، لأن مصر تتمتع بجو مشمس طوال العام.
- Yes, because Egypt has the River Nile and many canals.
نعم، لأن مصر تمتلك نهر النيل وقنوات مائية عديدة.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3&4



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mona and Salma are talking about ways to help the environment.

Mona : Why are factories important?

Salma : ①

Mona : Do you think that all factories produce pollution?

Salma : ②

Mona : ③ ?

Salma : Factories can use solar panels. ④ ?

Mona : Yes, I know them. They use the sun to produce energy.

Salma : ⑤

Mona : You're right. We can use electric cars to keep the environment clean.

Salma : I hope our planet will be cleaner.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

would have - planting - would - protected - protect - energy

شمال سينا 2022

Our environment is very important, so we should ① it. To make it cleaner and greener, we have to use safe ② We can also help our environment by ③ more trees. If our government used wind turbines, it ④ be cheaper and cleaner energy.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An elephant is an animal of enormous size. "Enormous" has the same meaning as very

Longman

a. fast b. small c. big d. slow

2. The verb "agree" gives the meaning of

a. accept b. refuse c. ignore d. advise

3. The opposite of "turn on" is

a. turn up b. turn over c. turn off d. turn of

4. You can use a computer to move around the computer screen.

الفهم 2022

- a. hand b. board c. mouse d. camera

5. We turn the verb "surprise" into an adjective by adding

- a. -d b. -al c. -ous d. -ic

6. I use rechargeable batteries for the TV control.

قراءة 2024

- a. far b. fast c. near d. remote

7. The word "expensive" can be the opposite by adding the prefix

- a. sur- b. in- c. un- d. dis-

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

WB

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

"A review of the best form of renewable energy that you could use in your community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What are the best forms of renewable energy?
- Which of them is the most suitable for your community? Why?
- How can it help produce sustainable energy?
- Do you think that other communities use it?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- There are many forms of
- The most suitable one is
- This form is suitable because it
- People in other communities use

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 29-31 WB pages 88-90

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



initiative	مبادرة	personally	شخصياً
region	منطقة/إقليم	solar farm	محطة توليد طاقة شمسية
desertification	ظاهرة التصحر	create (d)	يبتكر/يستحدث
landscape	منظر طبيعي	interrupt (ed)	يقاطع أثناء الكلام



Vocabulary

interview	مقابلة شخصية	power station	محطة طاقة
permission	إذن / تصريح	organiser	منظم
quite	تماماً / إلى حد كبير	set up	ينشئ / يؤسس
reason	سبب	farming	الزراعة
report	تقرير	farmland	الأرض الزراعية
reporter	مراسل صحفي	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
survey	استبيان / استطلاع رأي	popular	معروف / شائع
bar chart	رسم بياني بالأعمدة	source	مصدر
description	وصف	improve (d)	يحسن - يتحسن
the whole world	العالم بأسره	farm (ed) (n)	يزرع/مزرعة
growing	متنامي / متزايد	record (ed)	يسجل



Definitions

initiative	مبادرة	something to improve a difficult situation ⁽¹⁾ .
region	منطقة/إقليم	an area of a country
desertification	ظاهرة التصحر	changing an area into desert
create	يبتكر/يستحدث	make or produce
landscape	منظر طبيعي	a view ⁽²⁾ showing an area of land
solar farm	محطة طاقة شمسية	an area with many solar panels ⁽³⁾ that provide electricity
interrupt	يقاطع أثناء الكلام	if you interrupt someone you speak to stop someone else from speaking
source	مصدر	a person, thing or place that gives information.

١- موقف
٢- منظر
٣- ألواح طاقة شمسية

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
set up	ينشئ	start		finish	ينهي
totally	تماماً	completely		partly	جزئياً
useful	مفيد	helpful		useless	عديم الفائدة
ugly	قبيح	terrible		beautiful	جميل
worried	قلق	anxious		calm	هادئ
advantage	ميزة	merit		disadvantage	عيب
introduction	مقدمة	beginning		conclusion	خاتمة
remember	يتذكر	don't forget / recall		forget	ينسى
improve	يحسن/يطور	develop		damage	يدمر/يتلف

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix/Suffix	Use	Examples
dis-	opposite تعطي عكس المعنى	dis agree / dis advantage لا يوافق / عيب
-tion	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	desertifica tion / descrip tion التصحّر / وصف
-ing		farm ing / grow ing الزراعة / متزايد
-ful	v → adj تحول الفعل إلى الصفة	use ful مفيد
-er	person تكون اسم الفاعل	organise r منظم
-y	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	sunn y مشمس
-scape	تأتي في الأسماء بمعنى a view / a scene of	land scape منظر طبيعي

Expressions & Prepositions

create problems for	يتسبب في مشاكل لـ..	record the answers	يكتب/يدون الإجابات
solve a problem	يحل مشكلة	happy about	سعيد بشأن
do a survey	يجري استطلاع رأي	think about / of	يفكر في
produce money for	يجلب المال لـ	south of	جنوب
on farmland	في المزرعة	instead of (adv.) = in the place of sth/sb	بدلاً من
on the land	على الأرض	at sea	عند البحر
two kilometres from	على بعد ٢ كيلو متر	ask for permission	يطلب الإذن
from west to east	من الغرب إلى الشرق	by 2050	بحلول عام ٢٠٥٠

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
set up	ينشئ/ يؤسس	set up	set up
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
show	يعرض/ يبين	showed	shown



Language Notes

1) desertification / deforestation

- **desertification** ظاهرة التصحر (تحويل الأرض الخصبة إلى قاحلة)

Ex. We can solve the problem of **desertification** by increasing farmland.

- **deforestation**

إزالة الغابات

Ex. **Deforestation** affects the wildlife badly.

2) hundred / thousand / million

لاحظ أن **hundred/thousand/million** لا تجمع إذا جاء بعدها اسم، لكن يجمع الاسم الذي يليها:

Ex. This project will create jobs for **two million people**.

ويمكن جمعها إذا أتى بعدها حرف جر **of** أو إذا لم يأتي قبلها رقم.

Ex. The government will plant **millions of trees** in the desert.

3) lose / miss

- **lose** يفقد (شيء) / يخسر

Ex. She **lost** her mobile on the bus last week.

- **miss** يفتقد (شخص) / يفوته (شيء)

Ex. I **missed** my family when I was on holiday in Paris.

Ex. I was late and **missed** the bus.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- An area which has no rain may suffer from **يعاني من** the problem of
a. desertification b. communication c. translation d. pollution
- people use the internet nowadays.
a. Million of b. Millions of c. Thousand of d. Hundred of
- Hazim is studying in London now, he his family so much.
a. spends b. misses c. loses d. wastes



Audioscript

SB Page (29)

استمع إلى النصوص



Reporter : So, Mrs Jones. Tell us why your **community**⁽¹⁾ decided to build a solar park on this **farmland**⁽²⁾. This area is popular for **tourism**⁽³⁾ and people come here to enjoy the **countryside**⁽⁴⁾ and the beautiful **views**⁽⁵⁾ of trees and hills. Many people would say the solar park is ugly. They don't want to see lots and lots of ugly solar panels in the countryside.

Mrs Jones : I don't agree. **Personally**,⁽⁶⁾ I think that the solar panels are beautiful. We need to create clean energy that doesn't pollute the environment. Solar panels produce clean, renewable energy. In my opinion, we need to stop burning **fossil fuels**⁽⁷⁾ which create greenhouse gases and cause climate change.

Reporter : What do you think about the solar park, Mr Brown? Do you agree with Mrs Jones?

Mr Brown : I agree that we need clean, renewable energy. But I don't agree that we should build solar parks in the countryside. We should build them in cities near factories. And I don't agree that they're beautiful. They're ugly and they destroy the countryside. Farmers need this land.

Mrs Jones : I totally **disagree**⁽⁸⁾. The solar panels don't destroy the countryside. This solar park was built on one field. No trees were **cut down**⁽⁹⁾ and the farmer can still keep his sheep in the fields. The sheep can walk under the solar panels to eat the grass. And don't forget, the solar panels produce money for the community. It helps us all. In my opinion, every community should have their own **source**⁽¹⁰⁾ of energy.

Reporter : Well, thank you both for talking to us today. Now it's time to go back to the studio.

- ١- مجتمع
- ٢- ارض زراعية
- ٣- السياحة
- ٤- الريف
- ٥- مناظر
- ٦- شخصياً
- ٧- وقود حفري
- ٨- لا اوافق
- ٩- يقطع
- ١٠- مصدر



Reading

SB page (30)

The Great Green Wall⁽¹⁾

This **report**⁽²⁾ is about a **green initiative**⁽³⁾ in Africa called the Great Green Wall. This initiative **was set up**⁽⁴⁾ in 2007 by **the African Union**⁽⁵⁾ to solve the problem of **desertification**⁽⁶⁾ in the **Sahel region of Africa**⁽⁷⁾.

Desertification happens when green land becomes desert. In the Sahel region, this has happened because climate change is

- ١- السور الأخضر الكبير
- ٢- تقرير
- ٣- المبادرة الخضراء
- ٤- ينفذ / يؤسس
- ٥- الاتحاد الأفريقي
- ٦- ظاهرة التصحر
- ٧- منطقة الساحل الأفريقي

creating more droughts⁽⁸⁾ every year and people do not always farm⁽⁹⁾ the land well. People cannot grow food and they are losing their farms and homes.

The Great Green Wall initiative will plant millions of trees, seedlings and plants across Africa from west⁽¹⁰⁾ to east⁽¹¹⁾, to create a growing⁽¹²⁾, green landscape⁽¹³⁾. When it is finished, the wall will be 8,000 km long. It will be the biggest living thing in the world. It will create jobs for 10 million people. The trees and plants will improve the land for farming⁽¹⁴⁾ again, and people will be able to grow crops.

The Great Green Wall will improve⁽¹⁵⁾ the lives of everyone who lives in the Sahel region. It will also help reduce the problems caused by climate change for the whole world.

- ٨- يتسبب في جفاف أكثر
- ٩- يزرع
- ١٠- الغرب
- ١١- الشرق
- ١٢- متنامي / متزايد
- ١٣- مناظر طبيعية
- خضراء
- ١٤- الزراعة
- ١٥- يحسن

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

- The passage is about
 a. The African Union b. The Great Green Wall
 c. Africa d. The Sahel region
- Infer from the text when desertification happens. استنتج من النص متى تحدث ظاهرة التصحر.
- Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence. لخص الفقرة الأخيرة في جملة واحدة.

Writing Skill (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

- The Great Green Wall initiative was set up in 2007. تأسست مبادرة السور الأخضر الكبير في عام ٢٠٠٧.
- Desertification happens when green land becomes desert تحدث ظاهرة التصحر عندما تصبح الأرض الخضراء صحراء.
- The initiative will create jobs for 10 million people. ستوفر المبادرة فرص عمل لعشرة مليون شخص.
- The initiative will improve the lives of everyone. ستحسن المبادرة من حياة الجميع.

سوف تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي.

3. The Great Green Wall will help reduce the problem caused by climate change. ستساعد في تقليل المشكلة التي تسببها تغير المناخ.
2. When green land becomes desert. عندما تصبح الأرض الخضراء صحراء.
1. b. The Great Green Wall. السور الأخضر الكبير.

Answers

SB Page (31)

There are many green initiatives across⁽¹⁾ the world which are helping to protect the environment. There are projects to build solar farms⁽²⁾ to create green energy⁽³⁾. There are projects to plant seedlings and trees to give us cleaner air. At home, people are choosing to use rechargeable batteries and energy-saving light bulbs. Some people are buying more products made of bamboo, which is sustainable and doesn't cause pollution. Some people are even using air conditioning less often because it uses so much energy. What can you do to help protect the environment?



- ١- عبر
- ٢- محطات طاقة شمسية
- ٣- طاقة نظيفة

Imad : What do you think of the plan to build a **power station**⁽¹⁾ outside the town?

Fares : In my opinion, it's a good thing. It will give us more electricity and jobs, too.

Imad : I don't agree that it's a good thing. It burns fossil fuels. Don't forget, fossil fuels are not sustainable.

Fares : I **totally**⁽²⁾ disagree. People are still finding **oil**⁽³⁾ under the ground every year.

Imad : Personally, I think that we shouldn't build any new power stations. We should only use renewable energy.

Fares : I agree that we need renewable energy, but I think we still need to use fossil fuels, too.



١- محطة لتوليد
الطاقة
٢- تماماً
٣- البترول

Dalida : What do you think of this plan to build **wind turbines**^{(1)*} in the sea near the beach?

Nesma : Personally, I think it's a good idea. Wind turbines produce renewable energy.

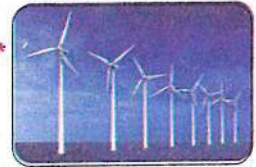
Dalida : I agree that we need renewable energy, but I think the wind turbines should be built on the land.

Nesma : I don't agree that they should be built on the land. There is more wind at sea.

Dalida : Yes, but don't forget, many tourists love our beaches. They don't want to look at **ugly**⁽²⁾ wind turbines.

Nesma : I totally disagree. In my opinion, wind turbines **look nice**⁽³⁾, and they won't be very near the beach.

Dalida : **Perhaps**⁽⁴⁾ you're right.



١- توربينات توليد
الطاقة بالرياح
٢- قبيح
٣- يبدو لطيفاً
٤- ربما

Say it
correctly

* turbine

ينطق الحرفين **ur** في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق حرفي **ir** في كلمة **bird** وينطق حرف **a** مثلها ينطق في كلمة **fine**

Cleve Hill Solar Farm

This report is about plans to build the largest solar farm in the UK. The initiative called Cleve Hill, plans to produce enough energy for 91,000 homes across the region and should be open in 2023.

The UK plans to use renewable energy **instead of**⁽¹⁾ fossil fuels by 2050 and Cleve Hill will help with this. The solar farm will have 880,000 solar



١- بدلاً من

panels on countryside that was farmland, around two kilometres from the village of Graveney. In the past, solar farms were not very good in the UK *because it is not very sunny*. However, new large batteries in the solar farm can save and produce electricity even when the sun is not *shining*⁽²⁾.

٢- مشرقة / ساطعة
٣- الحياة البرية
٤- خطير
٥- المنظمون

Some people in the village are not happy about the plan. They think that the solar farm is too big and will create problems for *wildlife*⁽³⁾. Also, they are worried that the large batteries are *dangerous*⁽⁴⁾ and could cause fires.

The *organisers*⁽⁵⁾, however, say that the batteries are safe. They also say that there will be special areas for wildlife. They say that the solar farm will help to reduce the problems caused by climate change.

Videoscript

SB Page 29

The energy that is produced by the sun is called *solar energy*⁽¹⁾. This is good for the environment because it is renewable. This means that it comes from *natural sources*⁽²⁾.

١- الطاقة الشمسية
٢- مصادر طبيعية
٣- سطوع الشمس
٤- محطة بنبان
٥- مشاريع تجارية
٦- مدينة الغردقة
٧- الحكومة
٨- كوكب

Egypt has almost nine and a half hours of *sunshine*⁽³⁾ every day. The sun is nearly always shining and there aren't usually many clouds in the sky. It is one of the sunniest countries in the world. This is why Egypt is using the sun to produce energy.

Benban Solar Park⁽⁴⁾ is the largest solar farm in Africa and one of the biggest in the world. Benban opened in 2019 and it covers almost 38 square kilometres. It has got thousands of solar panels. It produces enough energy every year for hundreds of thousands of homes and *businesses*⁽⁵⁾. Did you know that, if you went into space, you would be able to see Benban Solar Park?

Another type of renewable energy is wind energy. There are wind farms in Egypt, like this one in *Hurghada*⁽⁶⁾.

Egypt uses a lot of renewable energy, and the *government*⁽⁷⁾ wants people to use more. They want 20% of all energy to come from renewable sources. If we all used more renewable energy, it would help us to save the *planet*⁽⁸⁾.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- _____ is changing an area into desert.
a. Fossil fuel b. Solar farm c. Landscape d. Desertification
- A/An _____ is a view showing an area of land.
a. opinion b. energy c. solar farm d. landscape

المونوفية 2022

3. A/An _____ is an area with many solar panels that provide electricity.
 a. solar farm b. region c. landscape d. initiative
4. A/An _____ is an area of a country.
 a. initiative b. region c. map d. source
5. A/An _____ is something to improve a difficult situation. الشرقية 2023
 a. initiative b. fight c. war d. tour

Synonyms & Antonyms

6. Solar farms have many advantages. The word "advantage" can be replaced by _____.
 a. region b. initiative c. merit d. disadvantage
7. I'm so worried about the results of my exam. The opposite of "worried" is _____.
 a. calm b. anxious c. disappointed d. sad
8. We are worried about our grandfather's health. The word "worried" means _____ SB
 a. interesting b. anxious c. dangerous d. calm
9. Personally, I think solar panels are useful. The word "useful" can be replaced by _____ SB
 a. useless b. helpless c. terrible d. helpful
10. The street would be ugly if we didn't plant more trees. The antonym of "ugly" is _____ SB
 a. terrible b. beautiful c. sunny d. dangerous
11. Khaled would like to set up his own business "set up" means _____ اسوان 2022
 a. finish b. start c. play d. use
12. The initiative aims to create a growing, green landscape. The word "Growing" here is a/an _____
 a. noun b. adjective c. adverb d. verb
13. The suffix "-scape" in landscape means _____
 a. review b. interview c. view d. place

Prefixes & Suffixes

14. We add the suffix _____ to the verb "use" to give the adjective. دمياط 2022
 a. -tion b. -ive c. -ful d. -er
15. We get the noun from the verb "farm" by adding the suffix _____
 a. -ation b. -ing c. -y d. -ful
16. The prefix "dis-" is added to the word "advantage" to give the _____
 a. noun b. opposite c. synonym d. meaning

Guessing the meaning

17. This initiative will produce many jobs. This means that it will _____ many jobs.
 a. create b. record c. destroy d. put

18. Ahmed always organises events. This means he is an
 a. organiser b. organises c. organisation d. organised
19. "Don't forget" means to
 a. create b. remember c. request d. interrupt

جواب سيناء 2022 SB



Speaking



Asking for and giving opinion

طلب وإعطاء الرأي

- What do you think about the plan to build a solar farm near to where you live?

- ما رأيك في خطة بناء محطة طاقة شمسية بالقرب من المكان الذي تعيش فيه؟

Agreeing

موافقة

- **Personally, I think that** solar panels are useful.
- شخصياً، أعتقد أن ألواح الطاقة الشمسية مفيدة.
- **In my opinion,** it will give us more electricity and jobs.
- في رأيي، سوف تعطينا كهرباء وتوفر مزيد من الوظائف.
- **Don't forget,** the solar farms produce less pollution.
- لا تنسى، محطات الطاقة الشمسية ينبعث منها تلوث أقل.
- **I agree that** we need clean, renewable energy.
- أوافق أننا نحتاج إلى طاقة نظيفة متجددة.

Disagreeing

عدم موافقة

- **I don't agree that** solar farms should be built in the countryside.
لا أوافق على ضرورة بناء محطات طاقة شمسية في الريف.
- **I totally disagree.** The solar panels may have an effect on people who live here.
لا أوافق تماماً، محطات الطاقة الشمسية ربما يكون لها تأثير على من يعيشون هنا.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Finish the following dialogue:

WB

Leila and Noura are talking about a new project.

- Leila : What do you think of building wind turbines?
 Noura : ①?
 Leila : Wind turbines are used to produce renewable energy.
 Noura : ②?
 Leila : They will build them near the beach.
 Noura : ③ They will look ugly.
 Leila : In my opinion, they will look nice.
 Noura : ④
 Leila : I agree, it will be a useful project. I'm looking forward to seeing them.
 Noura : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

sun - didn't - electricity - farm - don't - moon

A solar **1** is a place where a number of solar panels are used to produce **2** from the energy of the **3** In the past, we **4** use to have solar farms, but now there are many of them in sunny countries.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Anxious" is a synonym of

- a. calm b. worried c. famous d. excited

2. To means to make or produce.

- a. create b. interrupt c. record d. improve

3. What are the advantages of solar energy? "Advantage" here has the opposite meaning of "....." Longman

- a. disconnection b. dishonesty c. disability d. disadvantage

4. We turn the verb "describe" into a noun by using the suffix

- a. -ion b. -ful c. -ly d. -ous

5. There are many green across the world which are helping to protect the environment. كفر الشيخ 2023

- a. air conditioners b. initiatives c. bamboo d. energy

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A review of building a solar farm near a nature reserve"

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What is a solar farm? - Why is it important?
- What are its advantages / disadvantages?
- How can that project help the environment?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- This review is about
- Personally,
- In my opinion, there are many advantages / disadvantages



Vocabulary

product	منتج	battery	بطارية	mangrove tree	شجرة المانجروف
paper	ورق / ورقى	crops	محاصيل	shopping bag	حقيبة تسوق
greener world	عالم خالي من التلوث	seedling	نبته	reusable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
climate change	تغير المناخ	wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	rising sea level	ارتفاع مستوى سطح البحر
personally	شخصياً	bamboo	نبات خشب الخيزران (البامبو)	solar farm	محطة طاقة شمسية
initiative	مبادرة	bamboo cup	كوب من الخيزران	solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
region	منطقة / إقليم	water wheel	ساقية	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
enormous	ضخم	power	قوة	produce (d)	ينتج
diagram	رسم بياني	desertification	ظاهرة التصحر	promise (d)	يوعد
energy - saving light bulb	مصباح موفر للطاقة	landscape	منظر طبيعي	create (d)	يبتكر / يستحدث
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة	air conditioning	تكييف هواء	destroy (ed)	يدمر
sustainable	مستدام / صديق للبيئة	electric car	سيارة تعمل بالكهرباء	interrupt (ed)	يقاطع أثناء الكلام
electric toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان كهربائية	rechargeable	قابل لإعادة الشحن		
		remote control	جهاز التحكم عن بعد		



Language

1- Remember: used to أن اعتاد

• تستخدم في الإثبات بمعنى «اعتاد أن» للتعبير عن فعل كان يتكرر في الماضي ولم يعد يحدث في الوقت الحاضر:

فاعل + used to + inf.

Ex. I **used to have** a bike when I was young.

• في النفي نستخدم:

لم يكن معتاد أن. didn't use to + inf. + فاعل

Ex. I **didn't use to** drive a car but I do now.

• في حالة السؤال بمعنى "هل" نستخدم:

Did + فاعل + use to + inf..... ?

Ex. A: **Did** you **use to play** games when you were young?

B: Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

• في حالة السؤال "بكلمة استفهام" نستخدم:

use to + inf.... ? + فاعل + **did** + كلمة استفهام

Ex. A: What **did you use to do** when you were in Alexandria?

B: I **used to** go swimming on holidays.

2- The second conditional الحالة الشرطية الثانية

• تعبر الحالة الشرطية الثانية عن مواقف تخيلية أو غير محتملة الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر والمستقبل:

Form التكوين

If + فاعل + ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) + فاعل + would / could + inf.

Ex. If I **went** to school yesterday, I **would take** a math test.

Question السؤال

... ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) + فاعل + if + فاعل + Would / Could + inf. →

Ex. **Would they go** swimming **if they went** to Alexandria?

Usage الاستخدام

• يمكن أن نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية مع **(could/might)** بمعنى ربما كان سوف **(would perhaps / possible)**

Ex. Ali **could/might get** better **if he took** the medicine.

لإعطاء النصيحة (If I were...)

• نستخدم **were** مع **if** لإعطاء النصيحة

Ex. If I **were** you, I **would have** a rest.

• كما نستخدم **were** مع **if** للتعبير عن التخيل / الاستحالة

Ex. If he **were** in your place, he **would have** another opinion.

- لاحظ استخدام **(were)** مع الفاعل المفرد في حالة التخيل والنصيحة في الحالة الشرطية الثانية

Speaking

1) Discussing how to live more sustainably

مناقشة كيف تعيش بطريقة أكثر محافظة على البيئة.

Question

- What things could you stop using or buying that are bad for the environment?

Answer

- I could stop using / buying things made of plastic.

2) Discussing visiting the Red Sea coast

مناقشة زيارة ساحل البحر الأحمر

Question

- Why do people visit the Red Sea coast?
- What do they like to do there?

Answer

- To enjoy the beautiful beaches.
- They like to go swimming, diving and shopping.

3) Discussing pollution from factories

مناقشة التلوث الصادر من المصانع

Question

- Why are factories important?
- Do you think that all factories produce pollution?

Answer

- Factories are important because they produce our needs.
- No, I don't think so, because some factories are environmentally-friendly.

4) Talking about renewable energy

التحدث عن الطاقة المتجددة

Question

- Would you choose solar panels to have a renewable energy in your area? Why?

Answer

- Yes, because Egypt enjoys sunny weather almost round the year.

5) Asking for and giving opinion

طلب وإعطاء الرأي

- What do you think about the plan to build a solar farm near to where you live?

Agreeing موافقة

- **Personally**, I think that solar panels are useful.
- **In my opinion**, it will give us more electricity and jobs.
- **Don't forget**, the solar farms produce less pollution.
- **I agree that** we need clean, renewable energy.

Disagreeing عدم موافقة

- **I don't agree that** solar farms should be built in the countryside.
- **I totally disagree.** The solar panels may have an effect on people who live here.

General Exercises on Unit 9

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Imad and Fares are talking about power stations.

Imad : What do you think of power stations?

Fares : I think they are great projects.

Imad : ① ?

Fares : Because they give us more electricity and jobs.

Imad : ② They burn fossil fuels. Don't forget, fossil fuels are not sustainable.

Fares : ③ People are still finding fossil fuels every year.

Imad : Personally, I think we should only use renewable energy.

Fares : ④ ?

Imad : It's energy from the sun and the wind.

Fares : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1 batteries - used - sustainable - initiative - charge - use

We should try to do a green ① at home. We should use rechargeable ② We should buy more products made of bamboo, which is ③ and doesn't cause pollution. People in the past didn't ④ to do so.

2 would have - reusable - protect - will have - pollute - less Longman

I want to do something to protect our environment. If we share in keeping the environment clean, we ① a healthy life. We should use ② plastic. We can buy ③ shopping bags. Also, we can use bamboo coffee cups. Bamboo is sustainable and doesn't ④ the environment.

3 neglect - follow - was - safe - advice - weren't Longman

My neighbour is very careless. If he ① careful, he wouldn't throw plastic bags into the river. I always advise him to ② the rules for keeping the environment clean. I also ask him to use ③ bags when he goes shopping. Now, he follows my ④ and his behaviour has improved.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a machine that you can use to control something from far away.

a. solar panel

b. telescope

c. mirror

d. remote control

2. Petrol for cars isn't sustainable. The synonym of "sustainable" is
 a. renewable b. polluted c. weak d. rechargeable
3. You should give up these bad ideas. The antonym of "give up" is
 a. stop b. turn off c. continue d. look at
4. We can reuse these bottles. We add the suffix to give the adjective of "reuse".
 a. -ive b. -able c. -tion d. -ing
5. Rewrite your composition. The prefix "re-" means to do it

الإسماعيلية/جنوب سيناء 2022

- a. before b. again c. first d. last
6. An earthquake destroyed the building. This means the earthquake it .
 a. damaged b. repaired c. recycled d. painted

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I (have) a bike, I would lend it to you.
2. If this factory (doesn't burn) rubbish, it would go to landfill sites.
3. What places (do) you use to go to when you were young?
4. Dubai (use) to be a fishing village in the past. WB
5. Did lions and elephants (uses) to live in Egypt? WB

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A review of a green initiative in Egypt or a country in Africa"

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What is the initiative about?
- Why is it important?
- What are the advantages / disadvantages?
- How can that green initiative help the environment?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- I'm going to write a review about
- To begin with,
- There are advantages / disadvantages
- I think that



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sameh and Ihab are in a factory.

Sameh : What do you think of that factory, Ihab?

Ihab : ① However, it produces a lot of pollution.

Sameh : ②?

Ihab : No, it doesn't. It uses fossil fuels.

Sameh : How can it stop producing pollution?

Ihab : ③

Sameh : You're right, solar power is environmentally-friendly.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

use - planet - bags - cups - rechargeable - used

Do you think that using sustainable products like bamboo ① or reusable shopping ② can help the environment become greener? Many people ③ to pollute the environment, but now they don't. They are saving the ④ Earth.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In 1900 the world's use of paper was about one kilogram for each person in a year. Now some countries use as much as 50 kilograms of paper for each person in a year. But countries like the United States and England certainly use more paper than other countries. In Egypt, paper was not used before the year 1400. Paper, like many other things that we use today, was first made in China. The Chinese first made paper about 2000 years ago.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about?

2. Which countries use more paper than other countries?

3. When was paper used in Egypt?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Paper was first made in

a. The United States

b. China

c. England

d. Egypt

5. In 1900 the world's use of paper was about one Kg for each person in a

- a. day b. month c. week d. year

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We cannot continue to use petrol for cars because it is not
a. rechargeable b. useful c. sustainable d. usable
2. We can use that bag again. It is
a. reusable b. greener c. dangerous d. rechargeable
3. If I special power, I would save the world.
a. have b. has c. don't have d. had
4. I to cut the grass myself when I was young.
a. use b. is using c. used d. uses

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we (have) more time, we would visit the museum.
2. If you ate more sweets, you (have) bad teeth.
3. My father (use) to live on a farm.

سوهاج 2024

6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

"Solar energy"

Al Azhar Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A Vocabulary

SB & WB Exercises

1. Can I plug in these? I need to charge them.
a. trees b. crops c. batteries d. seedlings
2. my opinion, we need to stop burning fossil fuels.
a. On b. In c. From d. At
3. The elephant is really It's about three tons.
a. enormous b. dangerous c. light d. tiny
4. Factories a lot of pollution.
a. promise b. destroy c. reduce d. produce
5. The story is about a superhero who had special
a. powers b. fuels c. planes d. batteries

Longman Exercises

6. _____ is the action of removing a large area of trees.
a. Agriculture b. Deforestation c. Production d. Pollution
7. We have a villa by the Red Sea _____.
a. wave b. valley c. bank d. coast
8. A _____ environment is a place where there is very little or no pollution.
a. darker b. bigger c. greener d. smaller
9. Wind turbines help us get electricity, which is a/an _____ source of energy.
a. renewable b. non-renewable c. polluting d. impossible
10. _____ increase because of the rising sea levels.
a. Floods b. Winds c. Rains d. Boats
11. Farmers always look after their fields to increase _____.
a. seeds b. crops c. branches d. floods
12. To damage something badly means to _____ it.
a. throw b. destroy c. protect d. disappear
13. A/An _____ is a machine that keeps a room's temperature normal.
a. fan b. oven c. air conditioner d. fridge
14. A "_____ " could be a picture showing an area of countryside or land.
a. landslide b. landfall c. land site d. landscape
15. _____ are used to absorb the sun's rays and change them into electricity or heat.
a. Wind turbines b. Solar powers c. Solar panels d. Polar bears
16. An energy-saving light bulb is a lamp that uses less _____.
a. air b. water c. oil d. electricity
17. Plants _____ out oxygen and absorb carbon dioxide.
a. breathe b. breath c. look d. find
18. Most farmers use _____ to irrigate their fields.
a. water glasses b. water taps c. water wheels d. salty water
19. The new factory isn't small. It's _____.
a. tiny b. huge c. old d. expensive
20. If we have _____ sea levels, the sea gets high.
a. decreasing b. rising c. falling d. boiling
21. These batteries aren't dangerous; they're quite _____.
a. unsafe b. small c. safe d. big
22. I don't like this place; it's really _____.
a. bored b. attractive c. quiet d. ugly

23. **Huda** : Is it _____ to live without electricity?

Samira : No, it's completely difficult.

- a. hard b. easy c. uncomfortable d. cheap

24. To save electricity, turn _____ the light when leaving a room.

- a. on b. of c. off d. up

25. We mustn't waste water; we should know how to _____ it.

- a. pollute b. pour c. lose d. save

26. We can continue to use this bag again because it's _____.

- a. removable b. valuable c. reusable d. renewable

27. The Haya Karima _____ makes people's lives easier.

- a. productive b. initiative c. report d. survey

Bit by Bit Exercises

28. Rice and wheat are _____.

- a. regions b. crops c. fossils d. solar farms

29. It's very hot. Would you turn on the _____, please?

- a. battery b. power station c. flood d. air conditioning

30. We can use that bag again. To use something again is to _____ them.

- a. reuse b. recharge c. revise d. resolve

31. I turn on and off my TV using the remote _____.

- a. control b. diagram c. bulb d. turbine

32. The Great Pyramid is a / an _____ building.

- a. renewable b. enormous c. electric d. green

B Language

33. What _____ you do if you were in my place?

- a. will b. can c. would d. may

34. _____ you use to plant crops when you lived in the village?

- a. Did b. Do c. Will d. Does

35. Maher used to _____ shopping with his mother, but now he doesn't.

- a. going b. goes c. went d. go

36. Ahmed _____ like cheese, but he loves it now.

- a. used to b. uses to c. didn't use to d. doesn't use to

37. Which primary school _____ you use to go to?

- a. does b. did c. do d. doing

38. What _____ you do if you got a job in a different city?

- a. would b. are c. can d. will

39. If you _____ to do a green initiative, what would it be?

- a. want b. wanted c. wanting d. to want

WB

WB

WB

SB

Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

1- "A review of a visit to the Red Sea"

(Lessons 1 & 2)

A visit to the Red Sea can be the best choice for a holiday. It is one of the warmest seas in the world. The areas around the Red Sea are marked by their beautiful views. Visitors can see hundreds of fish and sea animals. They can see the beautiful green turtles and coral reefs. Many tourists enjoy diving. At night, visitors can buy lovely silver jewellery or traditional handicrafts. People are growing thousands of mangrove seedlings along the coast. This can protect the area from rising sea levels.

2- "A review of the best form of renewable energy that I could use in my community" (Lessons 3 & 4)

There are many ways to produce renewable energy. They are the sun, wind and rivers. They can be used to produce electricity and fuel for cars. We can use the water turbines as Egypt has the River Nile. The High Dam produces a lot of electric power every year. Solar farms can be useful as they depend on sunlight. People in other communities use wind turbines or water wheels. I think renewable energy is the best way to preserve the environment.

3- "A review of building a solar farm near a nature reserve" (Lessons 5 & 6)

Solar farms help to protect the environment. Solar farms consist of a huge number of solar panels. Solar energy is produced from sunlight. Solar farms will help to reduce the problems caused by climate change. However, there are some disadvantages. People believe that solar farms will create problems for wildlife. To conclude, I believe that they are useful.

4- "A review of a green initiative in Egypt or a country in Africa"

(General Exercises)

I write this review about a green initiative called the Great Green Wall. This initiative was set up in 2007 by the African Union. They wanted to solve the problem of desertification in the Sahel region. Many people can't grow food and lost their farms. The initiative will plant millions of trees, seedlings across Africa. On the other hand, there are some disadvantages. Some African countries don't have enough money for the project. To summarise, it will create jobs for 10 million people. That's why I think that is very important.

5- "Solar energy"

(Al Azhar)

Technology made scientists able to use the sun's energy more usefully. They use the sun as a renewable source of energy. They invented devices. These devices can change the sun's powerful light into electricity. They used the energy to run factories. This technology will help us all to keep our environment clean.

6- "A short story about a boy who has visited a recycling factory" (Test)

Ayman is in preparatory three. He is a clever boy. He likes reading about science very much. His science teacher always helps him know more about science. Ayman has read a book about recycling. He decided to visit a recycling factory. There, he saw recycling machines. One for recycling paper, another for recycling plastic, etc. The engineers in the factory helped him know more about these machines. He learnt many things that helped him with his study.



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue

Dalia and Reem are talking about sustainable products.

Dalia : What do you do to help the environment?

Reem : ①

Dalia : Paper bags! ②?

Reem : Because plastic bags aren't sustainable.

Dalia : ③?

Reem : Yes, I use rechargeable batteries, too.

Dalia : How do you think we can save energy at home?

Reem : ④

Dalia : ⑤ You are right.

Reem : Don't forget that we have to save our planet.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

produce - environment - kept - reduce - initiatives - keeps

Our country has taken great steps to ① our waste. They are going to set up ② to recycle waste. If we ③ recycling rubbish, our country would be cleaner. However, great efforts are done these days to keep the ④ clean.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Water is very important for life. It is the secret of life. People, plants and animals need water to live on Earth. As for plants, they need water to grow. As for animals, they need water in their food. They also need water to drink.

For people, they need water to drink, wash their clothes, plant trees and to create

some industries. Without water, life on Earth would be impossible. If we agree that water is so important in our life, we have to save every drop of water and we shouldn't use it carelessly. If we save water, we will be able to grow more land and feed both people and animals and grow more plants as well.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is
 a. growing plants b. growing more land
 c. our planet d. the importance of water
2. People need water to
 a. drink b. wash their clothes c. play games d. a & b

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why should we save water?

4. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence.

5. How would life be on Earth without water?

6. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are more floods in many countries because of rising sea الفيوم 2023
a. leaves b. reefs c. levels d. rocks
2. The story is about a superhero who has a special بلبيس 2024
a. fossil b. research c. electricity d. power
3. That plane is enormous! "....." is the synonym of "enormous". الشرقية 2023
a. Little b. Huge c. Tiny d. Local
4. We use the suffix to give the adjective from "sun".
a. -y b. -ly c. -ful d. -er
5. Magdy and Ashraf are clever students. This means that it is for them to get low marks.
a. reusable b. unusual c. great d. beautiful

6. She is learning new things to improve her skills. This means that her skills are going to be

- a. damaged b. developed c. worried d. calm




5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What (will) the factory produce if it used fossil fuels? **WB**

2. The street is very nice. It (be) ugly if we didn't plant more trees. **SB**

3. If we had more money, we (can buy) that new phone in the shop window. **WB**

4. Morsy used to be lazy, but now he (doesn't) active. 

5. What did you (used) to eat for lunch? **المنيا 2024**

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"A short story about a boy who has visited a recycling factory"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What is this short story about?

- What did the boy visit?

- What did he see there?

- What did he learn?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- This short story is about

- The boy visited

- He saw there.

- He learnt

Review C

SB pages 32-33

WB pages 91-92

Key Vocabulary

eagle	طائر العقاب	recycling stations	محطات إعادة التدوير
furniture	أثاث	woods	غابات
grassland	أرض عشبية	fence	سور
safely	بأمان	businesses	شركات / أعمال تجارية
square kilometre	كيلو متر مربع	complete (d)	يكمل
farm animals	حيوانات المزرعة	practise (d)	يمارس

استمع إلى المفردات



Audioscript

SB Page (32)

استمع إلى النصوص



Narrator : Between August 2019 and July 2020 about 11,000 square kilometres of **Amazon rainforests**⁽¹⁾ were burnt and cut down. The trees were cut down to make farms to plant **crops**⁽²⁾ for cows. When the trees were burned, a lot of greenhouse gases were created, which caused climate change. But also, when the trees were destroyed, the habitats of thousands of birds and animals were lost. The animals that lived had **nowhere**⁽³⁾ to live and they couldn't find food. This is why some habitats are made into **nature reserves**⁽⁴⁾. In 1951, the **Serengeti**⁽⁵⁾ in Africa was made a nature reserve.



- ١- غابات الأمازون المطيرة
- ٢- محاصيل
- ٣- لا مكان
- ٤- محميات طبيعية
- ٥- إقليم سيرينجيتي "تنزانيا"

WB Page (91)

Woman : Today, I'm going to talk about a plan to **introduce**⁽¹⁾ an animal back to **Britain**⁽²⁾. I'd like to start by saying that bears used to live in Britain many years ago. However, there have been no bears in the country for hundreds of years. So why do scientists want to bring them back? To begin with, they are beautiful animals. Visitors love to see them, and they will be able to watch the bears **safely**⁽³⁾ from special areas.

Man 1 : I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by special areas.

Woman : The bears will live in **woods**⁽⁴⁾, which is their natural habitat, but there will be **fences**⁽⁵⁾ to keep the bears from people. Visitors will walk along high paths up in the trees and watch the bears from there. Are there any more questions?



- ١- يقدم
- ٢- بريطانيا
- ٣- بأمان
- ٤- غابات
- ٥- أسوار

Man 2 : Yes, what do you think about the farmers who worry that the bears will kill their animals?

Woman : Personally, I don't think they need to worry. The bears won't live near any farms. They will only stay in woods and they will be behind the fences. So, to **conclude**⁽⁶⁾, this is just one plan to bring back animals that used to live in Britain. In my opinion, this is a great **start**⁽⁷⁾.

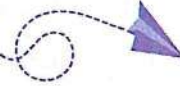
٦- تختتم الحديث

٧- بداية



Reading

SB page (32)



In 2020, a lot of greenhouse gases were created by deforestation in the Amazon area. Trees were burned and a lot of carbon dioxide was made by all the fires. We could avoid creating carbon dioxide by not cutting down our forests and burning the trees. We need to protect our rainforests because they are important habitats for wildlife, plants and trees. The millions of trees keep the air clean for the whole planet. The greenhouse gas methane is produced by the cows that are brought to the area after the rainforest has been destroyed. So, it is time to plant more and more trees.

SB Page (33)

There are lots of ways we can protect our environment and build a greener world. We need to use cleaner, greener energy. If factories had solar panels on their buildings, they would save money. We need more people to work together to get renewable energy for their communities. If more communities had a wind turbine, they would have cheaper, cleaner energy. We could also help the environment by planting more trees.



١- سجاد

٢- أثاث

What about plastic? Millions of plastic bottles are used every day. When these bottles are recycled, the plastic is used to make clothes, toys, **carpets**⁽¹⁾ and **furniture**⁽²⁾. Glass and metal can be recycled, too. We don't recycle enough and that's why there's still so much rubbish in landfill sites.

SB Page (33)

If everyone does one thing to help the environment, it will help a lot. For example, we can all use less paper or turn off the lights when we leave a room. I didn't use to buy rechargeable batteries, but now I do. We can all help.

I don't think there's much that young people can do to help the environment. Our parents buy our food and clothes. They do the shopping. If my parents don't want to recycle anything, there's nothing I can do.

Rubbish is produced by all of us every day, and we need to do something about it. In many countries, most rubbish is put into landfill sites and in others, the rubbish is burned. However, if countries keep doing this, it will cause a lot of pollution.



In **Sweden**⁽¹⁾, only about 1% of rubbish was put into landfill sites last year. More than 50% of rubbish is recycled, and most houses are just 300 metres from a "**recycling station**"⁽²⁾ where people can put paper, glass and plastic. The rest of their rubbish is burned in special power stations. Here, the rubbish is made into electricity and **heating**⁽³⁾. These power stations cause some air pollution, but something useful is created, too.

١- دولة السويد
٢- محطات إعادة
التدوير
٣- التدفئة

Test on units 7, 8 & 9



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mrs Amal wants to buy shopping bags.

Assistant : Hello, how can I help you?

Mrs Amal : ①

Assistant : What type of bags do you want?

Mrs Amal : ②?

Assistant : Yes, we have paper bags. How many bags do you want?

Mrs Amal : ③

Assistant : They are really good for the environment.

Mrs Amal : That's right. ④?

Assistant : They are ten pounds.

Mrs Amal : ⑤

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

environment - speak - putting - conditioner - do - conditioning

I am going to ① a speech about the environment and how to help it. Everyone has an air ② at their houses which makes more pollution. We can all avoid ③ rubbish into landfill sites. We should use things that are ④ friendly.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dinosaurs were a group of huge animals. The name "dinosaur" means "terrible lizard". They were given this name by Sir Richard Owen in 1841. He called them that name to refer to these "great fossil lizards". Since then, fossil dinosaur skeletons have been major attractions at museums worldwide. The first dinosaur fossils were found in the early 19th century. Scientists will probably never be certain of the largest and smallest dinosaurs.

Dinosaurs can be divided into flying dinosaurs, or birds; and non-flying dinosaurs, which are all dinosaurs other than birds. Some of the dinosaurs eat meat. Others eat only plants. Scientists said they died out 66 million years ago.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists think that the dinosaurs disappeared million years ago.
 a. 56 b. 65 c. 60 d. 66
2. The dinosaur is a lizard.
 a. terrible b. beautiful c. good d. nice

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the passage mainly about?

.....

4. Where can you see the skeletons of dinosaurs?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

.....

6. Summarise the second paragraph in one sentence.

.....



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To "_____ " is to take in liquids or gases through a surface.
a. fill b. protect c. absorb d. produce
- A/An _____ is a place where rubbish is taken, often to be buried under the ground.
a. landscapes b. landfill site c. wetland d. green land
- The antonym of the word "right" is "_____".
a. full b. large c. wrong d. correct
- Their marriage was finished. "Finished" here is a/an _____.
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
- Mrs Azza is well-known for her role as a teacher. She is a / an _____ teacher.
a. famous b. ugly c. lazy d. late
- This shop sells beds, sofas and cupboards. It sells _____.
a. furniture b. equipment c. jewellery d. electricity

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The rest of the rubbish _____ (burn) in power stations every year.
- If our seas become warmer, coral reefs _____ (would) die.
- Hundreds of fossils of ancient whales _____ (was) found by scientists in 1902.
- We need _____ (use) cleaner renewable energy.
- If we _____ (live) in Hurghada, we would go to the beach.



Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of how to protect the environment"

الفيوم 2022

Module 4

The Modern World

10 UNIT

To space and back

Objectives

Reading:

A magazine article about a space scientist; the history of space exploration; a text about satellite technology; the poem Day; an informative text about the International Space Station

Writing:

A paragraph about objects that use space technology; an informative text about a spacecraft

Listening:

A quiz about space; a podcast about satellites; a discussion about a famous photo

Speaking:

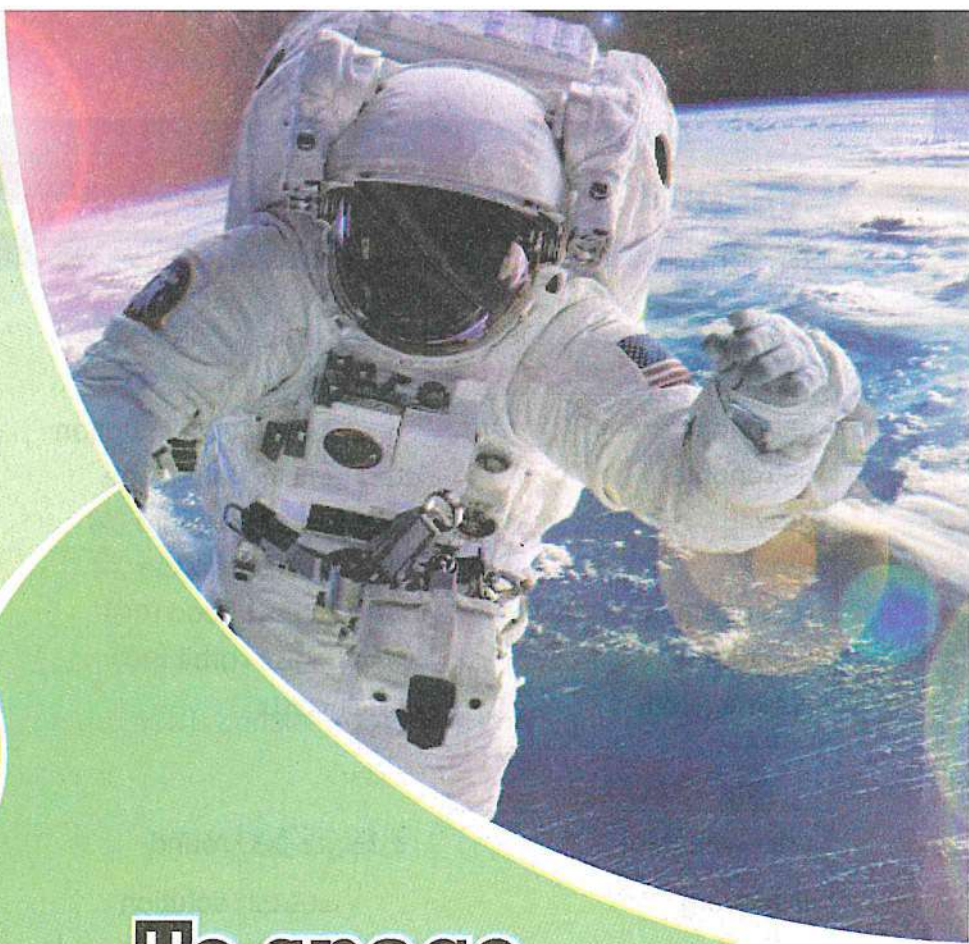
Talking about life experiences; talking about space and satellite technology; saying when events happened

Language:

The past perfect

Life Skills:

Critical thinking



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



astronaut	رائد فضاء	space station	محطة فضائية
astronomer	عالم في الفلك	telescope	تليسكوب
gravity	الجاذبية الأرضية	explore (d)	يستكشف
lens	عدسة	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
researcher	باحث	flood (ed)	يفيض (النهر)
satellite	قمر صناعي	orbit (ed)	يدور حول (في مدار)
solar system	النظام الشمسي		



Vocabulary

prize-winning	حائز على جائزة	round	مستدير
discovery	اكتشاف	solution	حل
ancient times	العصور القديمة	author	مؤلف
alive	على قيد الحياة / حي	spacecraft	مركبة فضائية
competition	مسابقة / منافسة	teaching assistant	مدرس مساعد
force	قوة	timeline	خط / تسلسل زمني
engineering	الهندسة	collection	مجموعة
sports event	حدث رياضي	university lecturer	محاضر جامعي
Mars	كوكب المريخ	graduate (d)	يتخرج (في جامعة)
jets of air	تيارات هواء قوية	revise (d)	يراجع
NASA*	وكالة ناسا للفضاء	publish (ed)	ينشر (كتاب / فكرة)
unpopular	غير محبوب	invent (ed)	يخترع
amount	كمية	attract (ed)	يجذب
recently	مؤخراً / حديثاً	collect (ed)	يجمع
accurately	بدقة	retire (ed)	يتقاعد (عن العمل)
		produce (d)	ينتج / يسبب

* NASA = National Aeronautics and Space Administration

الإدارة الوطنية للملاحة الجوية والفضاء (واشنطن - الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية)

Important persons

Ptolemy	بطليموس (عالم فلك يوناني)
Neil Armstrong	نيل أرمسترونج (أول رائد فضاء يسير على سطح القمر)
Yuri Gagarin	يوري جاجارين (أول رائد فضاء «روسي»)
Valentina Tereshkova	فالنتينا تريشكوفا (أول رائدة فضاء «روسية»)
Hans Lippershey	هانز ليبيرشي (مخترع التليسكوب «هولندي»)

Galileo	جاليليو (عالم فلك إيطالي)
Ayman Ragab	أيمن رجب (باحث مصري في شئون الفضاء)
Peggy Whitson	بيجي ويتسون (رائدة فضاء أمريكية)
Nicolaus Copernicus	نيكولاس كوبرنيكوس (عالم فلك بولندي)

Space stations & satellites

Mir	مير (محطة الفضاء الروسية)
Sputnik 1	سبوتنك 1 (أول قمر صناعي روسي)

International Space Station	محطة الفضاء الدولية
-----------------------------	---------------------



Definitions

gravity	الجاذبية الأرضية	- a force ⁽¹⁾ which attracts ⁽²⁾ things or people to the centre of the Earth	١- قوة ٢- تجذب ٣- آلة / ماكينة ٤- معدات
		- the force that causes things to fall to the ground when they are dropped	
orbit	يدور حول	move around a star or planet	
researcher	باحث	- a person who studies something carefully	
		- someone who studies a subject in detail in order to discover new facts or test new ideas	
satellite	قمر صناعي	a machine ⁽³⁾ in space that goes round the Earth to send or collect information	
telescope	تليسكوب	a piece of equipment ⁽⁴⁾ you use to see things that are far away	
astronaut	رائد فضاء	a person who travels into space	
astronomer	عالم في الفلك	someone who studies the stars and planets.	
space station	محطة فضائية	- a large spacecraft where people live and work	
		- a large satellite going around the Earth where astronauts can live and work to study space	
lens	عدسة	a piece of glass used in cameras or on glasses, that can make things look bigger or smaller	
solar system	النظام الشمسي	all the planets and their moons which go around the sun	

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
interested	مهتم	keen		uninterested	غير مهتم
understand	يفهم	realize		misunderstand	يسئ الفهم
ancient	قديم/أثري	old		modern	حديث
alive	حي / على قيد الحياة	living		dead	ميت
popular	شائع/محبوب	common		unpopular	غير محبوب
force	قوة	power		weakness	ضعف
collect	يجمع	gather		spread	ينتشر
retire	يتقاعد (عن العمل)	stop working		continue working	يواصل / يستمر في العمل
different	مختلف	various		the same / similar	نفس الشيء - متشابه
win	يفوز	come first		lose	يخسر

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
inter-	between تعطي معنى «بين»	inter-national دولي
un-	opposite تعطي العكس	uncover / unpopular يكشف/ غير محبوب
in-		inaccurate غير دقيق
tele-	distance تعطي معنى (البعد)	tele-scope التليسكوب
astro-	space تخص الفضاء	astro-naut / astro-nomer رائد فضاء / عالم فلك
a-	v → adj تحول الفعل إلى الصفة	a-live حي / على قيد الحياة
-er		researcher / lecturer / astronomer باحث / محاضر / عالم فلك
-ant	person تكون اسم فاعل	assist-ant مساعد
-ist		scient-ist عالم
-tion/ion	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	competi-tion / collec-tion مسابقة / مجموعة
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الحال	recent-ly مؤخرًا / حديثًا
-y	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	discover-y اكتشاف

Expressions & Prepositions

far away	بعيد	go / travel into space	يذهب/يسافر للفضاء
solve the problem	يحل المشكلة	orbit the Earth	يدور حول الأرض
find a solution / a way	يجد حل / طريقة	collect information	يجمع معلومات
enter a competition	يدخل مسابقة	do with	يتعامل مع
save energy	يوفر الطاقة	try to + inf.	يحاول أن
came second	حصل على المركز الثاني	interested in	مهتم بـ
discover the planets	يكتشف الكواكب	go round	يذهب حول
make ...stronger	يجعل..... أقوى	take.....off	يتخلص من

Conjugations of		Irregular Verbs	
Present		Past simple	Past Participle
dream	يحلم	dreamt / dreamed	dreamt / dreamed
win	يفوز	won	won
leave	يغادر	left	left



Language Notes

1) work at / work as / work for / work on

- **work at** يعمل في (مكان)

Ex. I have **worked at** this school for two years.

- **work for** يعمل لدى (شخص/شركة)

Ex. She **works for** an international company.

- **work as** يعمل كـ (يأتي بعدها وظيفة الشخص)

Ex. Salma **works as** a teacher at a prep school.

- **work on** يعمل على مشروع

Ex. They have **worked on** this project for two months.

2) look at / look for

• look at ينظر إلى

Ex. I can't look at the sun.

• look for يبحث عن

Ex. I am looking for my keys. I can't find them.

3) the first to + inf.

- أول من (قام بشئ)

Ex. Neil Armstrong was the first astronaut to walk on the moon.

4) graduate (in/ with/ as/ from) - a graduate (of)

graduate (d) (verb) فعل (يتخرج)

in + تخصص
Englishfrom + مكان
Faculty of Educationwith + شهادة
a degreeas + وظيفة
a teacher

Ex. I graduated in Engineering from Aswan University.

• a graduate of + مكان (خريج) إسم

Ex. I'm a graduate of Zagazig University. (لاحظ الفرق في النطق بين الكلمتين (كفعل / إسم)

5) As well as

• as well as + v- ing / noun بالإضافة إلى

Ex. As well as being an astronaut, Peggy has worked as a researcher.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ayman has worked a teaching assistant recently.
a. for b. to c. as d. on
- Look this flower! It is very colorful.
a. for b. at c. up d. to
- Karim was the first one at work.
a. arrive b. arrives c. arriving d. to arrive
- I graduated Cairo University.
a. of b. from c. in d. with
- I'm a graduate Cairo University.
a. of b. from c. in d. with
- She is a good musician as well as a photographer.
a. be b. being c. been d. was



Reading

SB Page (34)

استمع إلى النصوص



1957

the first satellite,
Sputnik 1



1961

the first man in space,
Yuri Gagarin



1963

the first woman in
space, Valentina
Tereshkova



1969

Neil Armstrong becomes the
first **astronaut**⁽¹⁾ to walk on the
moon.



- ١- رائد فضاء
- ٢- محطة فضائية
- ٣- تليسكوب
- ٤- محطة الفضاء الدولية

1986

The world's first **space
station**⁽²⁾, Mir, goes into
space.



1990

The first **telescope**⁽³⁾ is
sent into space.



1998

The international Space
Station⁽⁴⁾



2001

A new Egyptian satellite



Prize-winning⁽¹⁾ Egyptian helps NASA⁽²⁾

For many years, NASA has been trying to understand what it can do with the rubbish that **space journeys**⁽³⁾ produce. Scientists have been looking for ways to solve the problem of rubbish. Astronauts use a lot of plastic, paper and other waste on their journeys to space. This can be a real problem. So NASA started a **competition**⁽⁴⁾, asking the world's best scientists to try and find a **solution**⁽⁵⁾.

Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist who has always been interested in **space science**⁽⁶⁾. In 2019, he entered NASA's competition and came second. Ayman suggested using **jets of air**⁽⁷⁾ to make the waste smaller and then help to **recycle**⁽⁸⁾ it.

Ayman is from the village of al-Dababiya near Luxor and **graduated**⁽⁹⁾ in **Engineering**⁽¹⁰⁾ from Aswan University. He has worked as a **teaching assistant**⁽¹¹⁾ at the same university and now works as a **researcher**⁽¹²⁾ for a university in **Finland**⁽¹³⁾.

Since he won his prize, he has worked on NASA's **Technology Transfer Project**⁽¹⁴⁾ which looks at how to use the latest technology in space, and he has **recently**⁽¹⁵⁾ found ways to save energy when there is little **gravity**⁽¹⁶⁾.



- ١- حائز على جائزة
- ٢- وكالة الفضاء
- الوطنية (ناسا)
- ٣- رحلات إلى الفضاء
- ٤- مسابقة
- ٥- حل
- ٦- علم الفضاء
- ٧- قاذفات هواء
- ٨- يعيد تدوير
- ٩- تخرج
- ١٠- الهندسة
- ١١- مدرس مساعد
- ١٢- باحث
- ١٣- دولة فنلندا
- ١٤- مشروع نقل
- التكنولوجيا
- ١٥- حديثاً
- ١٦- الجاذبية الأرضية

Say it

correctly

* solution

ينطق حرف (u) في هذه الكلمة مثلما تنطق حروف (oo) في كلمة (moon)

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

1. The text is about
a. Space journeys. b. The history of space
c. An Egyptian scientist helps NASA d. Rubbish in the oceans
2. Infer from the text what Ayman did to help solve the problem of rubbish in space.
3. Summarise the first paragraph in one sentence.

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (اجمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

1. Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist. He is interested in space science.
أيمن رجب عالم مصري . انه مهتم بعلوم الفضاء .
2. Ayman Ragab graduated in Engineering from Aswan University.
تخرج أيمن رجب في الهندسة من جامعة أسوان .
3. Ayman Ragab works as a researcher for a university in Finland.
يعمل أيمن رجب كباحث لجامعة في فنلندا .

1. An Egyptian scientist helps NASA.
2. Ayman suggested using jets of air to make the waste smaller and then help to recycle it.
3. NASA started a competition, asking the world's best scientists to try and find a solution to the problem of rubbish that space journeys produce.

Answers

Exploring⁽¹⁾ space - past and present

- ١- استكشاف
- ٢- علماء في الفلك
- ٣- العصور القديمة
- ٤- دارت حول
- ٥- علماء فلك
- مسلمين
- ٦- ينشر (فكرة)
- ٧- على قيد الحياة
- ٨- غير محبوب
- ٩- طور التصميم
- ١٠- عدسات
- ١١- النظام الشمسي
- ١٢- اكتشافات

1 The first astronomers⁽²⁾

The stars and the planets have always been important to us. In ancient times⁽³⁾, people knew what time of year it was by looking at where the stars were in the sky. The Ancient Egyptians discovered that a star called Sirius appeared in the sky just before the Nile flooded.

2 Early ideas about the sun and the Earth

An astronomer from the 2nd century, called Ptolemy, believed that the sun orbited⁽⁴⁾ the Earth. It was a popular idea that people believed for many centuries. Islamic astronomers⁽⁵⁾ in the 11th–13th centuries thought that the idea might be wrong.

3 A new idea

In 1532, the astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus showed that the Earth orbited the sun, but he hadn't published⁽⁶⁾ his ideas until just before he died. Copernicus hadn't wanted people to know about his ideas while he was alive⁽⁷⁾, because he knew they would be unpopular⁽⁸⁾.

4 The first telescopes

Before the beginning of the 17th century, astronomers had only studied space with their own eyes. Then, in 1608, the telescope was invented. The Italian astronomer Galileo improved the design⁽⁹⁾. He made the lenses⁽¹⁰⁾ stronger so that he could study the planets in our solar system⁽¹¹⁾.

5 Modern discoveries⁽¹²⁾

The modern age is an exciting time for space discovery. We can see objects that are far away in space and look for life on other planets. What discoveries do you think we will make in the future?

June 2018

Today, the famous American astronaut Peggy Annette Whitson has just said that she is going to retire⁽¹⁾. More than 500 people have been to space, but Peggy has spent longer in space than any other woman. She has been travelling to space every few years since 2002. As well as⁽²⁾ being an astronaut, Peggy has worked as, a university lecturer⁽⁴⁾ and on the International Space Station. Our newspaper has been writing about her work for more than 15 years, and we wish her luck for the future!



- ١- تقاعد
- ٢- بالإضافة إلى
- ٣- مُحاضرة جامعية



Audioscript

SB Page (37)



Rami : What are you looking at, Kamal?

Kamal : Hi, Rami. It's a quiz about **space**⁽¹⁾ history. Some of the answers to the questions are very **surprising**⁽²⁾. I scored 2 out of 4. Would you like to try?

Rami : OK. Ask me the first question.

Kamal : When did people first **discover**⁽³⁾ the planets in our solar system? **A**: about 2000 years ago or **B**: about 400 years ago.

Rami : Hmm ... I don't think astronomers had discovered the planets before the telescope was invented, so I think the answer is **B**: about 400 years ago.

Kamal : Wrong! Astronomers had discovered them a long time before that! People from an ancient place in **the Middle East**⁽⁴⁾ called **Babylonia**⁽⁵⁾ discovered the planets in the first and second **century**⁽⁶⁾. They saw that the planets moved differently from the stars in the sky, so they knew that they were different.

Rami : Wow! That was a long time ago!

Kamal : Yes, it was! Second question... When did people discover that the Earth was round? **A**: in the 6th century or **B**: in the 15th century.

Rami : Oh, I know people believed that the Earth was **flat**⁽⁷⁾ for a long time. So I'll choose answer **B**: in the 15th century.

Kamal : Wrong answer! People had discovered the Earth was round a long time before the 15th century! Greek scientists in the 6th century saw that the sky looked different from different places. This made them think that the planet was round.

Rami : Oh dear! I'm not doing very well.

Kamal : Don't worry. Here's the third question. Who invented the telescope?

A: Galileo or **B**: Hans Lipperhsey?

Rami : Hmm ... Well Galileo improved the design of the telescope, but he didn't invent it. So the answer is **B**, Hans Lippershey.

Kamal : That's right. Hans Lippershey lived in the Netherlands in the 16th century. He wasn't an astronomer – he made glasses. He discovered that he could use more than one lens to make objects look bigger ... So, Galileo didn't invent the telescope, but he was the first person to use it to study space. Question 4. How many people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century? **A** : 2 or **B** : 12?

- ١- الفضاء
- ٢- مدهش
- ٣- يكتشف
- ٤- الشرق الأوسط
- ٥- بلاد بابل
- ٦- قرن
- ٧- مسطح

Rami : Hmm, I'm sure it's more than two, so I think **B** is the right answer – 12 people.

Kamal : That's right! Twelve people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century. No more people have walked on the moon this century, so the number is still the same.

Rami : So I got 2 out of 4 – the same as you! That was really interesting, Kamal! I think I learnt a lot.

Videoscript

SB Page 37

If you look up to the sky during the day, you can see clouds and the sun. At night, you can see the moon, some planets and hundreds of thousands of stars. The sun is a star and all of the planets in our solar system move around it. It takes our planet, Earth, 365 days to orbit the sun.

We know this, and many other things about our solar system, because of the work of Islamic astronomers more than one thousand years ago.

In the tenth century, an astronomer from Iran called Abd al-Rahman al-Sufi wrote a very important book about the solar system called **The Book of Fixed Stars**⁽¹⁾. This described the **exact position**⁽²⁾ of the stars in the night sky at different times of the year, and it also included drawings and **descriptions**⁽³⁾ of different groups of stars called **constellations**⁽⁴⁾. The group of stars in a constellation can form a picture in the sky, such as **the Great Bear**⁽⁵⁾ and **Orion**⁽⁶⁾. Nobody had described them so **accurately**⁽⁷⁾ before al-Sufi did.

A very large group of stars is called a **galaxy**⁽⁸⁾. Earth is in a galaxy called **the Milky Way**⁽⁹⁾. Abd al-Rahman al-Sufi wrote about other galaxies, such as the **Large Magellanic Cloud**⁽¹⁰⁾ and **the Andromeda Galaxy**⁽¹¹⁾, before many other people had even seen them.

An Egyptian astronomer called Ibn Yunus studied how planets moved in the solar system in the eleventh century. Later, an important European astronomer called Copernicus used these studies to suggest that planets moved around the sun. Before this, some people had thought that the sun moved around Earth.

Today, astronomers are still discovering new things about stars, planets and galaxies. What do you think they will discover in the future ?

- ١- كتاب النجوم الثابتة
- ٢- الموقع الدقيق
- ٣- وصف
- ٤- مجموعة نجوم
- ٥- الدب الأكبر
- ٦- كوكبة الجبار (الجوزاء)
- ٧- بدقة
- ٨- مجرة
- ٩- مجرة درب التبانة
- ١٠- مجرة ماجلان الكبرى
- ١١- مجرة أندروميديا

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- A _____ is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away. **WB**
a. jet of air b. station c. telescope d. satellite
- A _____ is a machine in space that goes round the Earth to send or collect information. **WB**
a. planet b. moon c. satellite d. telescope
- A _____ is a large spacecraft where people live and work. **WB**
a. space station b. train station c. balloon d. satellite
- A/An _____ is a person who studies something carefully. **WB**
a. nurse b. engineer c. researcher d. astronaut
- _____ is the force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth. **WB**
القليوبية 2022
a. Gravity b. A telescope c. A spacecraft d. A space station
- A/An _____ is a person who travels into space. **WB**
القاهرة 2022
a. astronomer b. vet c. teacher d. astronaut
- A/An _____ is a scientist who studies stars and planets. **WB**
الشرقية 2022
a. driver b. engineer c. assistant d. astronomer
- A _____ is a piece of glass used in cameras or on glasses, that can make things look bigger or smaller
a. telescope b. satellite c. lens d. discovery

Synonyms & Antonyms

- Congratulations! You've won the competition. "Win" here has the opposite meaning of "_____". **Longman**
a. avoid b. forget c. earn d. lose
- He is going to retire. The word "retire" here means _____. **WB**
شمال سيناء 2022
a. prevent b. stop working c. work d. invent
- The antonym of the word "interested" is _____. **WB**
شمال سيناء 2022
a. frightened b. keen c. excited d. uninterested
- The synonym of "interested" is _____.
a. asleep b. keen c. worried d. uninterested
- I visited an ancient temple yesterday. The antonym of "ancient" is _____.
a. old b. ugly c. modern d. fantastic
- The verb "understand" gives the same meaning as the verb _____.
a. revise b. believe c. agree d. realize

15. The antonym of the word "force" is
 a. power b. gravity c. cleverness d. weakness
16. The moon moves around the earth. The verb "move around" means
 a. stops b. controls c. reserves d. orbits
17. I often dreamed of being famous. "Dream of" here has a similar meaning to
 a. sleep b. nap c. think of d. play

القنبوية 2024

Suffixes & Prefixes

18. We can add the prefix "....." to the word "scope" to mean an instrument that makes distant things nearer.
 a. fore- b. inter- c. pre- d. tele-
19. We add the prefix to give the antonym of the word "accurate".
 a. in- b. un- c. im- d. non-
20. To give the opposite of the adjective "popular", we add the prefix
 a. re- b. un- c. in- d. dis-
21. The verb "research" is turned into a noun for a person by adding the suffix
 a. -ly b. -tion c. -ant d. -er
22. We use the suffix with the word "science" to refer to a person.
 a. -ly b. -ist c. -or d. -er

القاهرة 2023

الدقهلية 2022

Guessing the meaning from the text

23. The best cameras have a very good that lets in the correct amount of light.
 a. view b. sound c. lens d. picture
24. Azza loves studying the stars and planets. This means she wants to be a/an
 a. teacher b. astronomer c. doctor d. nurse
25. My school is near, but my brother's university is very from our home.
 a. different b. far c. crowded d. absent
26. I could see the stars in the sky very near. This means I used a
 a. telescope b. station c. timeline d. gravity
27. This picture shows the sun and the planets that go around it. This means it shows the
 a. solar system b. satellite c. space station d. space science

Longman WB

WB

Longman



Language

1- Remember: The present perfect tense

زمن المضارع التام

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + have ('ve) + past participle
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has ('s) + التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. I **have watched** a movie.

Ex. He **has worked** at two universities.

Negative النفي

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + have + not + past participle
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has + not + past participle

Ex. I **haven't been** to this restaurant before.

Ex. He **hasn't read** this book yet.

Question السؤال

• السؤال بهل:

Have + I / we / you / they / اسم جمع + past participle...?
Has + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + past participle...?

Ex. **Have** you ever **been** to space?

Ex. **Has** she ever **climbed** a mountain?

للإجابة نقول:

Yes, she has.

- No, she hasn't.

• السؤال بكلمة إستفهام:

كلمة + have + I / we / you / they / اسم جمع + past participle...?
استفهام + has + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + past participle...?

Ex. How long **have** you **got** this mobile?

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن المضارع التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية في الماضي past experiences):

Ex. I **have entered** a competition.

٢- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي ولا يزال أثره موجود:

Ex. Look what you **have done**; you will have to repair my car.

٣- لوصف حدث تم حديثاً «أي قبل قليل»

Ex. I **have just read** a science book.

- لاحظ استخدام الكلمات الدالة على الزمن وأماكنها:

تو just (في الجملة المثبتة) → Ex. I've **just come** back home.

من قبل ever (في السؤال) → Ex. **Have** you **ever seen** a real lion?

أبدأ **never** فى النفي

→ Ex. I **have never been** to a theatre.

حتى الآن **yet** (فى النفي/السؤال)

→ Ex. We **haven't visited** the Cairo Tower **yet**.

Ex. **Have they arrived yet?**

since (منذ) نقطة بداية الحدث +

→ Ex. I've done sport **since 2020**.

for (لمدة) مدة زمنية +

→ Ex. I've done sport **four years**.

recently / lately

→ Ex. I **have bought** a new jacket **recently**.

حديثاً/ مؤخرًا

Ex. **Recently**, I **have bought** a new jacket.

(فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة أو بين

جزئى الزمن)

Ex. I **have recently bought** a new jacket.

already

بالفعل

→ Ex. Wafaa **has graduated** in engineering **already**.

(فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة أو بين

جزئى الزمن)

Ex. Wafaa **has already graduated** in engineering.

always

دائماً

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام **always** مع المضارع التام لتعبير عن دوام حدوث الحدث وعدم إنتهائه:

Ex. Ashraf **has always worked** as an engineer.

Ex. Osman **has always done** sport.

2- The present perfect continuous tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They اسم جمع

+ have

+ **been**

+ V-ing

He / She / It اسم مفرد

+ has

Ex. Scientists **have been looking** for ways to solve the problem of rubbish.

Ex. He **has been studying** English for 7 years now.

Negative

النفي

I / We / You / They اسم جمع

+ have

+ **not**

+ **been**

+ V-ing

He / She / It اسم مفرد

+ has

Ex. My dad **hasn't been working** at this school.

Ex. I **haven't been playing** tennis.

Question

السؤال

السؤال بهل:

Have

+ I / we / you / they اسم جمع

+ **been**

+ V-ing...?

Has

+ he / she / it اسم مفرد

Ex. **Have you been studying** all day?

Ex. **Has he been walking** with his father for an hour?

للإجابة نقول:

Yes, he has.

- No, he hasn't.

السؤال بكلمة إستفهام

اسم جمع / I / we / you / they + have + كلمة إستفهام
 اسم مفرد / he / she / it / + been + V-ing...?

Ex. What **have** you **been doing** recently?Ex. How long **has** Omar **been waiting** for Sara?**Keywords** الكلمات الدالة

all night	طوال الليل	all year	طوال العام	for....now	لمدة ... الآن	lately	مؤخراً
all day	طوال اليوم	since	منذ	still	ما يزال	recently	حديثاً

Usage الاستخدام

١- يعبر زمن المضارع التام المستمر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمراً حتى الآن.

Ex. They **have been watching** the match for 2 hours now.

٢- يعبر زمن المضارع التام المستمر عن نشاط متكرر.

Ex. My friends **have been phoning** me all day.

مقارنة بين الزمنين

The present perfect

١- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام في التأكيد على فعل تم وانتهى منذ فترة دون تحديد وقت حدوثه.

Ex. She **has already typed** the report.

٢- يعبر عن حدث تم في الماضي ولكن ما زال له بعض الأثر في الوقت الحالي.

Ex. Ali **has** So, he **can't write**. broken his arm.Ali **has broken** his arm, so he **can't write**.

٣- يعبر عن حدث تم منذ وقت قليل.

Ex. We **have just seen** an accident

٤- نستخدم المضارع التام عند ذكر عدد الأشياء التي قمنا بإنجازها أو فعلها.

Ex. He **has sent** two e-mails this morning.**The present perfect continuous**

١- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام المستمر في التعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمراً حتى الآن.

Ex. They **have been studying** English for ten years now.

٢- يعبر عن حدث أو نشاط متكرر بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمراً حتى هذه اللحظة.

Ex. Sameh **has been receiving** prizes.

Notes

- يُستخدم المضارع التام في هذه الحالات:
 ١- عند ذكر عدد مرات تكرار الحدث.

Ex. I **have read** 2 short stories this week.

٢- مع أفعال الحب والكراهة والادراك والامتلاك.

Ex. Sama and Malak **have known** each other since 2015.

٣- أفعال لحظية لا يستغرق وقت لحدوثها **(stop - break)**.

Ex. I can't play because I've **broken** my leg.

٤- هناك مجموعة من الافعال يمكن أن تستخدم في كلا الزمنين **(teach - work - live)**.

Exercises on Language

(The present perfect & continuous)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets

SB, WB & Exams

- Heba (do) her housework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet. **WB**
- Omar (read) a new story for an hour; he is still reading it. **WB**
- A: "I (be) to this restaurant before. Is it good" B: "Yes, it is." **WB**
- They (study) English for 3 hours now. **القاهرة 2023**
- I (visit) this restaurant three times this week. I like it. **البحيرة 2023**
- Have you (never) driven a car? **أسوان 2023**
- What have you been (do) at school this week? **البحيرة 2202**
- Has she ever (be) to Aswan? **السويس 2022**
- He has worked in this office (since) the last two years. **الفيوم 2024**

Longman

- My grandfather has never (drove) a car.
- Dalia (has washed) the dishes for a long time now; she hasn't finished yet.
- Have you (never) used a telescope?
- What have you (being) studying at school this year?
- I miss you so much. I haven't seen you (since) years.
- Experts have been (tried) to solve the problem of global warming for years.
- I have (been knowing) my friend Magdi for years.
- Have you solved the problem? - Yes, I (have solved) it yesterday.

Bit by Bit Exercises

18. People have been using smart phones since they (invent) in the early 2000.
19. I (had lived) in Cairo since 2005.
20. We (have played) chess all night.
21. A: How long have you (being) sleeping? B: All day.
22. We (have) finished painting the house yet.
23. Donia (do) her housework for two hours now.
24. At last I (solve) the problem.
25. How long have you (be) wearing glasses?
26. Heba has made dresses (for) 2011.
27. Prices (increase) dramatically in the last few years.
28. For many years, NASA has (try) to solve the problem of the rubbish.
29. What have you (reading) recently?
30. Yasser has (have) an accident on his bike.

3- The past perfect tense

زمن الماضي التام

Form التكوين

Subject + had + past participle.
فاعل التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. After we **had collected** information, we **did** our research.

Negative النفي

Subject + had not (hadn't) + past participle.
فاعل

Ex. I **hadn't seen** her before she **visited** us.

Question السؤال

Had + Subject + past participle...?

Ex. **Had** she **done** her homework before she **went** out?

Yes, she had.

- No, she hadn't.

السؤال بهل:

للإجابة نقول:

Had + Subject + past participle...?
كلمة استفهام

Ex. Where **had** he **hidden** before I **came**?

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف فعل تم في الماضي وانتهى قبل حدوث فعل آخر.

Ex. We **left** when the play **had finished**.

٢- لوصف حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي

Ex. Before the beginning of the 17th century, astronomers **had only studied** space with their own eyes.

٣- لتوضيح ترتيب الأحداث في الماضي، يمكن استخدام الروابط الزمنية التالية:

Before قبل
By the time قبل
When عندما

+

past simple
ماض بسيط

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

Ex. Before / By the time / When I **left** the room, I **had turned off** the light.

After بعد
As soon as بمجرد أن
When عندما

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

+

Past simple
ماض بسيط

Ex. After / As soon as / When I **had turned off** the light, I **left** the room.

Past simple
ماض بسيط (منفي غالباً)

+

till حتى
until

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

Ex. I **didn't leave** the room **until / till** I **had turned off** the light.

Notes

١- يمكن استخدام (V + ing / noun) بعد After/Before إذا لم يأتي بعدهما فاعل، بشرط أن يكون الفاعل واحد في الجملتين.

After

+

V - ing / n

+

Past simple
ماض بسيط

Before

+

V - ing / n

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

Ex. After **doing** her homework, she **went** to sleep.

= After she **had done** her homework, she **went** to sleep.

Ex. Before **going** to bed, she **had done** her homework.

= Before she **went** to bed, she **had done** her homework.

٢- يمكن أن نستخدم (لأن / because / as) مع زمن الماضي التام كالاتي:

النتيجة

Past simple
ماض بسيط

+

because / as

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

السبب

Ex. Omar **went** to the doctor **because / as** he **had been** ill.

- وعكس ما سبق نستخدم (so / that's why) لذلك كالاتي:

السبب

had + p.p

ماض تام

+

so / that's why

+

Past simple

ماضي بسيط

النتيجة

Ex. Omar **had been** ill **so / that's why** he **went** to the doctor.

Exercises on Language

(The past perfect)

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Previous Exams

1. People believed Ptolemy's ideas after he (die). **SB**
2. People (know) much about stars until scientists had used telescopes. **SB**
3. After we (collect) all the necessary information last week, we did the research. **WB**
4. Before his death, the author (publish) his latest collection of short stories. **WB**
5. Rami (tidy) his room before he started studying. **WB**
6. Malak did not want to start reading the book until she (prepare) dinner. **WB**
7. Yesterday, I (go) to the club after I had finished my work. **WB**
8. I didn't send the report until I (revise) it. **WB** شمال سيناء 2022
9. He (does) his homework by the time he slept. **WB** القليوبية 2023
10. (Did) you finished your homework before you went to the cinema? **WB** الشرقية 2023
11. 20 people (walk) on the moon by the end of the 20th century. **WB** الشرقية 2024

Longman

12. I had cleaned my room (after) I started studying.
13. Sherif did well in the exam after he (revising) his lessons well.
14. (Have) you made sure the car was safe before you started your journey?
15. What (have) you done by the time you returned home?
16. (Before) I had seen my friend off, I left Cairo Airport.
17. Dalia missed the train because she (has) got up late.
18. Kamal (doesn't) go to Alexandria until he had rented a flat there.
19. Before (visited) my friend, I had bought him a valuable present.

Longman



Bit by Bit Exercises

20. I did not buy the new car until I (got) the money.
21. She (live) in China before she went to Thailand.

22. I thanked my friend because he (help) my father yesterday.
 23. I wrote a reply to the email (before) I had received it.
 24. (After) she returned home, she had bought some bread.
 25. I didn't have lunch till I had (return) home.
 26. Before (left) home, Samir had had a shower. Longman
 27. After (had seen) the accident, I called the police. Longman
 28. How many people (walk) on the moon by the end of the 20th century?
 29. He (not publish) his ideas until just before he died.
 30. People had used maps to find their ways before satellites (invent). Longman

Speaking

Discussing life experiences:

مناقشة التجارب الحياتية

- نسأل ونجيب عن التجارب الحياتية كالآتي:

Question

- Have you ever used a telescope?
هل سبق لك أن استخدمت التليسكوب؟
- Have you ever tried an unusual sport?
هل سبق لك وأن قمت بتجربة رياضة غريبة؟
- What have you been reading recently?
ماذا كنت تقرأ مؤخرًا؟
- What have you been doing at school this week?
ماذا كنت تفعل في المدرسة هذا الأسبوع؟

Answer

- Yes, I used a telescope on the science trip last year.
نعم، لقد استخدمت تليسكوبًا في رحلة العلوم العام الماضي.
- No, I have never tried an unusual sport.
لا، لم أقم بتجربة أي رياضة غريبة.
- I have been reading a book about space.
لقد كنت أقرأ كتابًا عن الفضاء.
- I have been taking tests.
لقد كنت أحل الاختبارات.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Gana and Donia are talking about their life experiences.

- Gana : Hello! Donia. Where have you been?
 Donia : ①
 Gana : At the sports club! ②
 Donia : I play squash there.
 Gana : Great! ③
 Donia : No, I've never tried an unusual sport.
 Gana : Have you ever entered a competition?
 Donia : ④
 Gana : Can I join you next time to try squash?
 Donia : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

astronaut - have been - astronomer - had been - station - make

The space is no longer a big secret. Scientists ① trying to discover more and more about space. In the past, Neil Armstrong was the first ② to walk on the moon. In 1990, the world's first space ③ went into space. Still, we expect scientists to ④ achievements.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is an instrument designed to make distant objects appear closer.

Longman

- a. telescope b. television c. thermometer d. spacecraft

2. A is a machine in space that goes around the earth.

Longman

- a. microscope b. telescope c. ship d. satellite

3. The prefix gives the adjective of the verb "live".

- a. un- b. dis- c. in- d. a-

4. I'm going to compete in that race. We use the suffix to get the noun of "compete".

- a. -tion b. -ly c. -ist d. -ous

5. This is the same shirt you like; it isn't from it.

Longman

- a. difficult b. different c. far d. expensive

6. The moon moves around the earth. The verb "moves around" here means

الغريبة 2022

- a. stops b. orbits c. bursts d. preserves

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

WB

1. Ahmed (read) three books this week, he loves reading!

2. No one (see) a photo of the far side of the moon before 1959.

3. I (don't send) the report until I had revised it.

خبر الشيخ 2023

4. The astronaut took photos of the far side soon after he (orbit) the moon.

5. We (worked) on that project for three months. We are still working on it.

Longman

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

WB

"A short story about what you did last weekend"

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38-40 WB pages 95-96

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



GPS	نظام تحديد المواقع	sensor	جهاز استشعار
braces	تقويم / دعامات (للأسنان)	signal	إشارة
continent	قارة	fellow	رجل / رفيق
grain	حبة - بذرة - حبوب	toiler	شخص مكافح
helmet	خوذة	in vain	بلا جدوى / هباء
research	بحث / أبحاث	wireless	لاسلكي



Vocabulary

receiver	جهاز استقبال	weather report	تقرير عن الطقس
motorbike	دراجة نارية	headphones	سماعات الرأس
weather satellite	قمر صناعي للطقس	rocks	صخور
sports matches	مباريات رياضية	task	مهمة
TV show	عرض تليفزيوني	bags of air (air bags)	أكياس هوائية
podcast	نشرة صوتية	diplomat	دبلوماسي
verse	بيت شعر	receive (d)	يستقبل
trainers	حذاء رياضي	check (ed)	يتحرى / يفحص
satellite phones	هواتف متصلة بالقمر الصناعي	rhyme (d) (n)	يتناغم / يقف - قافية / إيقاع
satellite technology	تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية	allow (ed)	يسمح



Words & Meanings

braces	تقويم / دعامات (للأسنان)	something that people can wear to make their teeth straight ⁽¹⁾
continent	قارة	a large area ⁽²⁾ of land in the world, such as Africa, Asia, or Europe
fellow	رجل / رفيق	another word for a man
grain	حبة - بذرة - حبوب	a seed or seeds from a plant such as wheat
helmet	خوذة	a special hard hat used to protect the head

١- معتدل - مستوي
٢- منطقة

GPS نظام تحديد المواقع بالقمر الصناعي	a system (Global Positioning System) for finding how to find something or to get to a place using satellites	٣- يقيس ٤- كميات ٥- تعليمات ٦- فاشل ٧- عديم الفائدة ٨- أسلاك
satellite receiver جهاز استقبال بالقمر الصناعي	a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite	
sensor جهاز استشعار	something which can measure ⁽³⁾ small amounts ⁽⁴⁾ of light, heat, sound, etc.	
signal إشارة	information or an instruction ⁽⁵⁾ that is sent by sound, light, etc.	
toiler كادح/مجتهد	someone who is working hard	
in vain بلا جدوى/تافه	unsuccessful ⁽⁶⁾ or useless ⁽⁷⁾	
wireless لاسلكي	able to use the internet without wires ⁽⁸⁾	

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
comfortable	مريح	relaxing		uncomfortable	غير مريح
special	خاص / من نوع خاص	particular		general	عام
strong	قوي	powerful		weak	ضعيف
unsuccessful	غير ناجح	failed		successful	ناجح
vain	عديم الفائدة / تافه	useless		useful	مفيد
toiler	شخص مكافح	hard worker		lazy	كسول
allow	يسمح	let		prevent	يمنع
send	يرسل	transmit		receive	يستقبل

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
tele-	distance تعطي معنى "البعد"	tele vision التلفاز
un-	opposite تعطي العكس	un successful غير ناجح
-less	opposite تعطي العكس / النفي	wire less / use less لا سلكي/عديم الفائدة
-able	n/v → adj تحول الاسم/الفعل إلى الصفة	comfort able مريح
-or / -er	person/thing تكون اسم الفاعل	sensor / receiver / toiler جهاز استشعار/جهاز استقبال/كادح
ful	n/v → adj تحول الاسم/الفعل إلى صفة	success ful /use ful ناجح/مفيد

Expressions & Prepositions

live without	يعيش بدون	send to	يرسل إلى
put together	يجمع.....	on TV	في التلفزيون
find their way	يجدوا طريقهم	on phone	في الهاتف
work together	يعملون سوياً	land on	يهبط على
check the weather	يتحرى عن الطقس	work out	يتحقق / يستنتج
from the inside of	من الجزء الداخلي لـ	rhyme with	يتناغم / يقف مع

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

think	يفكر
fall	يسقط
blow	يهب (للرياح)

Past simple

thought
fell
blew

Past Participle

thought
fallen
blown



Language Notes

1) Abbreviations إختصارات

GPS = Global Positioning System	نظام تحديد المواقع العالمي
BCE = Before Common Era	قبل الميلاد
Mr = Mister	السيد
TV = Television	تلفزيون
Dr = Doctor	طبيب

2) every day / everyday

- every day (adv) كل يوم
- Ex. I go to my work on time every day.

- everyday (adj) يومي (يأتي بعدها اسم)
- Ex. Running is my everyday activity.

3) allow / let

- allow(ed) + object مفعول + to + inf. يسمح لـ..... أن.....
- Ex. Satellites allow us to study the weather.

- let (let / let) + object مفعول + inf. يسمح لـ... أن (مصدر بدون to)
- Ex. My teacher let me leave early.

4) so that

• so that

لكي

- يأتي بعد (can / will + inf.) so that إذا كان النصف الأول من الجمل مضارعاً.

- ويأتي بعدها (could / would + inf.) إذا كان النصف الأول من الجملة ماضياً.

Ex. Magid runs every morning so that he can be fit.

Ex. She practised well so that she could win the race.

5) homophones

- هي كلمات تشترك في نطق واحد ولكن تختلف في المعنى وأمثلة ذلك:

won	يفوز	one	واحد
I	أنا	eye	عين
here	هنا	hear	يسمع
know	يعرف	no	لا
sea	بحر	see	يرى
son	ابن	sun	شمس

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "Dr" is an abbreviation for
a. door b. doctor c. drink d. drone
- Karim likes to go running. It's his hobby.
a. every day b. on day c. everyday d. a day
- The manager doesn't allow us late.
a. come b. coming c. to coming d. to come
- I revised well so that I answer all questions.
a. can b. will c. could d. must
- We say "one" in the same way as
a. on b. won c. no d. none



Reading

SB page (38)

We couldn't live without satellite technology⁽¹⁾

Since the late 20th century⁽²⁾, we have used satellite technology for many of the things we do every day. Our lives would be very different without it. Here are some of the things that we use satellites for.

استمع إلى النصوص



١- تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية
٢- القرن العشرين

GPS⁽³⁾

Before satellites were invented, people had always used maps to find their way. Now, most people use GPS, **which uses a system of satellites that work together**. These send signals to **receivers**⁽⁴⁾ on Earth, which **work out**⁽⁵⁾ where you are. We have GPS in cars, on phones and even in some modern motorbike **helmets**⁽⁶⁾!

- ٣- نظام تحديد المواقع
- بالقمر الصناعي
- ٤- أجهزة استقبال
- ٥- يتحقق / يستنتج
- ٦- خوذة
- ٧- تقارير الطقس
- ٨- العروض المفضلة
- ٩- إشارة

Weather reports⁽⁷⁾

Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. They send photos of the Earth from space. When these are put together, they show how clouds and storms are moving.

TV and the internet

Lots of people have satellite TV so that they can watch their **favourite shows**⁽⁸⁾ and sports matches. The **signal**⁽⁹⁾ goes to a receiver on the house. In some areas, satellites send signals to the internet, too.

Mobile phones

Have you ever had problems using your phone because the signal is bad? Satellite phones can work anywhere in the world. They are very useful in places far from cities, such as on mountains or in deserts.

SB Page (40)

"Day"

I am busy, said the sea.
I am busy. Think of me
making **continents**⁽¹⁾ to be.
I am busy, said the sea.
I am busy, said the rain.
When I fall it's not **in vain**⁽²⁾;
Wait and you will see the **grain**⁽³⁾.
I am busy, said the rain.

I am busy, said the air,
Blowing⁽⁴⁾ here and blowing there,
Up and down and everywhere.
I am busy,' said the air.
I am busy,' said the sun.
All my planets, every one,
Know my work is never done.
I am busy,' said the sun.
Sea and rain and air and sun,
Here's a fellow **toiler**^{(5)*} one,
Whose **task**⁽⁶⁾ will soon be done.



- ١- قارات
- ٢- بلا جدوى / هباء
- ٣- حبة - بذرة
- ٤- تهب
- ٥- شخص مكافح
- ٦- مهمة

Say it
correctly

* toiler

ينطق الجزء الملون مثل نطق كلمة (toy)

Farouk El-Baz

Scientists had done a lot of **research**⁽¹⁾ before the first person walked on the moon in 1969, and one of the most important scientists was Farouk El-Baz. He helped to plan where Apollo 11 should land on the moon. Farouk also taught astronauts which **rocks**⁽²⁾ to take from the moon on later visits. After studying the moon, Farouk started studying deserts on the Earth. He used satellites to find **rivers**⁽³⁾ that were under the sand, and this work has helped Egypt and other countries to find new water.



١- بحث / أبحاث
٢- صخور
٣- أنهار



Audioscript

SB Page (39)

Voice : Satellites have changed the way that we do a lot of things on Earth. But did you know **space technology**⁽¹⁾ is also used to make many of the **objects**⁽²⁾ we use every day? In fact, around 50 new **products**⁽³⁾ are invented every year using space technology. Here are some of the ones you might use.



١- تكنولوجيا الفضاء
٢- أشياء
٣- منتجات
٤- حذاء رياضي
٥- أكياس هوائية
٦- جهاز استشعار
٧- سماعات الأذن
٨- خفيف
٩- لاسلكي

Narrator: **One, trainers**⁽⁴⁾

Voice : In the 1970s, space scientists invented a new type of helmet. The material inside the helmet contained small bags of air, which made the helmet more comfortable and protected the astronaut better. A few years later, one of these scientists had the idea of using same type of **air bags**⁽⁵⁾ in trainers. Many modern trainers now use this design.

Narrator: **Two, mobile phone cameras**

Voice : In 1990, space scientists invented a new **sensor**⁽⁶⁾ that allowed scientists to take photos in space without using much energy. This technology is now used in the cameras in our mobile phones.

Narrator: **Three, wireless headphones**⁽⁷⁾

Voice : It's important for astronauts to be able to communicate with their team on Earth. Before the 1960s, headphones were big and uncomfortable. So space scientists designed **light**⁽⁸⁾, **wireless**⁽⁹⁾ headphones that astronauts could speak into without using their hands. Neil Armstrong spoke through wireless headphones when he first stepped onto the moon.

Narrator : Four, sunglasses

Voice : In 1980, scientists were working on a way to protect astronauts' eyes in space. They read that the eyes of some birds have special oil that protects them from light and helps them to see more **clearly**⁽¹⁰⁾. The scientists designed a **lens**⁽¹¹⁾ that could do the same thing. Today, this type of lens is used in sunglasses .

١- بوضوح
٢- عدسة
٣- تقويم / دعائم
٤- أسنان
٥- العصور القديمة
٦- الأجزاء الداخلية
٧- العصور الحديثة

Narrator : Five, clear braces⁽¹²⁾

Voice : People have wanted perfect teeth since **ancient times**⁽¹³⁾. Did you know that the Ancient Egyptians had used the **insides**⁽¹⁴⁾ of sheep to make braces for teeth? In more **modern times**⁽¹⁵⁾, braces were made from metal, and then, in 1986 the first clear braces were created. They used a special kind of plastic that is strong even when it's very thin. It was created to protect equipment on trips into space.

WB Page (96)

1. I watched my favourite football team yesterday, and they won!
2. Oh, there is something in my eye.
3. My friend called me, but I could not hear.
4. I asked my mother if I could go to the park, but she said no.
5. What can you see from the top of the tower?
6. Ali is Hassan's youngest son.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A is another word for a man. SB
 a. follow b. fellow c. flew d. flute
2. A is a seed or seeds from a plant such as wheat. SB
 a. grain b. branch c. tree d. brain
3. The is a network of satellites that helps to show the location of something on Earth. Longman
 a. GPS b. solar system c. Cairo tower d. microscope
4. are things that people can wear to make their teeth straight.
 a. Helmets b. Sensors c. Grains d. Braces
5. A is a large area of land in the world, such as Africa, Asia or Europe.
 a. river b. planet c. continent d. city

6. A _____ is something which can measure small amounts of light, heat, sound, etc.
 a. brace b. helmet c. sensor d. signal
7. A _____ is a special hard hat used to protect the head.
 a. brace b. satellite c. GPS d. helmet
8. A _____ is a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite.
 a. sensor b. satellite receiver c. signal d. fellow
9. To be famous and rich, you should be a toiler. The word "toiler" means someone who _____.
 a. never works b. works hard c. sleeps a lot d. eats much

أسسوط 2023

Synonyms & Antonyms

10. My parents don't allow me to watch TV late. The synonym of the word "allow" is _____.
 a. let b. prevent c. reject d. find
11. I searched for the lost watch in vain. "In vain" means _____.
 a. without success b. carelessly c. hopefully d. without failure
12. Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. "Allow... to" here is the opposite of the meaning of _____.
 a. prevent ...from b. come from c. think of d. persuade ...to
13. "Comfortable" and "_____ " are synonyms.
 a. tiring b. interesting c. relaxing d. boring
14. Braces are made of a new strong material. The opposite of "strong" is _____.
 a. weak b. hard c. clean d. rough
15. Farmers in this village grow special kinds of crops. The word "special" can be replaced by _____.
 a. popular b. public c. general d. particular
16. The antonym of the word "toiler" is _____.
 a. active b. lazy c. similar d. general
17. Satellites send lots of signals. The antonym of the word "send" is _____.
 a. deliver b. allow c. pass d. receive

بورسعيد 2023

Suffixes & Prefixes

18. Success in life is based on hard work. When we add the suffix "-ful" to "success", we get a/an _____.
 a. verb b. adjective c. noun d. adverb

Longman

19. You should learn how to use a dictionary. To get the adjective from the verb "use", add the suffix "_____". Longman

- a. -ation b. - ity c. -ful d. - ment

20. The word "successful" is turned into the opposite by adding the prefix _____.

- a. in- b. dis- c. un- d. re-

21. The suffix "-less" in the word "useless" gives the _____ of the word "useful".

- a. ability b. opposite c. synonym d. meaning

22. We add _____ to the verb "receive" to turn it into a noun.

- a. -ist b. -or c. -r d. -ant

Guessing the meaning from the text

23. You can't make phone calls because there is no telephone _____.

الجزيرة 2022

- a. wireless b. orders c. GPS d. signal

24. _____ phones can work anywhere in the world, even in places that are far from cities. Longman

- a. Satellite b. Ground c. Ordinary d. Old-fashioned

25. The Ancient Egyptians made _____ from the inside of sheep. دمياط 2024

- a. lenses b. braces c. glasses d. headphones

26. This camera works without using wires. This means it's _____.

- a. wireless b. harmless c. powerless d. hopeless

27. This scientist always discovers new facts. This means he is always doing good _____.

- a. sensor b. receiver c. research d. brace

28. He hurt his head when he fell off his bike because he didn't wear his _____.

- a. lenses b. braces c. helmet d. bag

29. **Mr. Ahmed:** Can you add any words that _____ with "we"?

A student: Free and see.

- a. talk b. take c. busy d. rhyme

Speaking

Discussing satellite technology

مناقشة تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية

- نسأل ونجيب عن التكنولوجيا المستخدمة بواسطة الأقمار الصناعية كالآتي:

Question

- How have you used satellite technology this week?
- كيف استخدمت تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية هذا الأسبوع؟
- Have you ever had problems using your phone because the signal is bad?
- هل سبق لك أن واجهت مشاكل في استخدام هاتفك لأن الإشارة سيئة؟

Answer

- I checked the weather this morning and I watched my favourite show on satellite TV last night.
- لقد تحريت عن حالة الطقس هذا الصباح وشاهدت عرضي المفضل في التلفزيون الليلة الماضية.
- No, I have never had problems because I have a satellite phone.
- لا، لم أواجه أي مشاكل أبداً لأن لدي هاتف يعمل بالأقمار الصناعية.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mahmoud is talking to Amr who has been to Alex.

Mahmoud: Hi Amr. Where have you been?

Amr: ①

Mahmoud: ②?

Amr: I travelled with my friends.

Mahmoud: How was your trip?

Amr: ③

Mahmoud: How long did you stay there?

Amr: ④

Mahmoud: Two weeks! ⑤?

Amr: Yes, we enjoyed it very much.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

signals - had used - GPS - technology - uses - moon

We couldn't do without satellite ① Before satellites were invented, people ② maps to find their way. Now, most people use ③ , which uses a system of satellites that work together. These send ④ to receivers on Earth, which work out where you are.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a person who works very hard, usually doing hard physical work.
a. toiler b. rhyme c. receiver d. show
2. A is information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.
a. verse b. report c. helmet d. signal
3. I couldn't work out what this word meant. Work out has a similar meaning to
a. do a job b. have a career c. understand d. do sports
4. The prefix "tele-" in the word "television" means
a. from a distance b. near of c. between d. next to
5. Astronauts will take rocks from the moon on later visits. "Later" here is a/an
a. adverb b. adjective c. noun d. verb
6. If you do something in, you do it unsuccessfully.
a. veil b. verse c. vain d. fellow

أسيوط 2023

4 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1. Before I came to school, I (do) my homework. أسيوط 2023
2. I didn't have a shower until I (have) my breakfast. أسيوط 2024
3. Hoda did very well in the test because she (revise) carefully. أسوان 2022
4. We've been waiting for Rami; he (not arrived) yet. Longman
5. People have wanted perfect teeth (in) ancient times.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

SB

"A review of the trainers you have bought"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What technology is used in the trainers?
- What are they used for?
- When / Where were they invented?
- What makes them special?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- The trainers I have bought have
- They were invented in
- Most trainers today have small air bags inside them.....
- They make the trainers lighter and.....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41-43 WB pages 97-99

Key Vocabulary

planetarium
photo exhibition

مبنى القبة السماوية
معرض للصور

asteroid
Mars

استمع إلى المفردات



كويكب (كوكب صغير)
كوكب المريخ



Vocabulary

guide
source
robot space vehicle
flat (adj)
piece
public transport
achievement
informative
successfully
railway

مرشد
مصدر
مركبة فضائية آلية
مسطح
قطعة
المواصلات العامة
إنجاز
تثقيفي / غني بالمعلومات
بنجاح
خط سكة حديد

directions
Spanish sailor
clearer photos
the far side
closely
communication
safely
land (ed)
appear (ed)
turn (ed)

إتجاهات
بحار اسباني
صور أكثر وضوحاً
الجانب البعيد
عن قرب
تواصل / اتصال
بأمان
يهبط
يظهر
يدور

Important persons

Al Idrisi (مؤسس علم الجغرافيا الحديثة)
William Anders
وليم أندرس (مهندس وطيّار أمريكي) «قام بتصوير الأرض من سطح القمر»

Gerardus Mercator
Juan de la Cosa
خوان دي لا كوسا (مستكشف ورحالة إسباني) «أول من رسم خريطة للأمريكتين»

Probes & Telescopes

The Hubble telescope
Osiris-Rex
The Mars Perseverance Rover
تليسكوب هابل
أوسايرس - ركس (مسبار أمريكي)
مركبة المريخ المتجولة

The Rosetta space probe
The Cassini space probe
المسبار روزيتا الفضائي
المسبار كاسيني الفضائي
هو مركبة فضائية آلية بدون طاقم تستعمل لاستكشاف الفضاء الخارجي



Words & Meanings

asteroid
planetarium
map
كويكب (كوكب صغير)
مبنى القبة السماوية
خريطة

a large rock that is flying through space
a building where lights on a curved ceiling⁽¹⁾ show the movement⁽²⁾ of planets and stars
something people can use to follow directions

١- سقف مقوس
٢- حركة

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
far	بعيد	remote		close/near	قريب
appear	يظهر	turn up		disappear	يختفي
clear	واضح	obvious		unclear	غير واضح
excited	مثار / متحمس	interested		bored	شاعر بالملل
everything	كل شيء	the whole/all		nothing	لا شيء

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
trans-	move across تعطى معنى «خلال / عبر»	transport نقل / مواصلات
astro-	space تتعلق بالفضاء	astronaut رائد فضاء
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة الى الحال	close ly / saf ely / success fully عن قرب / بأمان / بنجاح
-ion	v → n تحول الفعل الى الاسم	direction / exhibition / communication اتجاه / معرض / اتصال
-ment		achievement إنجاز
-ese	place تعبّر عن شخص / شيء ينتمي إلى مكان	Japan ese / Chin ese ياباني / صيني
-ing	v → adj تحول الفعل الى الصفة	amazing مذهش
-or	person تكوّن اسم الفاعل	sail or بحّار

Expressions & Prepositions

make travel easier	يجعل السفر أسهل	broke as/ when it landed	تخطمت فور هبوطها
make phone calls	يجري اتصالات هاتفية		
find a way	يجد طريقة	the Earth turning	دوران الأرض
get directions	يعرف الاتجاهات	land safely	تهبط بسلام
go around	يدور حول	travel at ... speed	يسافر بسرعة ...
a long time after	بعد وقت طويل	above the Earth	فوق سطح الأرض
take them back	يعيدهم مرة أخرى	land on	يهبط على
How fast?	كم سرعة.....؟	fly through space	يطير عبر الفضاء

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

begin	يبدأ	began	begun
fly	يطير	flew	flown
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made
hit	يضرب / يصدم	hit	hit
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn



Language Notes

1) journey / trip

- journey رحلة طويلة (برية / جوية)

Ex. His wife accompanied him on his journey to America.

- trip رحلة قصيرة (لها غرض معين)

هناك كلمات تأتي مع trip

business - school - boat

Ex. He went on a school trip to the zoo.

2) orbit / spin

- orbit يدور (حول شيء) في مدار

Ex. The Earth orbits the sun.

- spin يلف - يدور (حول نفسه)

Ex. I threw the ball and it began to spin.

3) explore / discover / invent

- explore

يستكشف / يستطلع (مكان / شيء)

Ex. Some scientists went to explore the new site.

- discover

يكتشف (شيء موجود ولكنه غير معروف)

Ex. Scientists are trying to discover a new cure for COVID 19.

- invent

يخترع (شيء لم يكن موجود)

Ex. Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I bought this souvenir on my business _____ to California.
a. journey b. trip c. walk d. picnic
- The Space Station _____ the Earth.
a. flies b. runs c. spins d. orbits
- A space robot had _____ Mars before the end of the 20th century.
a. made b. invented c. explored d. covered



Audioscript

SB Page (41)

استمع إلى النص



Guide⁽¹⁾ : This is a very interesting photo. Do you know what it is?

Lina : It's the moon.

Guide : That's right. This is a photo of the moon, but it's an **unusual⁽²⁾** photo. This isn't what we see when we look into the sky at night. This is **the far side⁽³⁾** of the moon.



Injy : So this is the side of the moon we can't see from Earth.

Guide : That's right. No one had seen this side of the moon before 1959. That's when the **Russian⁽⁴⁾** spacecraft, Luna 3 took the first photos of it. As soon as the photos were taken, they appeared in newspapers around the world. The photos weren't very **clear⁽⁵⁾**, but everyone was very excited to see them. Then, in 1965, Russia sent Zond 3, another spacecraft to orbit the moon. It took 25 photos and they were much clearer.

- ١- مرشد
- ٢- غير عادي
- ٣- الجانب البعيد
- ٤- روسي
- ٥- واضح
- ٦- خرائط
- ٧- هبط على
- ٨- بنجاح

Lina : Has anyone made a map of the moon?

Guide : Good question! From 1966 to 1967, the USA sent spacecraft to orbit the moon and take photos. They used these to create **maps⁽⁶⁾** of the moon. At the same time, Russia created maps using the photos from Zond 3.

Injy : Were all of the photos of the far side of the moon taken by spacecraft?

Guide : No, soon after the maps were created, astronauts from the Apollo 8 spacecraft became the first people to see the far side of the moon. They took photos of the moon as they orbited it.

Lina : Have any spacecraft **landed on⁽⁷⁾** the far side of the moon?

Guide : Yes. NASA sent a spacecraft to the far side of the moon in 1962, but it broke when it landed. A long time after this, in 2019, a Chinese spacecraft **successfully⁽⁸⁾** landed on the far side of the moon.



Reading

SB page (41)

Photos of the Earth

The first photo of the Earth is taken from **space**⁽¹⁾.

Astronaut William Anders takes a photo of the Earth from the moon.

A robot **space vehicle**⁽⁴⁾ takes the first photo of the Earth from **Mars**⁽⁵⁾.



1946

1967

1968

1990

2004

2020

The first **colour photo**⁽²⁾ of the Earth is taken.

A **robot spacecraft**⁽³⁾ takes the first video of the Earth turning.

A satellite takes a photo of Earth with other planets in the solar system.

Arabic
Meaning

١- الفضاء ٢- صورة ملونة ٣- مركبة فضائية آلية ٤- مركبة فضاء ٥- كوكب المريخ

SB Page (42)

The International Space Station

What is the International Space Station?

The International Space Station is a huge spacecraft 70 km above the Earth. It's a place where astronauts live and work when they go into space. Most astronauts stay on the Space Station for about six months.

How fast does it travel?

The Space Station orbits the Earth every day. It travels at 27,000 kilometres an hour. That means that it goes around the Earth every 90 minutes! It's one of **the brightest**⁽¹⁾ **objects**⁽²⁾ in the sky and you can see it without using a telescope.

When was it built?

Lots of countries worked together to make the Space Station and astronauts from all around the world have stayed on it. The first **piece**⁽³⁾ of the Space Station went into space in 1998. Since the first astronauts arrived in 2000, more than 200 astronauts from 19 countries have stayed there.

What is life like on the space station?

Life on the Space Station is different from life on Earth in many ways. In space, washing, sleeping and eating can be difficult! But **communication**⁽⁴⁾ isn't a problem. Astronauts can send emails or make phone calls to their families back home.



١- الأكثر إشراقاً /

سطوعاً

٢- أشياء

٣- قطعة

٤- التواصل / الاتصال

My trip to the planetarium^{(1)*} By Hassan El-Sayed

Last year, I went to the planetarium in Alexandria with my cousin, Magdy. I was really excited because I hadn't been to a planetarium before. Magdy lives in Alexandria, so he had visited the planetarium a few times with his family.

We saw a really interesting film about Ancient Egypt⁽²⁾. We learned about how the Ancient Egyptians had studied the stars to find out when the Nile flooded. They had even used the stars to help them build the pyramids.

After the film, we went to an exhibition^{(3)*} about Mars. Did you know a space robot had explored⁽⁴⁾ Mars before the end of the 20th century? It landed on Mars in 1997.

We had an amazing time. We were there all morning, but when we left, we hadn't seen everything! I'd like to back there again one day.



- ١- مبنى القبة السماوية
- ٢- مصر القديمة
- ٣- معرض
- ٤- استكشف



- * planetarium ينطق حرف (a) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطقه في كلمة square
- * exhibition ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت «إكس» مع عدم نطق حرف (h)

The history of maps

100s : Ptolemy draws⁽¹⁾ one of the first. It shows the area around the Mediterranean⁽²⁾.

1100s : Al Idrisi, from North Africa, draws maps in a book called Tabula Rogeriana. It shows the world as a circle⁽³⁾.

1500s : The Spanish sailor⁽⁴⁾ Juan de la Cosa draws the first map to show America. Gerardus Mercator finds a way to draw the round world on flat paper⁽⁵⁾.

1800s : Roads and railways⁽⁶⁾ make travel easier. Maps become smaller and better.

1950s : The first satellite photos are taken of the Earth and maps give much more information.

2005 : People start to use maps on their phones and computers. They use satellites to get directions⁽⁷⁾.



- ١- يرسم
- ٢- البحر الأبيض المتوسط
- ٣- دائرة
- ٤- بحار أسباني
- ٥- ورقة مسطحة
- ٦- خطوط سكة حديد
- ٧- اتجاهات

Journey to Bennu

In 2020, a spacecraft landed on **Bennu**⁽¹⁾. Bennu is an **asteroid**⁽²⁾, which is a large rock that is flying through space. The spacecraft, called Osiris-Rex, took small rocks from Bennu and will take them back to the Earth in 2023.



This was an amazing **achievement**⁽³⁾. Bennu is more than 300 million kilometres from the Earth, but it is very small. It is only 510 metres from one side to the other! Osiris-Rex left the Earth in 2016 and had orbited Bennu for nearly two years before it found a place to land safely.

١- كويكب بينو
٢- كويكب
٣- إنجاز
٤- ممكن

Then, in 2021, Osiris-Rex left Bennu for its journey home. This will be around 2.3 billion kilometres, because the spacecraft must orbit the sun twice before it can land on the Earth.

So why has Osiris-Rex made this difficult journey? Scientists think that the rocks from Bennu could help them to understand how the Earth was made. Scientists also think that understanding Bennu will help them know where the asteroid is going. It is **possible**⁽⁴⁾ that it will hit the Earth, although not for many years!

Exercises on Lessons 5& 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- A is a building where lights on a curved ceiling show the movement of planets and stars.
a. ship b. space station c. robot d. planetarium
- A/An is a large rock that is flying through space.
a. asteroid b. space ship c. astronaut d. astronomer

Synonyms & Antonyms

- The synonym of "far" is
a. remote b. near c. close d. here
- The dog appeared suddenly. The antonym of the verb "appear" is
a. reappear b. run c. die d. disappear
- "Clear" and have the same meaning.
a. difficult b. obvious c. far d. hard
- "....." is the synonym of the word "interested".
a. Excited b. Connected c. Wanted d. Bored
- Now, we can see everything in space. The opposite of "everything" is
a. something b. anything c. thing d. nothing

Suffixes & Prefixes

8. The opposite of the word "appear" is formed by adding
 a. ir- b. im- c. un- d. dis-
 9. We add the suffix to make an adverb from the adjective "successful".
 a. -ic b. -ly c. -y d. -al
 10. To turn the verb "amaze" into an adjective, we delete "e" and add the suffix
 a. -ly b. -er c. -ing d. -or
 11. We add the prefix to the word "port" to mean "move across".
 a. trans- b. astro- c. tech- d. dis-
 12. We add the suffix to the verb "direct" to turn it into a noun.
 a. -ion b. -ly c. -ive d. -er
 13. The prefix "astro-" in the word "astronaut" refers to
 a. sea b. space c. land d. sky
 14. To make the verb "Sail" a noun of a person we add the suffix
 a. -er b. -or c. -ing d. -ed

Guessing the meaning from the text

15. The moon moves around the Earth. This means it the Earth.
 a. spins b. runs c. orbits d. sails
 16. I went to a place where I could see all the planets clearly. This means I went to the
 a. zoo b. aquarium c. planetarium d. garden
 17. Astronauts travel to space in a vehicle. This means they travel in the
 a. spacecraft b. house c. tent d. cave
 18. Our planet faces a lot of environmental problems. The word "planet" refers to
 a. the earth b. the sun c. the moon d. the sky

Speaking

Discussing when events happened

مناقشة متى وقعت الأحداث

- نسأل ونجيب عن تواريخ وقوع الأحداث في الماضي كما في الأمثلة التالية:

Question

- When was the first photo of the Earth taken from space?
- متى تم التقاط أول صورة للأرض من الفضاء؟
- Who took a photo of the Earth from the moon in 1968?
- من الذي التقط صورة للأرض من القمر في عام ١٩٦٨؟

Answer

- The first photo of the Earth was taken from space in 1946.
- التقطت أول صورة للأرض من الفضاء عام 1946.
- Astronaut William Anders took a photo of the Earth from the moon in 1968.
- التقط رائد الفضاء ويليام أندرس صورة للأرض من القمر عام ١٩٦٨.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Yasmin and Malak are at the planetarium.

Malak : What are these photos?

Yasmin : ①

Malak : ②?

Yasmin : This photo of the Earth was taken from space in 1946.

Malak : ③

Yasmin : It was taken from the moon in 1968.

Malak : How was this first video of the Earth turning taken in 1990?

Yasmin : ④

Malak : A robot spacecraft! ⑤

Yasmin : Yes, you are right. It's a great achievement.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

remote - have - solar - sun - have been - near

Everyone knows about the ① system and its planets. They're in space, orbiting the ② Astronomers ③ discovered millions of stars in our solar system. Those stars are very ④

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Astronauts can fly in a to get to other planets.

- a. space station b. spacecraft c. station d. stop

2. The will take the tourists round the museum.

- a. astronaut b. guide c. toiler d. receiver

3. The antonym of "clear" is

- a. obvious b. interesting c. common d. unclear

4. We can get the noun from the verb "achieve" by adding the suffix

- a. -tion b. -er c. -ment d. -or

5. He works on a ship in the sea. This means he is a / an

- a. astronaut b. pilot c. sailor d. astronomer

6. Everyone can use buses and trains to travel from one place to another. This means they can use _____ transport.

- a. public b. private c. uncommon d. bad

7. There are eight _____ in our solar system.

- a. plants b. plans c. planes d. planets

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Before I left school last time, I _____ (say) goodbye to all my friends. WB
2. After we had had our lessons, we _____ (go) to the club.
3. I have been _____ (work) as a teacher of English for 13 years now.
4. _____ (Have) Ramy tidied his room before he started studying?
5. I _____ (didn't say) nothing until she had finished talking.



5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

WB

"A review of an article about (Mars) one of the planets in the solar system"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| - What is Mars known as? | - How far is Mars from the sun? |
| - How is the weather in Mars? | - What do scientists want to know? |

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- Mars is known as "the Red Planet" because.....
- Mars is the fourth planet from.....
- Mars has weather like.....
- Scientists want to know.....

Key Vocabulary

astronaut	رائد فضاء	braces	تقويم / دعامات (للأسنان)	wireless	لاسلكي
astronomer	عالم في الفلك	continent	قارة	planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية
gravity	الجاذبية الأرضية	grain	حبة - بذرة - حبوب	photo exhibition	معرض للصور
lens	عدسة	helmet	خوذة	asteroid	كويكب (كوكب صغير)
researcher	باحث	research	بحث / أبحاث	Mars	كوكب المريخ
satellite	قمر صناعي	sensor	جهاز استشعار	explore (d)	يستكشف
solar system	النظام الشمسي	signal	إشارة	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
space station	محطة فضائية	fellow	رجل / رفيق	flood (ed)	يفيض (النهر)
telescope	تليسكوب	toiler	شخص مكافح	orbit (ed)	يدور حول (في مدار)
GPS	نظام تحديد المواقع	in vain	بلا جدوى / هباء		



Language

1- Remember: The present perfect tense

زمن المضارع التام

I / We / You / They	اسم جمع	have ('ve)	past participle
He / She / It	اسم مفرد	has ('s)	التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. We **have watched** a play.Ex. She **hasn't completed** her study.Ex. **Have** you ever **been** to London?

• يستخدم زمن المضارع التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية في الماضي (past experiences):

٢- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي ولا يزال أثره موجود:

٣- لوصف حدث تم حديثاً «أى قبل قليل»

- لاحظ استخدام الكلمات الدالة على الزمن واماكنها:

just (في الجملة المثبتة)	من قبل ever	(في السؤال والنفي)
never (في النفي)	yet (حتى الآن)	(في آخر النفي / السؤال)
since + (منذ)	for + (المدة)	مدة زمنية
recently / lately	already	بالفعل
(حديثاً / مؤخراً) في بداية أو نهاية الجملة أو السؤال أو بين جزئي الزمن	في نهاية الجملة المثبتة أو بين جزئي الزمن	

2- The present perfect continuous tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر

• يتكون من:

I / We / You / They اسم جمع + have + been + V-ing
He / She / It اسم مفرد + has

Ex. I have been playing tennis for 2 hours now.

3- The past perfect tense زمن الماضي التام

• يتكون من:

Subject + had + past participle.
فاعل التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. After I had finished my work, I went home.

Ex. I hadn't seen her before she visited us.

Ex. Had she done her homework before she went out?

• يستخدم زمن الماضي التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف فعل تم في الماضي وانتهى قبل حدوث فعل آخر.

٢- لوصف حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي

لتوضيح ترتيب الأحداث في الماضي، يمكن استخدام الروابط الزمنية التالية:

Before قبل
By the time قبل
When عندما

+

past simple
ماض بسيط

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

After بعد
As soon as بمجرد أن
When عندما

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

+

Past simple
ماض بسيط

Past simple
ماض بسيط (منفي غالباً)

+

till حتى
until

+

had + p.p.
ماض تام

Speaking

مناقشة التجارب الحياتية

1) Discussing life experiences:

Question

- Have you ever used a telescope?

Answer

- Yes, I used a telescope on the science trip last year.

2) Discussing satellite technology

مناقشة تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية

Question

- How have you used satellite technology this week?

Answer

- I checked the weather this morning and I watched my favourite show on satellite TV last night.

3) Discussing when events happened

مناقشة متى وقعت الأحداث

Question

- When was the first photo of the Earth taken from space?

Answer

- The first photo of the Earth was taken from space in 1946.

General Exercises on Unit 10

1) Finish the following dialogue:

Basmala and Zahraa are talking about space.

Basmala : Hi Zahraa! What are you doing?

Zahraa : ①

Basmala : ② ?

Zahraa : Because I'm interested in stars and planets.

Basmala : ③ ?

Zahraa : Yes, I have already visited the planetarium.

Basmala : Did you use the telescope?

Zahraa : ④

Basmala : Wow! What did you see with it?

Zahraa : ⑤

2) Read and complete the text with words from the following list: Longman


astronaut - have been - astronomer - had been - station - make

The space is no longer a big secret. Scientists ① trying to discover more and more about space. In the past, Neil Armstrong was the first ② to walk on the moon. In 1990, the world's first space ③ went into space. Still, we expect scientists to ④ achievements.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A _____ is information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.
a. gravity b. signal c. station d. lens
2. The synonym of the word "strong" is _____.
a. unhealthy b. slow c. powerful d. weak
3. The word _____ gives the opposite of the adjective "ancient".
a. old b. ugly c. modern d. beauty
4. We add the suffix _____ to the verb "sail" to turn it into a noun.
a. -ly b. -ist c. -or d. -able
5. We add the prefix _____ to the word "vision" to mean from a distance.
a. re- b. dis- c. tele- d. inter-
6. They collected the photos in one place. This means they showed them in a photo _____.
a. exhibition b. exam c. planet d. space

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Before satellites were invented, people _____ (always use) maps to find their way. SB
2. After _____ (returned) home, he had a shower. 
3. I didn't go out until I _____ (finished) my homework.
4. Astronomers _____ (have studied) space with their eyes before the telescope was invented. SB
5. Students were amazed to know that the ancient Egyptians _____ (were discovering) a star called Sirius. SB

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A biography of a person you like "an astronaut"

سبتمبر 2022

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- What is the astronaut's name?
- What is his nationality?
- How often did he travel to space?
- Do you want to be an astronaut in the future? Why / Why not?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- I am going to write about a famous astronaut who is called.....
- He is from.....
- He travelled to a space more than.....
- I want to be an astronaut in the future because.....



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Eyad and Adam are talking about spending their spare time.

Adam : What do you do in your spare time, Eyad?

Eyad : ①.....

Adam : Reading stories! That's wonderful ②.....?

Eyad : I prefer short stories.

Adam : ③.....?

Eyad : Sometimes at home and sometimes at school library.

Adam : I will bring you some interesting ones.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

photos - can - storms - are - signal - land

Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. They send ①..... of the earth from space. When these are put together, they show how clouds and ②..... are moving. Lots of people have satellite TVs so that they ③..... watch their favourite shows and sports matches. The ④..... goes to a receiver on the top of houses.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many people are interested in learning English. It is known that it is a very important language as it is spoken all over the world. It isn't difficult to learn English. You will use it even when you join the university, but unless you use English, you will forget it. The English language gives us the chance to read English books and many wonderful stories. Speaking English fluently will help you when you travel to foreign countries to be able to communicate with people there. It is also difficult to use the internet without knowing much about English. It's better for all of us to learn and improve it well.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What will happen if you don't use English?

.....

3. Why do we use English when we travel to foreign countries?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. It is to learn English.

- a. difficult b. easy c. useless d. bad

5. The underlined word "it" refers to

- a. the internet b. a story c. the university d. English

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The helps us to see very distant objects well.

- a. thermometer b. telescope c. mirror d. microscope

2. Africa is a very big

- a. city b. town c. continent d. country

3. They have been for three hours now.

- a. study b. studies c. studied d. studying

4. My father helped me do my homework after he his work.

- a. has finished b. finishes c. will finish d. had finished

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Eman did very well in the test because she (revise) carefully.

اسوان 2024

2. As soon as I had heard the bad news, I (had called) my friend.

3. I have never (rode) a horse.

6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The International Space Station"

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What is the International Space Station?
- Where is it?
- How was it built?
- What does life look like on the space station?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- The International Space Station is a huge
- The Space Station orbits
- Lots of countries worked together to
- Life on the Space Station is different from

Al Azhar Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A Vocabulary

1. Astronauts can stay on the _____ for a few months. SB
 a. lens b. signal c. space station d. telescope
2. A satellite sends a _____ to a receiver on Earth. SB
 a. sensor b. signal c. brace d. helmet
3. The Ancient Egyptians _____ that a star called Sirius appeared in the sky just before the Nile flooded. SB
 a. orbited b. recycled c. invented d. discovered
4. The Ancient Egyptians used a star called Sirius to find out when the Nile _____ . SB
 a. flooded b. recycled c. damaged d. invented
5. Don't worry, the _____ will show us the right way. WB
 a. GPS b. weather report c. telescope d. camera
6. The moon _____ the Earth once every 27 days. WB
 a. revises b. recycles c. spins d. orbits

Longman Exercises

7. We should _____ rubbish that people produce.
 a. recycle b. result c. think d. show
8. In _____ times, people knew what time of the year it was by looking at where the stars were in the sky.
 a. ancient b. modern c. new d. future
9. _____ is the force that attracts people or things to the centre of the Earth.
 a. Flying b. Gravity c. Recycling d. Pollution
10. A _____ is a spacecraft where people live and work.
 a. satellite b. train station c. rocket d. space station
11. There are eight planets in our _____.
 a. solar energy b. solar system c. stars d. continent
12. An astronaut is a person who _____.
 a. controls a ship b. studies astronomy
 c. travels into space d. discovers monuments

13. A/An _____ is an expert in or student of astronomy.
 a. astronomer b. engineer c. pilot d. astronaut
14. Asia is the largest _____.
 a. capital b. island c. continent d. country
15. The first photo of the Earth was _____ in 1946.
 a. invented b. repeated c. done d. taken

Bit by Bit Exercises

16. I watched my favourite TV _____ yesterday.
 a. shoe b. show c. space d. force
17. If something is _____ you don't need to plug it in.
 a. wiring b. wireless c. wiry d. wired
18. A/An _____ is a person who studies something carefully.
 a. cook b. pilot c. researcher d. traveller
19. The word won sounds like one, but has a/an _____ meaning.
 a. impossible b. similar c. useless d. different
20. A sensor _____ information.
 a. reads b. hides c. destroys d. damages
21. You can't make a phone call because there is no telephone _____.
 a. signal b. wireless c. information d. map
22. This camera takes good photos because it has got a very good _____.
 a. lens b. telescope c. planet d. source

B Language

23. Heba _____ her housework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet. **WB**
 a. has done b. has been doing c. doing d. did
24. Omar _____ reading a new story for an hour; he is still reading it. **WB**
 a. has b. has been c. were d. have been
25. Hoda did very well in the test because she _____ carefully. **WB**
 a. revise b. revises c. had revised d. revising
26. I have been _____ English for 10 years now.
 a. study b. studied c. studying d. studies
27. It has been raining _____ 2 hours now.
 a. since b. for c. ago d. never

28. I haven't seen my friend Omar
 a. yet b. already c. just d. since
29. I have done my homework.
 a. yet b. already c. for d. since
30. Amira hasn't visited Mecca 2018.
 a. for b. since c. ever d. already
31. Arwa has never alone before.
 a. travelled b. travel c. travelling d. travels
32. The children have done their homework. They finished it a moment ago.
 a. just b. never c. since d. yet
33. Have you met a famous person?
 a. ever b. for c. never d. since
34. She went home she had done the shopping.
 a. before b. the same time c. until d. after
35. we had arrived home, we had dinner.
 a. Before b. As soon as c. Since d. Till
36. Before to bed, I had done my homework.
 a. went b. had gone c. going d. go
37. I went to the club after I my work.
 a. finish b. have finished c. had finished d. finishing
38. I didn't go out until I my homework.
 a. had finished b. have finished c. finish d. finishing
39. Before my father left, he his breakfast.
 a. have b. has c. had had d. having
40. Has she ever to Aswan?
 a. be b. been c. being d. is
41. your father got a new job in a big company?
 a. Have b. Did c. Does d. Has
42. He didn't telephone me until he heard the news.
 a. had b. was c. has d. have



Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

1- "A short story about what you did last weekend" (Lessons 1 & 2)

I had a good weekend. Before I went to bed on Saturday, I had read a book. It was about a space journey. People have been interested in studying space since ancient times. It was possible to see only some stars and planets with the eye. Then, in 1608, the telescope was invented. The Italian astronomer Galileo improved the design. He made the lenses stronger so that he could study the planets in our solar system. I like this kind of books because I like everything about the space. I have been dreaming to be an astronaut since I was young.

2- "A review of the trainers you have bought" (Lessons 3 & 4)

It was my birthday, and my mother took me to the shoe store to buy new trainers for me. Once we were there, I found a lot of trainers on the wall, but I chose my favourite. I put them on quickly, so I could feel how they were on my feet. They were tight at first, but they stretched to fit my feet after a few weeks of wearing them. Most trainers today have small air bags inside them. The idea of bags of air in modern trainers came from space helmets. It is used to make the trainers lighter.

3- "A review of an article about one of the planets in the solar system" (Lessons 5 & 6)

Mars is known as the 'the Red Planet' because it's red! Mars is the second smallest planet in the solar system. Mars is the fourth planet from the sun. Mars is much colder than our own planet. Like the Earth, Mars has weather. Scientists want to know if Mars could support life now or in the future. It has two moons. Mars has been known since ancient times. Several

scientists have visited Mars. Mars is the only planet we have sent spacecraft to. They could take many pictures of it.

4- "A biography of a famous astronaut"

I am going to write about a famous astronaut. He is called Neil Armstrong. He was born in the USA. He studied space engineering at university. Armstrong worked for NASA as a pilot. He was chosen to join a new group of astronauts who would travel into space. He was the first person to walk on the moon. Armstrong left NASA to take a teaching job at the university. At the age of 82, he died on August 25, 2012.

5- "The International Space Station" (Al Azhar)

The International space Station is a huge spaceship. It is located in space. Astronauts spend about six months on the station. Life on the Station isn't easy as we may think. They don't cook or drink as easy as we do. When we ask any astronaut about the best thing in his or her life, he or she would say "space".

6- "A short story about a visit to the planetarium" (Test)

Last year, I went to the planetarium in Alexandria with my family. I was very excited because I had never seen a planetarium before. We saw a wonderful film about Ancient Egypt. We knew that the Ancient Egyptians predicted when the Nile would flood through stars. They had even used the stars to help them in building the Pyramids. We went to a Mars exhibition after the movie. We had a fantastic experience. We stayed there all morning, but when it was time to go, we hadn't seen everything! I'd like to go there again one day.



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue

Younis is searching for information on the internet.

Tarek : What are you doing, Younis?

Younis : ①

Tarek : ② ?

Younis : I'm searching for information about telescopes.

Tarek : ③ ?

Younis : We use them to see things that are far away.

Tarek : Did you use it before?

Younis : ④

Tarek : Can you show me a photo of a telescope?

Younis : ⑤

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

travelled - satellite - moon - astronauts - travel - space

The International Space Station is the biggest object ever flown in ① It's a large ② going around the Earth where ③ can live and work to study space. It ④ around the Earth at an average speed of 27,700 km/h completing 16 orbits per day.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mars is a cold planet in our solar system. Earth and Jupiter are Mars' neighbouring planets. It is half the size of Earth. Mars is sometimes called the "Red Planet". Like Earth, Mars has weather.

Mars is the fourth planet from the Sun. There are signs of ancient floods on Mars, but now water mostly exists in icy dirt and thin clouds. The scientists have the thought

that Mars was much wetter and warmer, with a thicker atmosphere, billions of years ago. Scientists want to know if Mars may have had living things in the past. They also want to know if Mars could support life now or in the future.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. solar system b. Earth c. Mars d. Jupiter
- Earth is than Mars.
 a. bigger b. smaller c. older d. colder

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

- What is Mars called?

- Summarize the second paragraph in two sentences.

- What do scientists want to know about Mars?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Someone who studies the stars and planets is called a/an
 2022 الفيزياء

- a. astronaut b. spacecraft c. accountant d. astronomer

- The is a network of satellites that helps to show the location of something on Earth.
 Longman

- a. GPS b. solar system c. Cairo tower d. microscope

- Living in a coastal city is very comfortable. The word "comfortable" can be replaced by

- a. relaxing b. tiring c. annoying d. boring

- The verb "research" is turned into a noun for a person by adding the suffix

- a. -ly b. -ness c. -er d. -ion

- If one word with another one, it means that they have a very similar sound.

- a. organises b. arranges c. balances d. rhymes

6. You can't make a phone call because there is no telephone.....

- a. signal b. wireless c. single d. net

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I got to the airport I discovered I (forget) my passport.
2. Has your father (get) a new job?
3. First I cleaned the flat, then I (have) a rest.
4. I wrote a reply to the email as soon as I (have) received it.
5. We have used fossil fuels in cars (in) too long.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A short story about a trip you had last year "to the planetarium" الحيزة 2022

[مجاب عنه قبل اختبار الوحدة]

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- When did you go to the planetarium?
- How did you go there?
- What did you see there?
- Did you enjoy it?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last week, I went
- I went by.....
- I saw all the planets and stars.....
- It was an enjoyable day.....

Module 4

The Modern World

11 UNIT

Media now and in the past

Objectives

Reading:

News stories from different sources; a text about the first female broadcaster; an interview about working in the media

Writing:

A news report; an email asking about working in the media; a biography about a person in the media

Listening:

A discussion about jobs in the media; a radio news report; different opinions about a story in the news; a conversation about a new restaurant

Speaking:

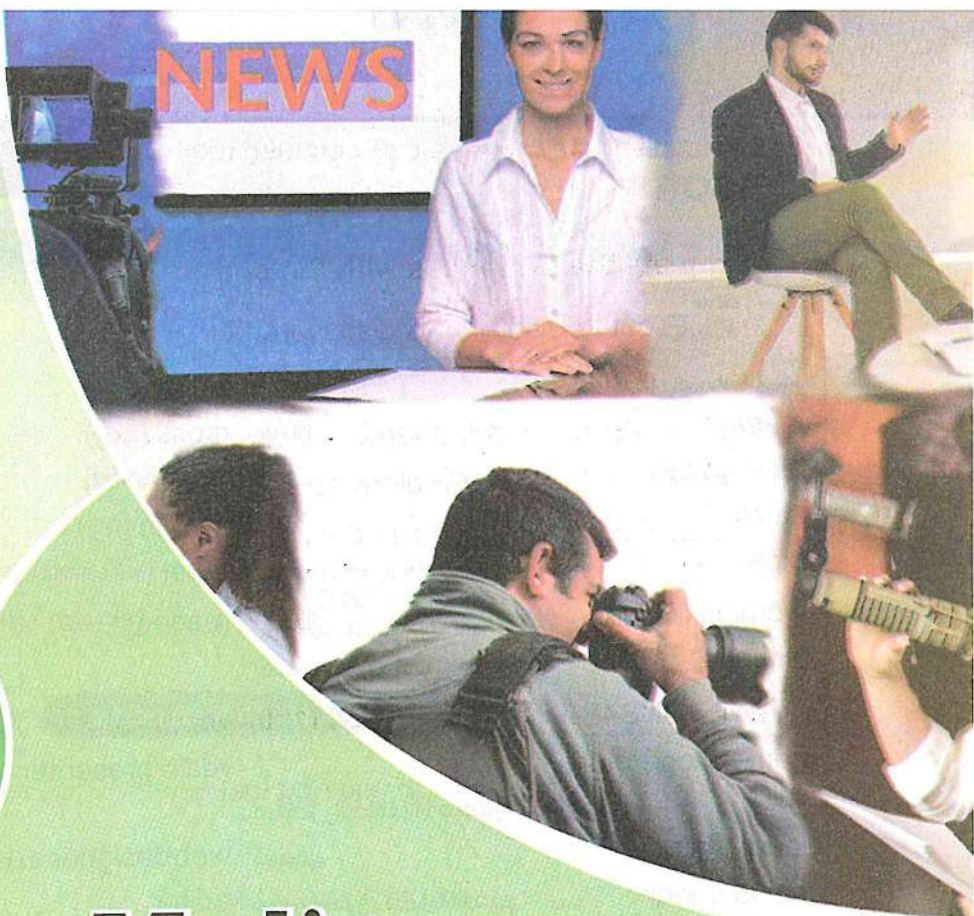
Discussing types of news; describing a picture from the news; reporting news

Language:

Reported speech

Life Skills:

Critical thinking



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



media	وسائل الإعلام / الإعلام	cross (adj)	غاضب - متضايق
businesses	شركات / أعمال تجارية	replace (d)	يُبدل / يستبدل
stuck	عالق	design (ed)	يصمم (شيء)
pipe	أنبوب (ماسورة)	burst (v.burst) (n)	ينكسر - انفجار
warning	تحذير	research (ed) (n)	يقوم بعمل بحث - بحث
witness	شاهد (على حادثة/ جريمة)		

Jobs in the media

camera operator	مشغل الكاميرا (مصور تليفزيوني)	radio presenter	مقدم برامج إذاعية
journalist	صحفي	web designer	مصمم مواقع/صفحات على الانترنت
newsreader	مذيع / قارئ نشرة الأخبار	editor	رئيس التحرير - محرر
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي		



Vocabulary

news programme	برنامج إخباري	article	مقال
news website	موقع إخباري على الإنترنت	politely	بأدب
normally	عادة/ بشكل طبيعي - معتاد	rather than	بدلاً من
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	owner	مالك (المكان - الشيء)
radio show	عرض إذاعي	injure (d)	يصيب / يجرح
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	trust (ed) (n)	يثق - ثقة
local shops	متاجر محلية	flood (ed) (n)	يفيض / يغمر بالمياه - فيضان
shopping centre	مركز تجاري	prefer (red)	يفضل



Definitions

camera operator مشغل الكاميرا (مصور تليفزيوني)	- a person who controls a television camera. - a person whose job is to film (1) things for television, film, etc.	- ا- يصور فيلم
photographer مصور فوتوغرافي	a person whose job is to take photographs.	
journalist صحفي	a person whose job is to write news and articles for newspapers, magazines, websites, etc.	
newsreader مذيع / قارئ نشرة الاخبار	a person whose job is to read the news on TV or radio	

burst ينكسر - ينفجر	break open suddenly, or make something do this
cross غاضب - متضايق	angry or annoyed ⁽²⁾
editor رئيس تحرير - محرر	a person whose job is to choose what should be in a newspaper, magazine, etc. and who checks ⁽³⁾ the information and language
media وسائل الإعلام	newspapers, magazines, radio, television, the internet, and other forms of communication that give news
pipe أنبوب (ماسورة)	a long, thin piece of metal or plastic, used to carry water, gas, etc. often under the ground or through buildings
warning تحذير	something that tells you about something dangerous or bad that might happen
radio presenter مقدم برامج إذاعية	- a person who talks on a radio programme - a person whose job is to introduce programmes on the radio
stuck عالق	not able to be moved
witness شاهد	a person who has seen an accident, crime, etc. and can tell the police about it
business عمل / شركة	a place that makes or sells things or services
web designer مصمم مواقع	a person who decides how a web page should look
presenter مقدم	someone who introduces the different parts of a television or radio show

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
late	متأخر	delayed		early	مبكر
politely	بأدب	kindly		impolitely	بطريقة غير مهذبة
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily		fortunately / luckily	لحسن الحظ
cross	غاضب / متضايق	angry		calm	هادئ
stuck	عالق	trapped		released	متحرر
normally	عادة	usually		unusually	بشكل غير معتاد
interested	مهتم	concerned		uninterested	غير مهتم

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
un-	opposite	unfortunately
im-	المعنى	impolitely
-ist		journalist
-er	person	photographer / designer / presenter
-or	تكون اسم الفاعل	editor / operator / actor
-ing	v → n	warning / shopping
-ly	adj → adv	normally / unfortunately / politely

Expressions & Prepositions

get news	يحصل على الأخبار	in the middle of	في وسط
(be) stuck	عالق (في الطريق من الزحام)	drive on the road	يقود على الطريق
give reasons for	يعطي أسباب لـ ...	on a motorbike	يركب دراجة نارية
control a camera	يتحكم في الكاميرا	at first	أولاً
take away	يعد / يزيل	as quickly as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن
No way!	مستحيل!	break down	يتعطل

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
stick	يلتصق - يعلق	stuck	stuck
burst	ينكسر - يتدفق - ينفجر	burst	burst
hit	يصطدم - يضرب	hit	hit
steal	يسرق	stole	stolen



Language Notes

1) prefer

• prefer + (V + ing) / (n) يفضل

Ex. She prefers (having) black coffee in the morning.

• would prefer + (to + inf) / (n) يفضل أن

Ex. Fatma would prefer (to) work in a radio station.

2) on time / in time

• on time في الموعد المحدد تماماً

Ex. He goes to school **on time**.

• in time في الوقت المناسب

Ex. The doctor arrived **in time** and saved the patient.

3) cross

• cross (v) (ed) يَعبُر

Ex. Be careful before you **cross** this road.

• cross (adj) غاضب - متضايق

Ex. I was **cross** because my friend broke my camera.

4) steal / rob

• steal يسرق
(يأتي بعدها الشيء المسروق)

Ex. The thief **stole** my money.
The thief **robbed** me of my money.
The thief **robbed** the bank.

• rob يسرق
(يأتي بعدها الشخص أو المكان الذي تمت سرقة)

5) Think

• Think يفكر
(يمكن أن تأتي في الأزمنة المستمرة)

Ex. What are you **thinking** about?

• Think يعتقد
(لا يمكن أن تأتي في الأزمنة المستمرة)

Ex. I **think** teachers are very good people.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My mother would prefer _____ me studying at home.
a. to help b. helps c. helping d. to helping
- We should go to the airport _____ time.
a. to b. with c. into d. in
- His parents were _____ when he failed the exam.
a. happy b. cross c. pleased d. ugly
- The police are looking for the man who _____ the company.
a. stole b. gave c. broke d. robbed
- Thieves _____ paintings from the art gallery.
a. crossed b. robbed c. stole d. thought
- I _____ it is important to learn English.
a. am thinking b. was thinking
c. think d. have been thinking



Audioscript

SB Page (7)

استمع إلى المفردات



- Fatma** : What job do you want to do when you are older, Reem? I've been thinking about studying media. I love writing and I'm interested in the news so I think a journalist would be a good job for me.
- Reem** : You'd be amazing at that, Fatma! I think you would be good on the TV as a **newsreader**⁽¹⁾ too!
- Fatma** : **No way**⁽²⁾! I'd **hate**⁽³⁾ to be on TV, I would be so **nervous**⁽⁴⁾.
- Reem** : A **radio presenter**⁽⁵⁾ then? That would be **cool**⁽⁶⁾! I'd like to do that.
- Fatma** : Yes, I'd quite like to have a **radio show**⁽⁷⁾, but I think I'd prefer to work for a newspaper.
- Reem** : Online news is the future I think! No one will buy newspapers in a few years. I'm going to study to be a **web designer**⁽⁸⁾.
- Fatma** : Hmmm, well, maybe I will work for online news then. I'll write the stories and you can design the **website**⁽⁹⁾!
- Reem** : Great! And your brother can be the photographer, he likes taking photos!
- Fatma** : Good idea!

- ١- قارئ الأخبار
- ٢- مستحيل
- ٣- يكره
- ٤- متوتر
- ٥- مقدم برامج إذاعية
- ٦- رائع
- ٧- عرض إذاعي
- ٨- مصمم مواقع على الإنترنت
- ٩- موقع على الإنترنت

SB Page (46)

FLOOD IN CITY CENTRE

Yesterday morning, part of the **city centre**⁽¹⁾ was **under water**⁽²⁾ for more than six hours after a large water pipe **burst**^{(3)*}. The road and all the shops in the **shopping centre**⁽⁴⁾ were closed all day.

A local **witness**⁽⁵⁾ said: "There was a lot of water in the road and the shops. Some people were still trying to drive on the road. I saw a man on a new, blue motorbike who was **stuck**⁽⁶⁾. He was really **cross**⁽⁷⁾."

The water has now gone and the road is open. They will **replace**⁽⁸⁾ the **pipe**⁽⁹⁾ today with a new, strong pipe. Some of the shops are still closed while the owners clean their **businesses**⁽¹⁰⁾.



- ١- وسط البلد
- ٢- غارق في المياه
- ٣- انكسرت - انفجرت
- ٤- مركز تجاري
- ٥- شاهد
- ٦- عالق
- ٧- غاضب / متضايق
- ٨- يستبدل
- ٩- أنبوب / ماسورة
- ١٠- شركات / متاجر



Say it correctly

*burst

ينطق حرف **u** في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق حرف الـ **i** في كلمة bird

SB Page (46)

Newsreader: "Welcome to the lunchtime news. This is Mariam El-Shazly. This morning at around 10 am, a water pipe burst outside the Shabana Supermarket. The road is closed while workers try to **fix**⁽¹⁾ the pipe. Some of the local shops are **flooded**⁽²⁾ and some cars are stuck in the road."

- ١- يصلح
- ٢- تغمرها المياه
- ٣- بأسرع ما يمكن

Police Officer: "An old water pipe in the city centre has burst. People are working to fix it **as quickly as possible**⁽³⁾ and we hope to open the road soon."

SB Page (46)

WARNING! The street outside the shopping centre is closed! There is water everywhere. A big, old red car is stuck in the middle of the road. **DON'T TRY TO GO THERE!**

SB Page (46)

There was a dangerous accident on the road to our school yesterday. A car **hit**⁽¹⁾ a big tree, and the driver was **injured**⁽²⁾. We were stuck and couldn't move. The police arrived quickly and took the **damaged car**⁽³⁾ to the side of the road. **Unfortunately**⁽⁴⁾, we went to school late!

- ١- اصطدمت بـ
- ٢- أصيب
- ٣- السيارة المحطمة
- ٤- لسوء الحظ

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. The person who controls a television camera is a camera WB
 a. operator b. presenter c. reader d. designer
2. A/An 's job is to take photographs. WB
 a. web designer b. witness c. editor d. photographer
3. A is the person whose job is to write news articles for newspapers and magazines. العربية 2022
 a. photographer b. witness c. journalist d. web designer
4. A is a person who reads the news on the radio or in television. دمياط 2023
 a. designer b. newsreader c. photographer d. journalist
5. A person whose job is to introduce programmes on the radio is a
 a. witness b. radio presenter
 c. photographer d. camera operator

6. A _____ is a person who designs websites or pages on websites.
 a. photographer b. journalist c. web designer d. newsreader
7. A/An _____ is a person whose job is to choose what should be in a newspaper, magazine, etc.
 a. operator b. editor c. designer d. witness
8. An old man was the only _____ to the accident. الشرقية 2024
 a. witness b. officer c. weaver d. printer

Synonyms & Antonyms

9. Unfortunately, we lost the final match. The synonym of "Unfortunately" is _____ الدقهلية 2022
 a. luckily b. unhappily c. sadly d. unluckily
10. The antonym of the word "normally" is _____
 a. unusually b. carefully c. lonely d. usually
11. The word _____ is a synonym of the adjective "late".
 a. delayed b. early c. lately d. soon
12. "Politely" is similar in meaning to _____
 a. impolitely b. unluckily c. kindly d. fortunately
13. The antonym of the adjective "stuck" is _____
 a. released b. damaged c. hit d. trapped
14. My mother was cross because I was late for school. "Cross" here can be replaced by "_____". Longman
 a. ready b. easy c. quiet d. angry
15. The opposite of the word "interested" is _____
 a. concerned b. uninterested c. irinterested d. excited

Prefixes & Suffixes

16. To turn the verb "design" into a noun we add the suffix _____. أسوان 2022
 a. -able b. -tian c. -er d. -ive
17. The word "photograph" refers to a person's job by adding the suffix _____.
 a. -ist b. -er c. -or d. -ly
18. The suffix _____ turns the word "journal" into a person's job.
 a. -er b. -ist c. -or d. -ly
19. We add the prefix _____ to the adverb "fortunately" to form the opposite.
 a. un- b. in- c. dis- d. inter-
20. We can change the verb "warn" into a noun by adding the suffix _____.
 a. -ing b. -ist c. -ly d. -ous
21. We add the prefix _____ to the adverb "fortunately" to form the opposite.
 a. un- b. in- c. dis- d. inter-

22. We can change the verb "warn" into a noun by adding the suffix
 a. -ing b. -ist c. -ly d. -ous

Guessing the meaning

23. When a ball or pipe has a hole in it, we say that it has **WB**
 a. preferred b. reported c. started d. burst
24. The sign read "DON'T TRY To GO THERE" This means It is a/an
 a. invention b. invitation c. warning d. wearing
25. My friend is angry. He must be about what I did. **الإسماعيلية 2022**
 a. pleased b. enjoyable c. injured d. cross
26. Omar's job is to read the news on TV. This means he is a/an
 a. newsreader b. journalist c. photographer d. editor
27. My car was not able to move in the heavy traffic. This means it was
 a. stuck b. run c. speedy d. fast
28. Mr Hatim owns a new factory in the city. This means he is the of the factory.
 a. designer b. reader c. presenter d. owner

Remember: The past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

التصريف الثاني للفعل + فاعل

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل المنتظم أى يضاف له **d / ed / ied**
 الأفعال الغير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي

go → went break → broke

Ex. Noha **arrived** at school late yesterday.

Ex. We **went** home at ten o'clock last night.

Negative النفي

فاعل + **didn't** + inf.

لنفي نستخدم:

Ex. I **didn't go** to work yesterday.

Question السؤال

Did + فاعل + inf. ?

Ex. Did they **visit** the Pyramids?

- Yes, they **did**.

- No, they **didn't**.

للإجابة نقول:

did + فاعل + inf. ? كلمة الاستفهام

السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Ex. How **did** you **go** to school yesterday?

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن شيء حدث في الماضي وانتهى.

Ex. Ahmed **broke** his arm last summer. Now he is in good health.

• يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادة تكررت في الماضي.

Ex. When I **had** a problem, I always **talked** (used to talk) to my parents.

• لاحظ: يمكن استخدام **used to + inf.** للتعبير عن العادات مع زمن الماضي البسيط.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	in (2010)	in the past	ago
last (night / week / month / year)		one (day - week)	once

Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Was there an accident yesterday? Yes, there (be). SB
2. (Do) the car hit the child yesterday? SB
3. Did the police (took) the damaged car? SB
4. The actor (wear) expensive sunglasses in yesterday's show. WB
5. We were stuck because the bus (break) down in the middle of the street. WB
6. When I was young, I always (talk) to my teachers politely. WB
7. The government (build) a new bridge in our town last year.
8. Mother (buy) a new dress for my little sister yesterday.

شمال سيناء 2022

أبناؤنا في الخارج 2022

Longman Exercises

9. When my father was young, he usually (walks) to school.
10. Did you (found) your mobile?
11. I (watched) the film with my friends because I was busy studying.
12. Why (don't) you come to school yesterday?
13. I (didn't show) the way to the museum, so I couldn't go there.

Longman



Bit by Bit Exercises

14. I (go) to visit my cousins last night.
15. Did you (sent) the letter yesterday?

16. (Are) there any injured people in the accident last week?
 17. Your father (drive) his car to Alexandria last week.
 18. They (paint) their house yesterday.
 19. A: (Be) there water on the road? B: No, there wasn't.
 20. Tamer (do) the homework alone last night.
 21. He (use) to go swimming when he was young.
 22. I (don't) have a bike when I was a child.
 23. Why did you (came) home late yesterday?
 24. I (do) my homework, so my teacher was angry.
 25. I (make) sure the information is true. Then, I forwarded it.
 26. Yasser made a bad mistake, so he (punish).
 27. This morning, I (talk) to my best friend. She was sick.



Speaking

1) Discussing work and types of jobs in the media.

مناقشة عن العمل وأنواع الوظائف في وسائل الإعلام

Question

- Would you like to work in the media? Why?

- هل ترغب في العمل في وسائل الإعلام؟ لماذا؟

- Which jobs would you like to do in the media? Why?

- أي الوظائف تريد العمل بها في وسائل الإعلام؟ لماذا؟

- Which jobs wouldn't you like to do in the media? Why?

- أي الوظائف لا تريد العمل بها في وسائل الإعلام؟ لماذا؟

Answer

- Yes, I would like to work in the media because I want to know more people.

- نعم، أريد العمل في وسائل الإعلام لأنني أريد في معرفته المزيد من الناس.

- I would like to work as a journalist because I want to write about different things in life.

- أريد في العمل كصحفي لأنني أريد أن أكتب عن أشياء عديدة في الحياة.

- I wouldn't like to work as a camera operator. This won't let me meet and talk to different kinds of people.

- لا أريد في العمل كمشغل كاميرا لأن ذلك لن يسمح لي بمقابلة الناس والتحدث إلى العديد منهم.

2 Reporting an accident

الإخبار عن حادث

A: Was there an accident yesterday?

هل كان هناك حادث بالأمس؟

B: Yes, there was.

نعم كان هناك حادث.

A: What happened?

ما الذي حدث؟

B: A car was about to hit a child, but it hit a big tree.

كانت هناك سيارة على وشك ان تصدم طفل ولكنها اصطدمت بشجرة كبيرة.

A: Did the police arrive quickly?

هل وصل رجال الشرطة سريعاً؟

B: Yes, they did.

نعم، لقد فعلوا ذلك.

A: What did the police do?

ماذا فعل رجال الشرطة؟

B: They took the damaged car to the side of the road.

قاموا بأخذ السيارة المتضررة إلى جانب الطريق.

A: Did you go to school on time?

هل ذهبتم إلى المدرسة في الموعد المحدد؟

B: Unfortunately, we went to school late! لسوء الحظ، ذهبنا إلى المدرسة متأخرين!

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Jana and Malak are talking about their dream jobs.

Jana : What job do you want to do when you are older?

Malak : ①

Jana : I think you would be amazing as a journalist.

Malak : So, I am thinking about studying media.

Jana : You will be good on TV as a newsreader.

Malak : ②

Jana : I see. You don't prefer to be on TV. You like to work for an online newspaper.

Malak : ③

Jana : I'd like to be a web designer.

Malak : Great! I'll write the stories and you will design the sites.

Jana : ④

Malak : Your brother can be the photographer.

Jana : ⑤

Malak : I like this idea, too. We'll be famous.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

tried - on - late - yesterday - try - early - tomorrow

I always go to school ① time, but ② was an unusual day. Some robbers ③ to rob a bank in the city centre. Someone called the police and they arrived quickly. At the bank, they caught three persons. When we realised we were ④ , we ran to our school.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An decides on the final content of a newspaper, magazine, etc. Longman
a. newsreader b. news presenter c. editor d. newspaper seller
2. A plans, creates and codes internet sites and web pages. Longman
a. web designer b. photographer c. camera operator d. reader
3. The antonym of the adjective "cross" is
a. anxious b. annoyed c. angry d. calm
4. The clothes shop was open. "open" here is a/an
a. adverb b. noun c. verb d. adjective
5. The police want to talk to the person who saw the accident last night. This means they want to talk to the
a. designer b. businessman c. researcher d. witness
6. A person writes news and articles for newspapers, magazines and websites. This means he is a/an
a. journalist b. newsreader c. editor d. photographer

الأقصر 2023

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

WB

1. Marwa's father (buy) a big motorbike last week.
2. Who (break) this window?
3. (Are) there any books on that desk yesterday?
4. A water pipe burst so all the shops (be) closed all day.
5. A: Why (do) you come to the club two days ago? B: Because I was ill.



5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story about a flood in the city centre"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

- يمكن من خلال الإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What is the short story about?
- What happened? Where did it happen?
- When did it happen?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- Yesterday, I was on my way to
- There was.....
- It happened in.....
- In the end,

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



governor	حاكم / محافظ	female voice	صوت نسائي
career	حياة مهنية	linguist	متخصص في اللغويات / عالم لغويات
award	جائزة	early life	في بداية حياة...
tourism	السياحة	presenter	مذيع / مقدم (برامج)
broadcasting	بث اذاعي / تليفزيوني	graduate (d)	يتخرج في (جامعة)
broadcaster	مذيع	retire (d)	يتقاعد عن العمل



Vocabulary

water park	ملاهي مائية	news reporter	مراسل أخبار
tournament	دورة (رياضية)	cultural	ثقافي
poet	شاعر	guardian	حارس / وصي
poetry	الشعر	head	رئيس
novel	رواية	elementary school	مدرسة ابتدائي
literature	الأدب	encourage (d)	يشجع
Faculty of Arts	كلية الآداب	specialise (d)	يتخصص (في مجال)
housewives	ربات البيوت	present (ed)	يقدم (برنامج)
educational	تعليمي	explain (ed)	يشرح
drama	دراما		



Definitions

broadcast	يبث	to send a programme or some information by radio or TV	١- عرض اذاعي ٢- اجنبي
broadcasting	بث	- the business of making television or radio programmes	٣- يتخصص ٤- علم اللغويات
presenter	مقدم برامج	- someone who introduces the different parts of a television or radio show ⁽¹⁾ - a person who presents a programme on the radio or TV	
linguist	متخصص في اللغويات / عالم لغويات	- someone who studies foreign ⁽²⁾ languages or can speak them well - a person who specialises ⁽³⁾ in languages - someone who teaches or studies linguistics ⁽⁴⁾	
voice	صوت بشري	- the sounds that you make when you speak or sing - sound produced by a person when they speak	
retire	يتقاعد	to leave a job or stop working because of old age	
governor	حاكم / محافظ	the person who rules a city or an area	

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	تعطى عكس المعنى
female	أنثى	feminine / woman		male	ذكر
well-known	معروف / مشهور	famous		unknown	غير معروف
local	محلي	national		international	عالمي
governor	حاكم / محافظ	ruler			
noisy	صاخب	loud		quiet / calm	هادئ
special	خاص / مميز	unusual		usual	عادي
encourage	يشجع	support		discourage	لا يشجع / يثبط / يحبط

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
en-	n → v	تحول الاسم إلى فعل
-y		يشجع encourage صاخب noisy
-al	n → adj	تحول الاسم إلى الصفة
-ian		educational / cultural تعليمي/ثقافي
-ist	person	تكون اسم الفاعل
-er		guardian حارس/وصي linguist عالم لغويات broadcaster / reporter مذيع / مراسل
-or		governor حاكم
-ism	v → n	السياحة tourism
-ing		بث اذاعي/تلفزيوني broadcasting
-ise	adj → v	يتخصص specialise

Expressions & Prepositions

study online	يدرس عبر الإنترنت	kind to	عطوف مع
(be) head of	يعمل "كرئيس لـ..."	helpful to	متعاون مع
on fire	مشتعل	on the internet	على الإنترنت
bring more tourism	يجلب المزيد من السياحة	specialise in	يتخصص في
(be) getting busy	يزداد ازدحاماً	for free	بالمجان
look forward to + v-ing / noun	يتطلع إلى	for this reason	لهذا السبب

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

build	يبنى
bring	يجلب / يُحضّر

Past simple

built
brought

Past Participle

built
brought



Language Notes

① the more / adj + er → the better

يستخدم الأسلوب السابق بمعنى كلما كان كان أفضل

Ex. The more tourism, the better for our country.

② stop

• stop to + inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء آخر

Ex. While she was running, she stopped to drink some water.

• stop + v.ing يتوقف عن فعل شيء

Ex. Please, stop playing in the street, Tamer.

③ voice / sound

• voice صوت بشري

Ex. Please, raise your voice, I can't hear you.

• sound صوت شيء

Ex. Please, turn down the TV sound, it's too loud.

④ career / job

• career حياة مهنية (اسم يُعد)

Ex. My father had a successful career in teaching.

• job وظيفة - مهمة (اسم يُعد)

Ex. Ali has got a job at a bank recently.

Ex. Housewives have many jobs to do at home.

⑤ award/ reward

• award جائزة رسمية من جهة رسمية

Ex. She won an award for winning the competition.

• reward مكافأة تشجيعية (غير رسمية)

Ex. My parents gave me a reward for passing the exams.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The doctor told him that he should stop.....
a. smoke b. smokes c. to smoke d. smoking
- The you do sport, the better for your health.
a. more b. much c. less d. little
- Ali always speaks to us in a loud
a. sound b. ring c. voice d. mouth
- He has spent most of his as a journalist.
a. career b. holiday c. space d. tourism
- You deserve a/an for being so helpful.
a. award b. money c. fire d. reward



Audioscript

SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص



News reporter⁽¹⁾: This is the 12 o'clock news. Today a new **water park⁽²⁾** opened in Sharm El Sheikh. The **governor⁽³⁾** of the town said the park was the biggest in Egypt and would be great for **tourism⁽⁴⁾** in the area. The **owner⁽⁵⁾** of the new park **explained⁽⁶⁾** that there would be over one hundred new jobs for people at the park. The park has restaurants and the owner is going to build a new hotel next year. The owner also told us that the park had taken over three years to build. The first fifty visitors today can go to the water park **for free⁽⁷⁾**.



- ١- مراسل الاخبار
- ٢- ملاهى مائية
- ٣- حاكم/ محافظ
- ٤- السياحة
- ٥- مالك
- ٦- وضع/ شرح
- ٧- بالمجان

SB Page (49)

Narrator : Maged

Journalist : What do you think about the new water park, Maged?

Man : I think it's great! I've got a new job working in one of the restaurants and I'm **looking forward to⁽¹⁾** visiting the park with my friends.

Narrator : Heba

Journalist : What do you think about the new water park, Heba?

Woman : Well, I'm happy now they've finished because there has been a lot of building and it has been **noisy⁽²⁾**!

Narrator : Nadia

Journalist : What do you think about the new water park, Nadia?

Woman : We need more jobs and visitors to the area. I have a shop in the town and so the more tourism, the better! It looks cool, too.

Narrator : Kareem

Journalist : What do you think about the new water park, Kareem?

Man : I don't know. I'm not sure that we need more water parks. It's **getting very busy⁽³⁾** around this area. But more jobs will be a good thing, we need them for the **young people⁽⁴⁾** here.

- ١- يتطلع الى
- ٢- صاخب
- ٣- يزداد ازدحاماً
- ٤- الشباب

"I want to go to the new water park," said Lama.

"I went there last week," said Malak.

"I haven't been yet," said Hanan.

"I'm going with my family on Saturday," said Dina.

"Aya won't go because she doesn't like water parks!" said Inju



Reading

SB page (50)

The Mother of All Broadcasters⁽¹⁾

Egyptian **radio broadcasting**⁽²⁾ started in 1934. It was the first broadcast in Africa and in the whole Arab world. Safia el Mohandes was the first **female voice**⁽³⁾ on the radio.

Safia was born in 1922 in Cairo. Her father was a famous **linguist**⁽⁴⁾. He **encouraged**⁽⁵⁾ Safia to read Arabic books and novels. Safia also studied English **literature**⁽⁶⁾ at the university and **graduated**⁽⁷⁾ from the **Faculty of Arts**⁽⁸⁾ in 1945.

In 1947, Safia **joined**⁽⁹⁾ the Egyptian radio, and she was the first female radio **presenter**⁽¹⁰⁾. Safia presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme '**Housewives**'⁽¹¹⁾, presented news, **educational**⁽¹²⁾ advice and drama for the whole Egyptian family.

Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She helped everyone, and so she was called the 'mother of all broadcasters'. Safia was head of the radio broadcasting from 1975 until she **retired**⁽¹³⁾ in 1982.



- ١- مذيعون
- ٢- بث اذاعي
- ٣- صوت نسائي
- ٤- متخصص في اللغويات
- ٥- شجع
- ٦- الأدب
- ٧- تخرج
- ٨- كلية الاداب
- ٩- يلتحق بـ
- ١٠- مقدم برامج
- ١١- ربات البيوت
- ١٢- تعليمي
- ١٣- تقاعدت

WB Page (103)

Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous **poet**⁽¹⁾.

Early life⁽²⁾

Shousha was born in Damietta in 1936. He went to a nearby **elementary school**⁽³⁾. He went to the local library at a very **early age**⁽⁴⁾, and was able to read many books in the Arabic language. Later on, Shousha went to Cairo University and graduated from the **Faculty of Dar al-Ulum**⁽⁵⁾ in 1956.

Career⁽⁶⁾

Shousha worked as a radio presenter in 1958 and later on as a TV presenter too. He always liked **poetry**⁽⁷⁾ and **Arabic literature**⁽⁸⁾. He presented many programmes like "**Our Beautiful Language**"⁽⁹⁾ on the radio, and "**Cultural Evening**"⁽¹⁰⁾.



- ١- شاعر
- ٢- بداية حياته
- ٣- مدرسة ابتدائي
- ٤- سن مبكرة
- ٥- كلية دار العلوم
- ٦- الحياة المهنية
- ٧- الشعر
- ٨- الادب العربي
- ٩- لغتنا الجميلة
- ١٠- أمسية ثقافية

Awards⁽¹¹⁾

II- الجوائز
II- وصي / حارس

In his programmes, Shousha always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, he was called 'the **guardian**⁽¹²⁾ of the Arabic language'. He won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016.

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابات أسفل)

- The text mainly talks about an Egyptian -----
a. scientist b. sports star c. actor d. poet
- Farouk Shousha won the Nile Prize for Literature at the age of -----
a. thirty six b. sixteen c. eighty d. sixty
- People, who graduate from Dar al-Ulum, are usually good at -----
a. English b. Arabic c. programming d. French

Writing Skill [جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي]

- Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet.
فاروق شوشة مذيع إذاعي (راديو) معروف وشاعر مشهور.
- Farouk Shousha was born in Damietta in 1936.
ولد فاروق شوشة في دمياط في عام ١٩٣٦.
- He graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum in 1956.
تخرج من كلية دار العلوم في عام ١٩٥٦.
- He was called 'the guardian of the Arabic language'.
كان يُلقب بـ "حارس اللغة العربية".

3. Arabic

2. eighty

1. poet

Answers

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- A ----- is a person who specialises in languages. WB دمياط 2022
a. linguist b. presenter c. broadcaster d. poet
- To ----- means to leave a job or stop working because of old age WB
a. graduate b. broadcast c. retire d. encourage
- To ----- is to send a programme or some information by radio or TV. WB
a. broadcast b. replace c. own d. explain
- A/An ----- is a person who presents a programme on the radio or TV. WB
a. researcher b. editor c. presenter d. linguist
- is the sound produced by a person when he speaks. WB الجزيرة 2023
a. Voice b. Playing c. Running d. Vibration
- A/An ----- is the person who rules a city or an area.
a. governor b. player c. journalist d. broadcaster
- is the business of making television or radio programmes.
a. Retiring b. Graduating c. Broadcasting d. Recycling

Synonyms & Antonyms

8. He is the governor of the city. "Governor" is similar in meaning to

القاهرة 2022

- a. ruler b. worker c. helper d. assistant

9. Farouk Shousha is a well-known poet. The synonym of "well-known" is

- a. pleased b. helpful c. interested d. famous

10. She was the first female voice on the radio. The antonym of "female" is

- a. feminine b. male c. kid d. adult

11. My father was the head of the radio broadcasting until he retired in 1980.

"Retired" means working.

- a. stopped b. began c. continued d. kept

12. The synonym of the word "noisy" is

- a. loud b. cruel c. calm d. good

13. The antonym of "special" is

- a. kind b. usual c. nice d. unusual

14. The antonym of the adjective "local" is

- a. near b. large c. close d. international

Prefixes & Suffixes

15. We add the suffix to get the noun of the word "govern".

القليوبية 2022

- a. -y b. -er c. -or d. -ing

16. The government is greatly interested in education. We can change "education" into an adjective when we add the suffix ".....".

Longman

- a. -al b. -ful c. -ive d. -ist

17. The verb "present" is turned into a noun by adding the suffix

- a. -im b. -er c. -or d. -ir

18. We get the verb from "courage" by adding the prefix

- a. en- b. re- c. im- d. di-

19. We add the suffix to the word "guard" to refer to "person".

- a. -ist b. -er c. -ian d. -or

Guessing the meaning

20. He spent all his life studying languages. This means that he is a

- a. linguist b. graduate c. governor d. poet

21. Salma has just got a degree from the university. This means that she has just

- a. worked b. explained c. failed d. graduated

22. We must encourage tourists to visit Egypt. This means we must encourage

- a. recycling b. broadcasting c. tourism d. graduation

23. Shousha won the Nile Prize for literature in 2016. This means he got a/an

- a. reward b. award c. cup d. trophy

24. The main attraction at the park is a really tall water slides.

- a. theme b. water c. garden d. cat



Grammar

1- Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech الكلام المباشر وغير المباشر

الكلام المباشر (Direct speech) هو الكلام الفعلي الذي قاله الشخص ويأتي بين علامات تنصيص "....".
الكلام غير المباشر (Indirect speech) هو نفس كلام الشخص لكنه منقول على لسان شخص آخر ويكتب بدون علامات تنصيص.

Ex. Kamal said, "I come from Egypt."

قارن الآتي

Ex. Kamal said that he came from Egypt.

Notes

في الجملة الأولى هذا كلام الشخص وعلى لسانه فاستخدمنا ضمير المتكلم ونفس الزمن الذي استخدمه المتكلم داخل علامات تنصيص وهذا هو الكلام المباشر.
 أما في الجملة الثانية حذفنا علامات التنصيص وغيرنا الضمير والزمن وهذا هو الكلام غير المباشر.

2- Reported statement الجملة الخبرية

① ② ③
 مفعول / صفة / حال + فعل + فاعل

• تتكون الجملة الخبرية من

خطوات التحويل

• فعل القول في الكلام المباشر يأتي إما قبل الكلام أو بعده لكن عند التحويل إلى الكلام غير المباشر يأتي قبل الكلام.

Ex. Sherif said, "I'm happy to see you."

(Direct)

= "I'm happy to see you," said Sherif.

- Sherif said that he was happy to see me.

(Indirect)

١- يحول فعل القول عادةً كما يلي:

say	→	say	says	→	says	said	→	said
say to	→	tell	says to	→	tells	said to	→	told

• الفعل said لا يأتي بعده مفعول لكن الفعل told لابد أن يأتي بعده مفعول.

٢- نحذف علامات التنصيص ونربط ب (that) ويمكن حذفها.

٣- نقوم بتحويل الضمائر في الجملة بما يتفق مع المعنى عند نقل الكلام - وفي أغلب الأحوال يتم تحويل الضمائر التالية كما يلي:

Direct	Indirect
I →	he / she / I
you →	I / we
we →	they / we

Direct	Indirect
me →	him / her / me
you →	me / us / you
us →	them / us

Direct	Indirect
my →	his / her
your →	my / our
our →	their

٤- يتم تحويل ظروف الزمان والمكان وأسماء الإشارة في الجملة غير المباشرة كما يلي:

Direct speech	Indirect speech
this / these →	that / those
here →	there
now →	then
today / tonight →	that day / that night
tomorrow →	the following day / the next day
next (week) →	the (next) following (week)
yesterday →	the day before / the previous day
last (week) →	the (week) before / the previous (week)
ago →	before

٥- يتم تحويل الأزمنة إلى الماضي كما يلي:

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present simple مضارع بسيط (s/es/ies) + فعل / مصدر الفعل	Past simple ماضى بسيط التصريف الثاني للفعل
Ex. "I need to fix this machine," said Magdy.	Magdy said that he needed to fix that machine.
Past simple ماضى بسيط التصريف الثاني للفعل	Past perfect ماضى تام (had + p.p)
Ex. Reda said, "I did well in my test."	Reda said that he had done well in his test.



- لاحظ تغيير (was - were) إلى الماضى التام past perfect :

was / were → had been

Ex. Samir said, "I **was** late."

- Samir said that he **had been** late.

Present continuous مضارع مستمر
am / is / are + v-ing

Ex. "I **am cleaning** my room," Nour said.

Past continuous ماضى مستمر
was / were + v-ing

Nour said that he **was cleaning** his room.

Present perfect مضارع تام
have / has + p.p

Ex. Mustafa said to me, "I **have taken** a new photo."

Past perfect ماضى تام
had + p.p

» Mustafa told me that he **had taken** a new photo.

Modals مع الأفعال الناقصة

will / can + inf. → would / could + inf.

Ex. Mervat said, "I **will watch** the film tonight."

» Mervat said that she **would watch** the film **that** night.

Future with (am, is, are) going to + inf. → (was / were) going to + inf.

Ex. Mai said, "I **'m going to buy** a new dress."

» Mai said that she **was going to buy** a new dress.

Notes

• يظل الفعل والظرف في جملة غير المباشر كما هما دون تغيير وذلك في الحالات الآتية:

1- إذا كان فعل القول مضارع say / says / tell / tells

Ex. Medhat says, "I **get** a headache when I read a lot."

= Medhat **says** (that) he **gets** a headache when he **reads** a lot.

2- إذا كانت الجملة غير المباشرة تدل على حقيقة أو ظاهرة طبيعية ثابتة (أو من الممكن أن تحول).

Ex. "I **have** a shop in the city centre," Mohsen said.

= Mohsen said (that) he **has / had** a shop in the city centre.

3- إذا كان في الجملة ما يدل على أن الكلام قيل منذ فترة بسيطة جدًا، أو تحتوي على إحدى التعبيرات الآتية:

have - has just said / said a minute ago

Ex. Samy **has just said**, "I'm happy."

= Samy **has just said** (that) he **is** happy.

4- في حالة عدم تحويل الظرف الزمني (الدال على المستقبل) يجوز تحويل الزمن أو الإبقاء عليه.

Ex. The owner explained that there **would be** over 100 new jobs **next year**.

SB

- Samir told me that he **is going to** travel to London **next Friday**. WB117

- Amr told me that he (travel) abroad the next week. القاهرة 2022

- وردت هذه الجملة في امتحان محافظة القاهرة ٢٠٢٢، ورغم وجود (the next week) إلا أن الجملة ستتحول إلى كلام غير مباشر ويصبح الفعل (travel) → (would travel)

Answer : Amr told me that he **would travel** abroad the next week.

- وكذلك يمكن أن تكون الإجابة **will travel / is travelling**.


Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets

SB, WB & Exams

1. She _____ (told) that she was happy that they had finished. **SB**
2. The police said that lots of mobile phones _____ (have) been stolen that year. **SB**
3. Kareem said that more jobs _____ (will) be a good thing. **SB**
4. Nadia said that she _____ (has) a shop in town. **SB**
5. The teacher said that _____ (these) books were very interesting. **WB**
6. "The red team _____ (win) the match yesterday," said Tarek. **WB**
7. Mona said she _____ (be) tired that day. **الجيزة 2023**
8. Shereen said that she _____ (didn't watch) the film the day before. **القليوبية 2022**
9. Sally _____ (told) Samira, "I will go to Cairo tomorrow." **البحيرة 2022**
10. Samir _____ (said) me that he would travel to London the following week. **دمياط 2022**
11. Sama told Mona she didn't feel better _____ (now). **الشرقية 2024**
12. The owner explained that there _____ (will) be over 100 new jobs. **إسماعيلية 2023**

Longman Exercises

13. My father _____ (said to) us that he had bought a new mobile.
14. Sherif told me that _____ (him) was doing his work, so he couldn't go to the club with me.
15. I said to Mandi, "I _____ (had) just finished my work."
16. Walid said that he _____ (can't) go to school because he was ill.
17. Basma told me that she wouldn't go to her village the _____ (last) weekend.
18. Sami said that they _____ (don't go) to the park the week before.
19. Hamza told me _____ (this) he had visited his uncle in the village.
20. "I _____ (was doing) my homework now," said Taher
21. My brother said that the car _____ (is) ready for the trip because a lot of things needed to be fixed.
22. Dalia told us that she _____ (prepares) lunch then. 

Bit by Bit Exercises

23. Mr Ahmed told us he _____ (see) the manager tomorrow.
24. "The building is on fire!" _____ (told) a witness.

25. Mona told me that she (visit) the museum yesterday.
26. The governor said that the park (be) the biggest in Egypt.
27. The witness said that the accident (happen) near the park.
28. Ashraquat (told) she had bought a new car.
29. Amir said to Ali, "I (was preparing) for the school trip now."
30. Ashraf said that his father took (he) to the zoo.
31. Hanan said she (finish) work the night before.
32. Khaled said that he (travel) to Luxor the following month.
33. The man told us the football tournament (will start) the next day.
34. Ptolemy said that the sun (orbit) the Earth.
35. Mr. Ahmed has just said he (be) going to retire.



Speaking

1 Asking and giving opinions

السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء:

Question

- What do you think about studying online?
ما رأيك في الدراسة عبر الانترنت؟
- What do you think about doing sport?
ما رأيك في ممارسة الرياضة؟

Answer

- I like it because it saves time.
- أحبها لأنها توفر الوقت.
- I don't like it because I can't discuss things with my friends.
- أنا لا أحب هذا النوع من الدراسة لأنها لا تتيح لي الفرصة لمناقشة الأشياء مع أصدقائي.
- I think it is good for our health.
- أعتقد أنها مفيدة لصحتنا.

2 Asking and answering questions about radio broadcasting:

السؤال والاجابة عن البث الاذاعي :

Question

- Was radio broadcasting very important in the last century? Why?
- هل كان البث الاذاعي له اهمية كبيرة في القرن الماضي؟ لماذا؟

Answer

- Yes, it was very important as it helped us learn and know many things.
- نعم، كان مهم جداً لأنه ساعدنا في تعلم ومعرفة أشياء عديدة.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3& 4



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Atef is talking to a tourist about his visit to Egypt.

Atef : Hello.

Tourist : Hello.

Atef : Is it your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : ① I came here with my wife before.

Atef : ② ?

Tourist : I come from Ireland.

Atef : ③ ?

Tourist : I will stay in Egypt for two weeks.

Atef : What cities are you going to visit?

Tourist : ④

Atef : I wish you an enjoyable visit.

Tourist : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

family - cinema - governor - said - told - park

Yesterday, I talked to my best friends. We were talking about a new water
 ① in our city. Nahla ② that she wanted to go to the new water
 park and she liked to go there with her ③ Hanan told us that the
 ④ had opened it the previous day. Dina said that she was going to go there
 with her family on the following Saturday.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a person whose job it is to understand, describe, and analyse a language.

Longman

- a. engineer b. discoverer c. foreigner d. linguist

2. is the sound produced by a person when they speak.

WB

- a. Literature b. Voice c. Hearing d. Tourism

3. The word "famous" is similar in meaning to

2022 الأقصر

- a. private b. special c. unknown d. well-known

4. I saw wonderful places during my tour in Cairo. To change "tour" into a noun that expresses a source of national income, we add the suffix "_____". Longman
 a. -ist b. -ism c. -er d. -tion
5. In Egypt, the people working in government places usually _____ at the age of sixty. Longman
 a. refuse b. resign c. start d. retire
6. A university student _____ when he / she passes the final exams. Longman
 a. qualifies b. graduates c. leaves d. stops

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The owner told us that the park _____ (has) taken over three years to build. SB
2. Manal _____ (said) me, "I have seen this movie." الشرفية 2023
3. Yasser said that he _____ (is meeting) his close friends. Longman
4. Mesk said that she _____ (be) to a water park get.
5. Aya _____ (said to) Hala she was ill.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of a person you like who was working in the media"

كفر الشيخ 2022
 (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع :

- When and where was he /she born?
- What university did he / she graduate from?
- What did he / she talk about in his programme?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- He / She was born in.....
- He / She graduated from.....
- He / She presented.....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51-53 WB pages 104-106

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



festival	مهرجان	according to (prep.)	طبقاً لـ
apparently	على ما يبدو/بوضوح	serve (d)	يقدم (طعام)
interview	مقابلة شخصية	report (ed) (n)	يقدم تقرير - تقرير
meeting	اجتماع / لقاء		



Vocabulary

teenager	مراهق	traditional	تقليدي
volunteer	متطوع	national news	أخبار محلية
spelling mistake	خطأ إملائي	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
path	مسار / طريق	sports star	نجم رياضي
climber	متسلق	opening	افتتاح
facts	حقائق	celebrate (d)	يحتفل
hole	ثقب - حفرة	film (ed) (n)	يُصوّر فيلم - فيلم
unable	غير قادر	pull (ed)	يجر - يسحب
garage	جراج (ورشة سيارات)	respond (ed) (n)	يرد - رد
businessmen	رجال أعمال		



Definitions

apparently	على ما يبدو/بوضوح	according to what you have heard is true	١- يحتفل ٢- موقف
festival	مهرجان	a day or time for people to celebrate ⁽¹⁾ something	
meeting	اجتماع	a situation ⁽²⁾ when groups of people meet to discuss something	
according to	طبقاً لـ	as said by someone or as shown by something	
normal	عادي / طبيعي	usual, not different	

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد/العكس
wonderful	رائع	amazing		terrible	سئ
the nearest	الأقرب	the closest		the farthest	الأبعد
expensive	غالي الثمن	pricey		cheap / inexpensive	رخيص

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
un-	opposite تعطي عكس المعنى	un fortunately / un able لسوء الحظ / غير قادر
ab-		ab normal غير طبيعي
-er	person تكون اسم الفاعل	teenage er / climbe er مراهق / متسلق
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة الى الحال	norma ly / apparen ly / fina ly / probab ly بشكل طبيعي / بوضوح / اخيرا / من المحتمل
-al	n → adj تحول الاسم الى الصفة	national / traditio al قومي / تقليدي
-ing	v → n تحول الفعل الى اسم	meet ing / spell ing اجتماع / هجاء

Expressions & Prepositions

make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	give warning	يُحذر
have a meeting	يعقد اجتماع / لقاء	make it easy to	يجعل الأمر سهل لكى
have a picnic	يذهب فى نزهة	hear about	يسمع عن
have a festival	يقيم مهرجان	find out about	يعرف عن
do an interview	يجرى مقابلة / حوار	for a while	لبرهة من الوقت
normal for me	عادى بالنسبة لى	by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ
serve food	يقدم طعام	on the news	فى الأخبار
get lost	يضل الطريق	report on	يقدم تقرير عن

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
spend	يقضى (وقت) / ينفق (مال)	spent	spent
tell	يخبر	told	told



Language Notes

1) spend

- spend + time + (v.ing)

يقضى وقت فى

Ex. Shereen **spent** the last week **preparing** for the mid-year exam.

- spend + money + on + (v.ing / noun)

ينفق اموال على

Ex. Young children always **spend** a lot of money **on** candy.

2) good (at / for / to)

• good at (v - ing / n) جيد في

Ex. Osman is **good at** English.

• good to حسن المعاملة مع

Ex. We should be **good to** our parents.

• good for مفيد لـ

Ex. Milk is very **good for** our health.

3) decide (to / on / that)

• decide to + inf. يقرر أن

Ex. They **decided to go** on holiday to Luxor.

• decide on + (noun) يستقر على "رأى / قرار" - يختار

Ex. Karim has **decided on** a date for his wedding.

• decided (that + (جملة) subject + verb) يقرر أن يفعل

Ex. The school **decided that** they should build new classrooms.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hala spends much time video games.
a. to play b. plays c. playing d. play
- My younger brother is good using the internet.
a. to b. on c. for d. at
- She decided her bedroom pink.
a. paint b. painting c. to paint d. that paint
- He's very his mother.
a. good to b. good at c. good in d. good on



Audioscript

SB Page (51)

استمع إلى المفردات



Adel : Fawzi, did you know that they are having a new **food festival**⁽¹⁾ next month in our village.

Fawzi : Really? That's good. Why are they having it?

Adel : **According to**⁽²⁾ the newspaper, it is to **celebrate**⁽³⁾ the **opening**⁽⁴⁾ of a new restaurant. It's opening next to the water tower.

Fawzi : That's good news.

Adel : Have you heard that they think more tourists will visit the village, too?



١- مهرجان طعام

٢- طبقاً لـ / وفقاً لـ

٣- يحتفل

٤- افتتاح

Fawzi : Yes, tourists like visiting **traditional⁽⁵⁾** villages like ours. What type of restaurant will it be?

Wael : **Apparently⁽⁶⁾**, it's going to be a modern Egyptian restaurant.

Adel : Wow, it'll probably be expensive. But we should go to the food festival.

Fawzi : Yes, all our friends want to go, too.

Wael : I heard that you need to buy a ticket. I'll find out how much it is.

Fawzi : Good idea.

ه- تقليدي
٦- على ما يبدو

SB Page (52)

Shaimaa's Interview

1- What is a normal working day like?

I start my day early. We have a **meeting⁽¹⁾** at 8 am and we decide which new stories we will put on the news that day. After that, I **normally⁽²⁾** spend a long time on the internet and talk to people on the phone. Then I go out with a camera operator and we do some **interviews⁽³⁾** and I write about what I'm going to say.

2- What do you like about your job?

I like meeting different people and finding out more about the world and the things that are happening in it. At first, it was exciting to be on the TV, but it is normal for me now!

3- What don't you like about your job?

I don't like the long hours and sometimes we **report⁽⁴⁾** on bad news and that can be very difficult.

4- How did you get your job?

I studied **media⁽⁵⁾** and Arabic at university and then I worked for a newspaper for a while. Someone at the newspaper thought that I would be good on TV and told me about a job working in TV news.

5- What skills do you need to do your job?

I think you have to be interested in the world around you and also like meeting lots of different people. You need to be good at listening and writing.

١- اجتماع / لقاء
٢- عادة
٣- مقابلات
٤- يقدم تقرير
٥- وسائل الإعلام

SB Page (53)

Last week, we decided to spend the weekend in Sharm El-Shiekh. We took our friend's car. Unfortunately, the car **broke down⁽¹⁾**. We asked a **mechanic⁽²⁾** from the nearest village to come as soon as possible. He **checked⁽³⁾** the car well. Then, the mechanic decided to take the car back to the **garage⁽⁴⁾**. It was pulled all the way to our city!

١- تعطلت
٢- ميكانيكي
٣- فحص
٤- جراج (ورشة سيارات)

NEW NATURE RESERVE

This weekend, a new **nature reserve**⁽¹⁾ will open on the coast. The reserve will protect many fish, birds and **sea animals**⁽²⁾, including turtles. The nature reserve will be a good place for families to walk and have a picnic. A scientist said, "We hope people will visit to learn more about the **environment**⁽³⁾ of our wonderful coast."

CLIMBERS FOUND!

Two men who **got lost**⁽⁴⁾ when climbing a mountain have been found. The **climbers**⁽⁵⁾ took the wrong **path**⁽⁶⁾ **by mistake**⁽⁷⁾ and then one of them fell and broke his leg. They were on the mountain for four days. A police officer said, "They are tired and hungry but happy to be home."

١- محمية طبيعية

٢- حيوانات بحرية

٣- البيئة

٤- ضل الطريق

٥- متسلقون

٦- مسار / طريق

٧- بطريق الخطأ

Adam : Have you heard that a famous sports star is going to visit our village?

Taha : Really?

Adam : Yes. According to this website, the famous basketball player is going to watch a children's match at the sports centre.

Taha : That's good.

Adam : Did you know that the basketball player went to school in our village?

Taha : No, I didn't know that.

Adam : Apparently, he might send his son to the school, too.

Taha : That's good news.

Adam : I heard that his son is already good at basketball, but he's only five!

Taha : Wow!

Noha : Did you know that Randa's cousin is a famous newsreader?

Hania : No, I didn't know.

Noha : Apparently, she reads the local news every night at 10 pm.

Hania : Really?

Noha : According to my mother, she is very good at her job.

Hania : That's good.

Noha : I heard that she might work for the national news soon.

Hania : Wow!

Noha : Have you heard that she is visiting Randa tomorrow?

Hania : No! We should try and meet her.

WB Page (105)

I work for an English language news **website**⁽¹⁾. I started at a **newspaper**, but I think more people read news online now, so I prefer this job. Lots of different **journalists**⁽²⁾ send me their articles, and I have to decide which ones are the most important. These will be the first ones that our readers will see.

- ١- موقع على الانترنت
- ٢- صحفيون
- ٣- توضع على/تنشر
- ٤- حقائق
- ٥- أخطاء إملائية

Before the article **goes on**⁽³⁾ the website, I also have to check the **facts**⁽⁴⁾ that are in it. I look at two or three different websites that I trust to do this. Then I check the writing. Sometimes, there are **spelling mistakes**⁽⁵⁾ or the language is not very easy to understand. It's my job to make the article as easy to understand as possible. Finally, I have to choose photographs to go with the article. Sometimes a photographer sends these, but usually we get them from other websites.

I studied English and media at university. First, I wanted to be a journalist, but then I decided that I preferred this job. It is very interesting because I can look at so many people's articles.

WB Page (106)

"I've always liked taking photographs. **However**⁽¹⁾, I never wanted to be a photographer. I have always wanted to be a camera operator. It is a great job and it is always different. Today, I am working at a **sports stadium**⁽²⁾. Tomorrow, I will be working inside. I am **filming**⁽³⁾ a meeting with some important people! I have never met the governor of Cairo before. I am **looking forward to**⁽⁴⁾ it!"

- ١- على الرغم من
- ٢- استاد رياضي
- ٣- يصور فيلم
- ٤- يتطلع إلى

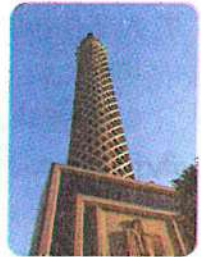
Videoscript

SB Page (51)

If you look up in Cairo, you will see some tall **skyscrapers**⁽¹⁾. But the tallest building of them all is Cairo Tower, which is on Gezira Island. This is 187 metres high and it is one of the tallest buildings in Africa.

The tower first opened in 1961. It was built by the famous Egyptian **architect**⁽²⁾ Naoum Shebib. Shebib also built another tall building in Cairo - the Thabet-Thabet building. This skyscraper is more than 100 metres high.

The design of the tower looks like a type of flower called the **pharaonic lotus flower**⁽³⁾. This is the national flower of Egypt. It was very important in Ancient Egypt because it **represented**⁽⁴⁾ **birth**⁽⁵⁾ and life.



- ١- ناطحات سحاب
- ٢- مهندس معماري
- ٣- زهرة اللوتس
- ٤- الفرعونية
- ٥- تمثل
- ٥- الميلاد

The Cairo Tower is very popular with tourists, who visit it to see all of the city from the top. Sometimes, you can even see the Pyramids of Giza **in the distance**⁽⁶⁾. You can even have a meal at the top of the tower. My sister said that she ate fresh fish there! At night, the tower is **illuminated**⁽⁷⁾ with lights. People say that it looks very beautiful.

Soon, the tallest building in Africa will be in Egypt. The **Iconic Tower**⁽⁸⁾ in the **New Administrative Capital**⁽⁹⁾ will be more than 385 metres tall when it is built.

Are there any skyscrapers or tall buildings in your town or city?

٦- من على بعد
٧- مضاء
٨- البرج الأيقوني
٩- العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A/An is a day or time for people to celebrate something.
a. film b. festival c. fair d. accident
2. "....." means according to what you have heard is true.
a. Normally b. Apparently c. Finally d. Usually
3. "....." means as said by someone or as shown by something.
a. Normally b. Firstly c. Really d. According to
4. A/An is a situation when groups of people meet to discuss something.
a. meeting b. warning c. festival d. report
5. "....." means usual, not different.
a. Abnormal b. Local c. Normal d. Terrible

Synonyms & Antonyms

6. is the antonym of international.
a. Normal b. Local c. Final d. Universal
7. Al Azhar Park is the nearest park to my house. The synonym of "the nearest" is the ".....".
a. widest b. tallest c. closest d. farthest
8. She was wearing a very expensive dress. "Expensive" is similar in meaning to
a. pricey b. boring c. inexpensive d. exciting
9. The antonym of the adjective "wonderful" is
a. nice b. good c. terrible d. attractive
10. is the opposite of "different".
a. Unlike b. Similar c. Close d. Terrible
11. "According to" is a/an
a. adverb b. noun c. preposition d. verb

Prefixes & Suffixes

12. We add the prefix _____ to get the opposite of the adjective "normal".

بنى سويف 2022

- a. ab- b. ir- c. un- d. dis-

13. It's probable that it will be sunny tomorrow. To change "probable" into an adverb, delete "e" and add "_____".

Longman

- a. -ily b. -ly c. -lly d. -ies

14. This restaurant serves traditional food. "Traditional" in this sentence is a/an _____.

Longman

- a. adjective b. noun c. verb d. adverb

15. The verb "climb" is turned into a noun by adding the suffix _____.

- a. -or b. -less c. -ful d. -er

16. To turn the word "normal" into an adverb, we add the suffix _____.

- a. -or b. -ful c. -er d. -ly

17. We get the opposite of the word "able" by adding the prefix _____.

- a. un- b. ab- c. mis- d. inter-

Guessing the meaning

18. Ibrahim works for a charity for free. This means he is a _____.

جنوب سيناء 2022

- a. volunteer b. manager c. governor d. worker

19. A journalist wrote about the accident. This means that he _____ the accident.

- a. served b. read c. reported d. filmed

20. Mr Hamdy is busy talking to his employees. This means he has a _____ with them.

- a. meal b. meeting c. shower d. picnic

21. He teaches English to students who are between 13 and 19 years old. This means he teaches English to _____.

- a. babies b. kids c. teenagers d. climbers

22. If something is _____, it costs much money.

- a. easy b. cheap c. expensive d. difficult

23. The film wasn't terrible as I expected. It was _____.

- a. horrible b. awful c. bad d. wonderful

Speaking

Reporting news

تقديم تقارير اخبارية:

Discussing the news

مناقشة خبر / نبأ

- Have you heard that ...?
هل سمعت أن؟
- Did you know that?
هل عرفت أن؟
- According to (the newspaper).....
طبقا لـ (الصحيفة / جريدة)
- I heard that,.....
سمعت أن,.....
- Apparently,.....
على ما يبدو,.....

Responding to news!

الرد على خبر / نبأ

- Really? حقاً؟
- Wow! رائع!
- That's good news. انه لخبر جيد.
- That's bad news. انها لخبر سيء.
- I didn't know that. لم أكن أعرف ذلك.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Noha is telling Hania good news about her cousin.

Noha : Did you know that Randa's cousin is a famous newsreader?

Hania : ①

Noha : Yes, she reads the local news every night at 10 pm.

Hania : ②

Noha : According to my mother, she is very good at her job.

Hania : ③

Noha : I heard that she might work for the national news soon.

Hania : ④

Noha : ⑤

Hania : No! I haven't heard she is going to get married soon. We should visit her.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

stadium - giving - operator - said - taking - told

I like ① photos, but I don't want to be a photographer. I hope to be a camera ② because it is a great job and it is always different. Today, we are going to a sports ③ because my mother wants to have a meeting with a famous footballer. She's a reporter. She ④ I could go with her.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a person who does a job without being paid for it.

a. vet

b. web designer

c. presenter

d. volunteer

2. The noun "tradition" is turned into an adjective by adding the suffix

الدقهلية 2022

- a. -ing b. -or c. -al d. -ful

3. Don't worry, the baby's temperature is normal. "Normal" is an antonym for ".....".

Longman

- a. dishonest b. unclear c. abnormal d. unimportant

4. The article is not easy to understand. This means the article is

- a. clear b. confusing c. obvious d. plain

5. They're going to come together to discuss the problem. This means they are going to have a

- a. meeting b. picnic c. festival d. mistake

6. The car broke down. This means the car working.

- a. started b. began c. stopped d. continued

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (study) English at university and then I worked for a newspaper.

WB

2. Heba said that they (didn't go) to the museum the previous week.

WB

3. The scientist explained that the world (is warming) because there was climate change.

SB

4. The housewife (say) the thief had robbed the house last night.

القاهرة 2023



5. Roqia said that she (is) so tired the previous day before.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story you have read online"

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- When have you read the story? - What is the name of this short story?
- What about its characters? - Did you like it? Why?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have read a short story about
- I read it online, it was about
- The characters are
- I liked it because



Vocabulary

award	جائزة	meeting	اجتماع / لقاء	normal	عادي / طبيعي
media	الإعلام / وسائل الإعلام	festival	مهرجان	interview	مقابلة شخصية
businesses	شركات / أعمال تجارية	apparently	على ما يبدو / بوضوح	replace (d)	يُبدل / يستبدل
governor	حاكم / محافظ	stuck	عالق	design (ed)	يصمم (شيء)
career	حياة مهنية	pipe	أنبوب (ماسورة)	research (ed) (n)	يبحث - بحث
tourism	السياحة	warning	تحذير	graduate (d)	يتخرج في (جامعة)
broadcasting	بث إذاعي / تليفزيوني	female voice	صوت نسائي	retire (d)	يتقاعد عن العمل
broadcaster	مذيع	early life	في بداية حياة	serve (d)	يقدم (طعام)
linguist	متخصص في اللغويات / عالم لغويات	presenter	مذيع / مقدم (برامج)	report (ed) (n)	يقدم تقرير - تقرير
		cross (adj)	غاضب - متضايق	burst (v.burst) (n)	ينكسر - ينفجر - انفجار
		witness	شاهد (على حادثة / جريمة)		

Jobs in the media

camera operator	مشغل الكاميرا (مصور تليفزيوني)	radio presenter	مقدم برامج إذاعية
journalist	صحفي	web designer	مصمم مواقع / صفحات على الانترنت
newsreader	مذيع / قارئ نشرة الأخبار	editor	رئيس التحرير - محرر
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي		



Language

1- Remember The past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن شيء حدث في الماضي وانتهى .
- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادة تكررت في الماضي

Ex. My father **arrived** home late last night.

Ex. I **always walked** to school when I was young.

Ex. I **didn't hear** about yesterday's accident.

Ex. Did Ola cook for the family yesterday?

Ex. How did you make this cake?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	in (2010)	in the past	ago
last (night / week / month / year)		one (day - week)	once

2- Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech الكلام المباشر وغير المباشر

الكلام المباشر (Direct speech) هو الكلام الفعلي الذي قاله الشخص ويأتي بين علامات تنصيص "....."

الكلام غير المباشر (Indirect speech) هو نفس كلام الشخص لكنه منقول على لسان شخص آخر ويكتب بدون علامات تنصيص.

خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية

• فعل القول في الكلام المباشر يأتي إما قبل الكلام أو بعده لكن عند التحويل إلى الكلام غير المباشر يأتي قبل الكلام.

Ex. Ali said, "I'm going to buy a car."

(Direct)

= "I'm going to buy a car," said Ali.

- Ali said that he was going to buy a car.

(Indirect)

١- يحول فعل القول عادةً كما يلي:

say	→	say	says	→	says	said	→	said
say to	→	tell	says to	→	tells	said to	→	told

• الفعل said لا يأتي بعده مفعول لكن الفعل told لا بد أن يأتي بعده مفعول.

٢- نحذف علامات التنصيص ونربط بـ (that) ويمكن حذفها.

٣- نقوم بتحويل الضمائر في الجملة بما يتفق مع المعنى عند نقل الكلام

٤- يتم تحويل ظروف الزمان والمكان وأسماء الإشارة في الجملة غير المباشرة.

٥- يتم تحويل الأزمنة إلى الماضي كما يلي:

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present simple مضارع بسيط (s/es/ies) + فعل / مصدر الفعل	Past simple ماضى بسيط التصريف الثاني للفعل
Past simple ماضى بسيط التصريف الثاني للفعل	Past perfect ماضى تام (had + p.p)
Present continuous مضارع مستمر am / is / are + v-ing	Past continuous ماضى مستمر was / were + v-ing

Present perfect مضارع تام

have / has + p.p

Past perfect ماضى تام

had + p.p

Modals مع الأفعال الناقصة

will / can + inf. → would / could + inf.

Future with (am, is, are) going to + inf. → (was / were) going to + inf.

Speaking

1 Asking and giving opinions

السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء:

Question

- Would you like to work in the media? Why?
- Which jobs would you like to do in the media? Why?
- Which jobs wouldn't you like to do in the media? Why?

Answer

- Yes, I would like to work in the media because I want to know more people.
- I would like to work as a journalist because I want to write about different things in life.
- I wouldn't like to work as a camera operator. This won't let me meet and talk to different kinds of people.

2 Reporting an accident

الإخبار عن حادث

A: Was there an accident yesterday?

B: Yes, there was.

A: What happened?

B: A car was about to hit a child, but it hit a big tree.

A: Did the police arrive quickly?

B: Yes, they did.

A: What did the police do?

B: They took the damaged car to the side of the road.

A: Did you go to school on time?

B: Unfortunately, we went to school late!

3 Asking and giving opinions:

السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء :

Question

- What do you think about studying online?
- What do you think about doing sport?

Answer

- I like it because it saves time.
- I don't like it because I can't discuss things with my friends.
- I think it is good for our health.

4 Asking and answering questions about radio broadcasting:

السؤال والاجابة عن البث الاذاعي :

Question

- Was radio broadcasting very important in the last century? Why?

Answer

- Yes, it was very important as it helped us learn and know many things.

5 Asking and answering questions about radio broadcasting:

تقديم تقارير اخبارية :

Discussing the news

مناقشة خبر / نبأ

- Have you heard that ...?
- Did you know that ...?
- According to (the newspaper).....
- I heard that,
- Apparently

Responding to news!

الرد على خبر / نبأ

- Really?
- Wow!
- That's good news.
- That's bad news.
- I didn't know that.

General Exercises on Unit 11

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Nada and Hala is talking about Dr Magdy Yacoub.

Nada : Do you know Dr Magdy Yacoub?

Hala : ①

Nada : ②

Hala : I know that he visited Aswan in 1990.

Nada : ③

Hala : He helps children with sick hearts.

Nada : Have you heard that we are going to have a meeting with him?

Hala : ④

Nada : We can ask him to visit our village, too.

Hala : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1 got - tell - spend - exciting - interested - told

I always visit famous tourist places in Egypt. My favourite is the Egyptian Museum. It is an ① _____ place. I am ② _____ in history. The museum is so huge, you can ③ _____ nice time there. My father ④ _____ me that he had visited it before.

2 do - have passed - operator - had passed - designer - applied

Longman

I'm pleased to tell you some good news. Last month, I ① _____ for a new job. Yesterday, the secretary told me that I ② _____ the interview. I'm happy to ③ _____ the job I prefer. I'm going to work as a camera ④ _____ for a famous TV channel. What about your work? I hope you'll have more success in your career.

3 told - about - get - said - journalist - grow

We like our social studies teacher very much. He always says to us, "Everyone must be careful ① _____ the job they choose." Last week, he said to me, "Which job will you prefer when you ② _____ up?" I ③ _____ him that I wanted to be a ④ _____. I like to look for true and exciting news related to most people, especially the famous.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An _____ is someone who introduces the different parts of a television or radio show.

- a. presenter b. editor c. governor d. graduate

2. Newspapers, magazines, television, the internet and other forms of communication are all types of _____.

الفيوم 2023

- a. mountain b. medicine c. meteorite d. media

3. Unfortunately, the old man wasn't saved. "Unfortunately" can be replaced by _____.

Longman

- a. Uncommonly b. Unluckily c. Interestingly d. Lately

4. The word "operate" is turned into a noun by using the suffix _____.

- a. -or b. -ful c. -er d. -less

5. Mr Tawfeek works for Al Akhbar newspaper. This means he's a / an
 a. engineer b. journalist c. mechanic d. player
6. He can't go anywhere. He is in his house because of the flood.
 a. busy b. full c. stuck d. free

الإسماعيلية 2023

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The government (build) a new bridge in our town last year.
- (Be) there many people at the party yesterday?
- Salma said that she always (like) taking photographs.
- Did you (knew) that I bought a car last week?
- Noura said that it (will) be hot on Monday.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A biography of a person you know "Farouk Shousha"

المنوفية 2023

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- Where was he born? - Where did he graduate from?
- What about his career? - What did he talk about in his programmes?
- What do you know about the awards he won?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- He was born in
- He graduated from
- He worked as
- He presented many programmes
- In his programmes, Shousha always talked about



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ola : Have you ever read about Safia el Mohandas?

Aya : ①

Ola : ②?

Aya : She was the first female radio presenter.

Ola : ③?

Aya : She was called "the mother of all broadcasters".

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

do - make - for - newsreader - since - presenter

My brother Hazem hopes to find a good job. He has been thinking about media ① a long time. He doesn't like to be on TV as a ② because he would be nervous. Instead, he wants to be a radio ③; that would be cool! So, he will work hard to ④ more success in his new job by all means.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet. He was born in Damietta in 1936. he went to a nearby elementary school. He went to the local library at a very early age, and was able to read many books in the Arabic language. Later on, He went to Cairo University and graduated from the faculty of Dar Al-Ulum in 1956. Shousha presented many programmes. He always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, He was called the guardian of the Arabic language. He won the Nile prize for literature in 2016..

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Shousha always talk about?

.....

2. Where did he go at a very early age?

.....

3. Which faculty did he graduate from?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Shousha was born in the _____ century.

- a. 19th b. 20th c. 13th d. 16th

5. He was called the _____ of the Arabic language.

- a. gardener b. greener c. guardian d. grade

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A _____ is someone who reads the news on television or radio.

- a. photographer b. tourist c. sailor d. newsreader

2. To _____ is to send programmes or some information by radio or TV.

- a. retire b. present c. award d. broadcast

3. The manager said he _____ the clients the following day.

- a. meet b. would meet c. met d. will meet

4. The man _____ us that he would attend the meeting.

- a. said b. told c. asked d. said to

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ali said that _____ (these) books had been very interesting. الأقصر 2024

2. Arwa _____ (says) me that she would visit me on Friday.

3. Mariam told me that she was studying _____ (now). المنيا 2023

6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

شمال سيناء 2022

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A bad accident happened on the road to your school"

Al Azhar Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A

Vocabulary

SB & WB Exercises

1. A person whose job is to read the news is a WB
 a. news designer b. news reviewer c. news maker d. newsreader
2. The police want to talk to Ola and the other who saw the accident last night. WB
 a. designer b. businessman c. researcher d. witness
3. Many businessmen have with their customers to discuss their work. WB
 a. garages b. customs c. traditions d. meetings
4. People often give you a when something might be dangerous. WB
 a. smile b. warning c. present d. speech
5. My favourite newsreader has studied and language at university. WB
 a. science b. media c. chemistry d. biology
6. We can't play football because the ball has! WB
 a. burst b. fixed c. closed d. filled
7. That takes water from the roof of our house to the ground. WB
 a. article b. tape c. pipe d. type
8. My father was because my young brothers made so much noise. WB
 a. hungry b. happy c. pleased d. cross

Longman Exercises

9. I was late for work because I was in a very busy street in the city centre.
 a. stored b. allowed c. stuck d. started
10. We should try to get our news from trusted online.
 a. websites b. situations c. operations d. locations
11. A introduces radio programmes such as news or social programmes.
 a. web designer b. police officer
 c. camera operator d. radio presenter
12. is a play for the theatre, radio, or television.
 a. Drawing b. Music c. Photography d. Drama

13. Safia el Mohandes was the first female _____ in Egypt.
 a. radio presenter b. linguist
 c. recorder d. producer
14. Egyptian radio _____ started in 1934. It was the first in Africa and the whole Arab world.
 a. news reading b. photography
 c. broadcasting d. writing

Bit by Bit Exercises

15. It is very bad. There are a lot of spelling _____ in my writing.
 a. breaks b. talks c. apps d. mistakes
16. You should have many _____ to get that job.
 a. picnics b. skills c. stars d. mistakes
17. Egypt has a film _____ every year.
 a. festival b. website c. flood d. park
18. The child was _____ when his toy broke.
 a. cross b. famous c. pleased d. hungry
19. To _____ is to send a programme or some information by radio or TV.
 a. retire b. present c. award d. broadcast
20. A _____ is a series of contests in some sports or games
 a. towel b. tower c. tournament d. tour
21. A _____ is a person who rules an area or a city.
 a. witness b. worker c. governor d. tourist
22. Tourists like visiting old and _____ villages in Egypt.
 a. traditional b. terrible c. bad d. ugly

B Language

23. She _____ that she was happy that they had finished. **SB**
 a. told b. said c. says d. tells
24. The police said that lots of mobile phones _____ been stolen that year. **SB**
 a. had b. have c. would d. could
25. Kareem said that more jobs _____ be a good thing. **SB**
 a. will b. would c. has d. have
26. Samy said that he _____ tired. **WB**
 a. will b. was c. is d. are
27. The teacher said that _____ books were very interesting. **WB**
 a. this b. that c. these d. those
28. Tamer _____ me that he was ill. **Longman**
 a. said b. tell c. told d. says

29. My friend said that he to go to Cairo Airport to meet his uncle. Longman
 a. has b. have c. had d. having
30. Hadi me that he would travel to London on Friday. Longman
 a. says b. said c. explained d. told
31. Nada told me that she be ready for the journey. Longman
 a. can b. will c. would d. may
32. Sagda said that she met the new manager. Longman
 a. had b. has c. have d. is
33. He didn't to bed early yesterday.
 a. went b. going c. go d. gone
34. Last week, I a very important museum.
 a. visit b. visiting c. visited d. to visit
35. A famous actor to our village last month.
 a. comes b. is coming c. will come d. came
36. Rahma told us that she the Egyptian Museum the next day.
 a. visits b. visiting c. would visit d. will visit
37. Fatma said that she tired the day before.
 a. is b. would be c. will be d. had been
38. Samir told me that he would to London the following week.
 a. travelled b. travels c. travelling d. travel
39. Sally Samira, "I will go to Cairo tomorrow."
 a. told b. said c. said to d. asked
40. Heba told me that her plane to London that day.
 a. leaves b. left c. leaving d. leave
41. Ahmed told me that he abroad the next week.
 a. are travelling b. had travelled c. would travel d. travelling
42. Jana said that it be cold on Monday.
 a. will b. can c. may d. could
43. Huda said that she the film the day before.
 a. watch b. don't watch c. hadn't watched d. doesn't watch
44. Ramy said that he to go to the park.
 a. want b. wants c. wanted d. will want
45. Ali told me that he had bought a new laptop
 a. the following day b. tomorrow
 c. now d. the day before
46. Ali told me that he would buy a new laptop
 a. the following day b. now
 c. the day before d. the previous week

Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

1- "A short story about a flood in city centre"

(Lessons 1 & 2)

Yesterday, I went down to have a walk. After a few minutes' walk, I saw many people standing on the corner of the street. When I came nearer, I asked what was the matter. Someone told me that there was a flood in the city center because of a burst water pipe. The police came quickly with some men from the city and began fixing the pipe as traffic stopped and people were stuck in their cars. It didn't take long. The pipe was fixed and people began to clean their businesses. The city center opened again and everything went well later on.

2- "A biography of a person you like who was working in the media"

(Lessons 3 & 4)

Dr Mustafa Mahmoud was born in Shibin el-Kom. He graduated from the faculty of medicine, and became a famous doctor. But later he worked as a journalist and writer for famous newspapers. He wrote 89 books in different subjects. He began working in the media and presented his well-known programme "Al-elm wa al-eman", which was watched by most Egyptians. He had his hospital and charity which always helped the poor in our society. I really like that man, and I want to be like him in the future.

3- "A short story you have read online"

(Lessons 5 & 6)

I like to read stories on the internet. Yesterday, I read a story called "The Old Man and the Sea". It is a story of an old, poor fisherman. He couldn't catch any fish for a long time. The other fishermen were sorry about him. They wanted to help him but he always refused. One day, he took his small boat to catch fish. Finally, he could catch a big one. On his way home, many sharks came and ate that fish. They left it only a skeleton. When he reached home, he was very tired so he went to bed. He slept for a long time.

Later, the fishermen saw the skeleton. They knew that he was strong and brave.

4- "A biography of Farouk Shousha"

Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet. He was born in Damietta in 1936. He went to Cairo University and graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum in 1956. He worked as a radio presenter and later on as a TV presenter. He liked poetry and Arabic literature very much. He presented many programmes like 'Our Beautiful Language'. He always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and literature. For this reason, he was called 'the guardian of the Arabic language'. He won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016.

5- "A bad accident happened on the road to your school"

(Al Azhar)

There was a dangerous accident on the road to our school yesterday. A car hit a big tree, and the driver was injured. We were stuck and couldn't move. The police arrived quickly and took the damaged car to the side of the road. Unfortunately, we went to school late!

6- "A biography of a person you like most"

(Test)

Safia el Mohandes was born in 1922 in Cairo. Her father encouraged her to read Arabic books and novels. Safia also studied English literature at the university and graduated from the Faculty of Arts in 1945. In 1947, Safia joined the Egyptian radio, and she was the first female radio presenter. Safia presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme, 'Housewives', presented news, educational advice and drama for the whole Egyptian family. Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She helped everyone, and so she was called the 'mother of all broadcasters'.



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Hamza and Mustafa are talking about an interesting book

Hamza : How are things?

Mustafa : ①

Hamza : What are you doing?

Mustafa : ②

Hamza : Is reading a useful hobby?

Mustafa : ③

Hamza : ④?

Mustafa : The book is about a famous scientist, Dr Farouk El-Baz.

Hamza : ⑤?

Mustafa : He helped Egypt and other countries to find more water.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

language - has - have - online - articles - jobs

I studied English and media at university. I work as an editor. I work for an English
 ① website. Nowadays more people read news ② I like this job. Lots
 of different journalists send me their ③ and I ④ to decide which ones
 are the most important.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In the past, people simply contacted each other through letters only, but now, it is
 so easy to send messages, photos, posters and even personal news of them. Food,
 clothes, holidays and even birthdays became online events for a lot of people.

Recently, researchers have found out that, media such as Facebook, Instagram and

other social media became a serious danger over families in different places. News is uncontrollable. No secrets can be kept, and of course this caused a lot of problems for the young and the old as well. Negative effects were shown in many shapes. So, everyone should work together to put an end to such destruction to our society.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- News has become _____ to control.
a. easy b. hard c. slow d. nice
- Different _____ suffer from the technology of social media.
a. streets b. drivers c. families d. players

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the passage mainly about?

.....

- What does the underlined word "this" refer to?

.....

- What problems does social media cause?

.....

- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A _____ is a person whose job is to introduce programmes on the radio.
a. journalist b. web designer
c. radio presenter d. linguist
- To _____ is to give news or information, usually about the news.
a. report b. review c. renew d. recall
- The synonym of the word "female" is _____
a. man b. woman c. adult d. customer
- To turn the noun "Arab" into an adjective, we add the suffix. _____
a. -al b. -ly c. -ic d. -or
- _____! This water is too hot! It can hurt you.
a. Trying b. Sleeping c. Drinking d. Warning

الإسكندرية 2022

6. He can't go anywhere. He is in his house because of the flood.

a. lazy

b. busy

c. stuck

d. free

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The newsreader said that a new sports centre (be) opening this weekend. **SB**

2. Mona said that she (is living) in Paris then.

3. Yasser made a bad mistake, so the teacher (punish) him.

4. Samir told me that he (travel) to London next Friday. **WB**

5. He said to us, "The football tournament (would) start tomorrow."

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of a person you like most"

الإسكندرية 2023

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- When and where was he / she born?
- What do you know about his / her education?
- What do you know about his / her achievements?
- Did he / she win any prizes?

- يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات:

- He / She was born in
- I know that he / she
- He / She did
- He / She won

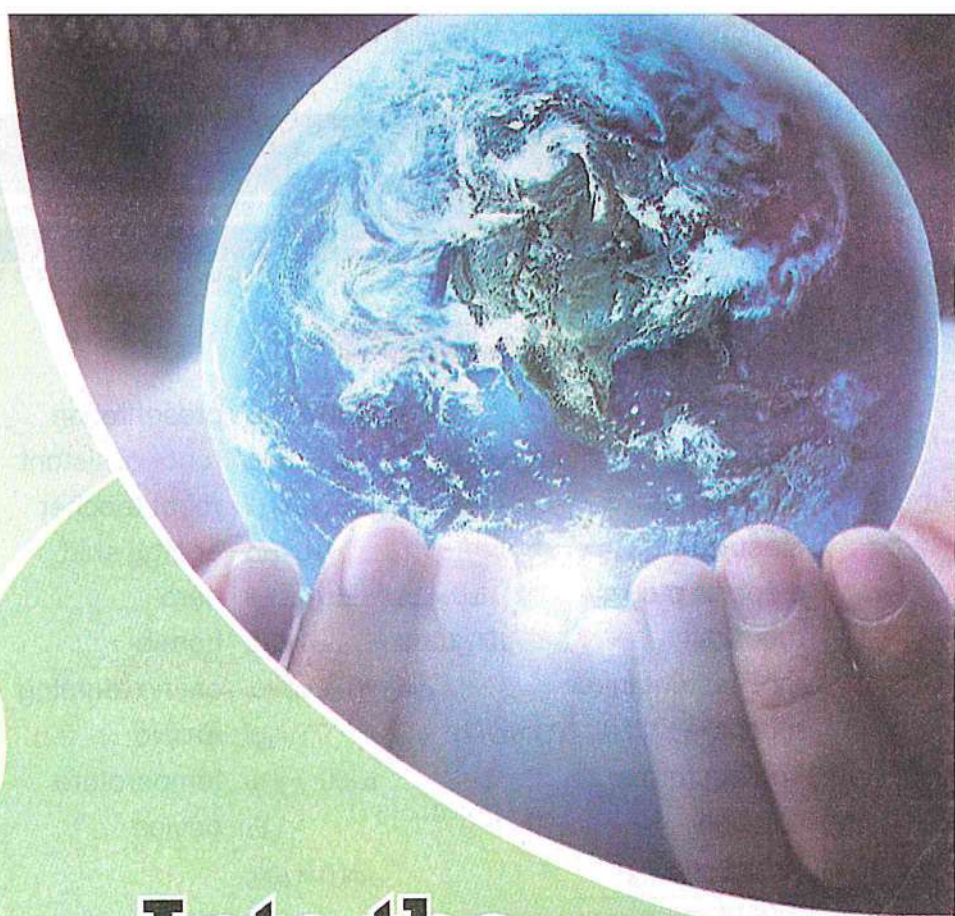
prep.

3

**New
Hello!**

12
UNIT

Into the future



Objectives

Reading:

A text about future technology; a blog about personal goals; an article about future cities in Africa; a text about driverless cars

Writing:

A paragraph about personal goals and ambitions; a short report about a future technology

Listening:

A conversation about future predictions; a radio programme about learning in

the future; students talking about their goals; talking about a city in the future

Speaking:

Making predictions; discussing future ability; discussing personal goals; expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future

Language: will / won't be able to

Life Skills:

Critical thinking and self-management



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	presentation	عرض تقديمي
cycle lane	حارة / مسار مخصص للدراجات	robot assistant	مساعد آلي
electric bus	أتوبيس يعمل بالكهرباء	robot teacher	معلم آلي
electricity	كهرباء	energy shirt	قميص الطاقة
e-sports player	لاعب رياضة إلكترونية	hero	بطل
robotics	علم تصميم الإنسان الآلي	heroic	بطولي
robotics engineer	مهندس روبوتات	online learning	التعليم عبر الإنترنت
robotic	آلي	Arabic	اللغة العربية
floating farms	مزارع عائمة	temperature	درجة الحرارة
solution	حل	device	جهاز
virtual reality	واقع افتراضي		



Vocabulary

robot	إنسان آلي	mask	كمامة
business meeting	لقاء / اجتماع عمل	Arab	شخص عربي
percent	نسبة مئوية (في المائة)	billion	مليار
prediction	تنبؤ	farmland	أرض زراعية
coronavirus pandemic	جائحة كورونا	produce (d)	يُنتج
challenge (n)	تحدي	charge (d)	يشحن
passport	جواز سفر	collect (ed)	يجمع
fabric	قماش	remind (ed)	يُذكر
driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق (ذاتية القيادة)	print (ed)	يطبع



Definitions

3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	a machine that can make copies ⁽¹⁾ of whole objects ⁽²⁾ .
cycle lane	مسار مخصص للدراجات	- a special area, often on or near a road, for people to cycle ⁽³⁾ on
robotics engineer	مهندس روبوتات	a person whose job is to design or work with robots
temperature	درجة الحرارة	how hot or cold something is
hero	بطل	a person who is admired by many people for doing something brave or good
e-sports player	لاعب رياضة إلكترونية	a player of online video games

١- نُسخ

٢- أشياء

٣- يركب دراجة

device جهاز	- a machine or equipment for a particular ⁽⁴⁾ job - electric equipment ⁽⁵⁾ that can do a special job	WB
virtual reality واقع افتراضي	when a computer makes you think that you are in a real place using pictures and sound	ع- محددة / معينة و- معدات
assistant مساعد	somebody who helps a person do their job	
online learning التعليم عبر الإنترنت	education or teaching that you can have on the internet	
solution حل	a way to solve a problem or answer a puzzle or a question	WB

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
safe	آمن	secure		dangerous	خطير
disappear	يختفي	hide		appear	يظهر
outside	خارج	outdoors		inside	داخل
robotic	آلي	mechanical		manual	يدوي
float	يطفو	swim		sink	يغرق
heroic	بطولي	brave		cowardly	جبان
rise	يرتفع	increase		decrease	يقل
advantages	مميزات	benefits / merits		disadvantages / demerits	عيوب

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
e-	تضاف للاسم وتعني "الالكتروني" electronic	e-sports player لاعب رياضة الكترونية
-ics	تضاف إلى الاسم لتعني دراسة أو علم science	robot ics علم تصميم الانسان الآلي
-ic	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	hero ic / robot ic / Arab ic بطولي/آلي/اللغة العربية
-y		wind y عاصف
-ion / -ation	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	predic tion / present ation تنبؤ/ عرض تقديمي
-ant	person تكون اسم الفاعل	assist ant مساعد
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الظرف/الحال	important ly بشكل مهم
-ity	adj → n تحول الصفة إلى الاسم	real ity الواقع

Expressions & Prepositions

produce electricity	يُنتج الكهرباء	by 2030	بحلول 2030
charge a device	يشحن جهاز	on the farmland	في الأرض الزراعية
find solutions to	يجد حلول لـ	on the sea	على سطح البحر
do very well	يؤدي بشكل جيد	hear of	يسمع عن
do projects	ينفذ مشروعات	remind.....to	يذكر.....بفعل شيء
make designs	يقوم بعمل تصميمات	in different ways	بطرق مختلفة
keep safe	يحافظ على سلامة	apply for a job	يتقدم لوظيفة
that's a pity	هذا مؤسف	in about a year's time	في غضون سنة تقريبا
do talks	يجري حوارات	in fact	في الواقع / في الحقيقة

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

feed

يُطعم

fed

fed

hurt

يؤلم - يُصيب

hurt

hurt

rise

يرتفع

rose

risen



Language Notes

1) remind / remember

• remind (ed) (of) + n

يُذكر شخص بشيء / بشخص

Ex. This old man **reminded** me **of my** grandfather.

• remember (ed) يتذكر

Ex. I can **remember** people's faces, but not their names.

• remind (ed) (to + inf.)

يُذكر شخص أن يفعل شيء

Ex. My mother **reminded** me **to do** my homework.

2) pandemic / epidemic

• pandemic

جائحة

(مرض يصيب الناس بشكل سريع في كل العالم)

Ex. All countries did great efforts to stop coronavirus **pandemic**.

• epidemic

وباء

(مرض يصيب الناس بشكل سريع في منطقة محددة)

Ex. A lot of people died during flu **epidemic** in Spain.

3) device / tool

• device

جهاز كهربائي أو ميكانيكي لوظيفة محددة

Ex. A telescope is a **device** for seeing objects nearer.

• tool

أداة/آلة - تُحمل باليد - وتستخدم في مهنة

Ex. Carpenters use **tools** such as hammers and saws.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- me to buy some milk tonight, please.
a. Remember b. Forget c. Remind d. Hit
- Coronavirus caused death of many people all over the world.
a. epidemic b. pandemic c. topic d. magic
- The TV receiver is an electronic
a. tool b. machine c. device d. building



Audioscript

SB Page (55)

استمع إلى النصوص



1

Girl 1: Look, this article says that cities across the world are building new **cycle lanes**⁽¹⁾. This one is in **Beijing**⁽²⁾. It goes above the city.

Girl 2: That looks amazing!

Girl 1: According to the article, the most popular way to travel in future won't be by fast train or **driverless car**⁽³⁾, it will be by bike.

Girl 2: Do you think that's possible?

Girl 1: Not really. It's good that some cities are building new cycle lanes, but I think there will always be quicker and easier ways to travel.

Girl 2: Hmm ... I think you're right.

2

Boy 1: So, this article is about the energy that we will use in future.

Boy 2: What does it say?

Boy 1: It says that we will all be using more **renewable energy**⁽⁴⁾. **In fact**⁽⁵⁾, by 2050, all of our energy will be renewable.

Boy 2: I agree. We have to change to renewable energy to protect the planet.



١- مسارات الدراجات
٢- بكين (عاصمة الصين)
٣- سيارة بدون سائق
٤- طاقة متجددة
٥- في الحقيقة

3

Girl 3: It says here that we will need a lot more **scientists⁽⁶⁾** in the future.

Girl 4: Well, there are already a lot of jobs that people need science for. And in the future, science will be more important.

Girl 3: Why?

Girl 4: Well, with problems like **climate change⁽⁷⁾**, we will need new ideas and new technology. We need scientists for this.

Girl 3: Oh yes. I see what you mean.

4

Boy 3: Look at this e-sports **tournament⁽⁸⁾**, 60 million people watched it online.

Boy 4: Yes, e-sports are becoming really popular.

Boy 3: It says here that e-sports will be **more popular⁽⁹⁾** than football by 2030.

Boy 4: I don't think that will happen. Billions of people watch football matches.

E-sports are popular, but they won't be more popular than football.

Boy 3: No, I don't think they will.

٦- علماء
٧- التغير المناخي
٨- دورة رياضية
٩- أكثر شعبية

SB Page (57)

Interviewer : Well, we've all got our own ideas about what life will be like in the future. Perhaps we'll be able to control **devices⁽¹⁾** with our eyes or travel in planes that go into space ... But what will **education⁽²⁾** be like? Dr Leila Hamed, an **expert⁽³⁾** in education and technology, is here to tell us more.
So, Dr Leila Hamed. How do you think education will be different in the future?

Dr Leila : Well, **recently⁽⁴⁾**, all students have been doing more **online learning⁽⁵⁾**. And I'm sure that they'll do more of their learning this way in the future.

Interviewer : So what are the **advantages⁽⁶⁾** of online learning?

Dr Leila : The great thing about online learning is that you don't need lots and lots of books, so you can work anywhere. Students will be able to complete a school project **wherever⁽⁷⁾** they are. And they won't be able to lose their homework!

Interviewer : **That's true!⁽⁸⁾** ... And what kind of new technology could we see in the classroom?

١- اجهزة
٢- التعليم
٣- خبير
٤- حديثاً - مؤخراً
٥- التعلم عبر الانترنت
٦- مزايا
٧- أينما
٨- هذا صحيح

Dr Leila : I think **3D printers**⁽⁹⁾ will be very important in the future. Students will be able to use these to make **all kinds of things**.

Interviewer : So will they be able to **print**⁽¹⁰⁾ anything they like?

Dr Leila : No, they won't be able to print very large things or objects made from certain **materials**,⁽¹¹⁾ but they will be able to print **models**⁽¹²⁾ and even make their own designs.

Interviewer : Great! ... I've heard that some places, such as restaurants, shops and even hospitals are starting to use robot **assistants**⁽¹³⁾. Do you think that we could use robot assistants in schools?

Dr Leila : No, I don't think so. I think that in future, robots will help with simple jobs in some places, but it would be very difficult to make a robot that could teach a lesson! So, I don't think that we will see robots in the classroom.

Interviewer : **That's a pity**⁽¹⁴⁾. It would be fun to have a robot teacher!

Dr Leila : Well, lessons in the future will **definitely**⁽¹⁵⁾ be fun! Teachers already use the internet for videos and **educational**⁽¹⁶⁾ games. In the future, it's going to be even more exciting. Students will be able to use **virtual reality**⁽¹⁷⁾ to discover new things or explore places that are far away or that existed in the past.

Interviewer : So you think that in a history lesson, students will be able to visit ancient Egypt?

Dr Leila : Yes, they will! Of course, the students won't be able to **taste**⁽¹⁸⁾ the food or smell the flowers, but they will be able to see the people and places.

Interviewer : That does **sound**⁽¹⁹⁾ exciting! ... But what about **traditional**⁽²⁰⁾ teaching? Will students still listen to the teacher and answer questions? Will they do talks, projects and **presentations**?⁽²¹⁾

Dr Leila : Yes, of course! These things will always be important. It's the teacher's job to present the lesson and make sure that students **understand**⁽²²⁾. But technology will help to make them more exciting.

Interviewer : Well, it's been really interesting talking to you, Dr Leila Hamed. Thank you!

Dr Leila : You're welcome.

- ٩- طباعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
- ١٠- يطبع
- ١١- مواد
- ١٢- نماذج
- ١٣- مساعدين
- ١٤- هذا مؤسف
- ١٥- بالتأكيد
- ١٦- تعليمي
- ١٧- الواقع الافتراضي
- ١٨- يتذوق
- ١٩- يبدو
- ٢٠- تقليدي
- ٢١- عروض تقديمية
- ٢٢- يفهم



Reading

SB Page (56)

THE TECHNOLOGY OF TOMORROW

Here are three things that could be part of our lives in the future.

Floating farms

One of the biggest problems we will have in the future is how to **feed**⁽¹⁾ the world. As the **population**⁽²⁾ grows and **sea levels**⁽³⁾ rise, we won't be able to grow the food we need on the **farmland**⁽⁴⁾ we have. One **solution**⁽⁵⁾ is to build **floating farms**⁽⁶⁾ on the sea. The farms will have **solar panels**⁽⁷⁾ so they will be able to **produce**⁽⁸⁾ their own electricity.

Energy shirts

Have you heard of a shirt that can **charge**⁽⁹⁾ your phone? Scientists have made a new **fabric**⁽¹⁰⁾ that produce electricity as it moves. This means that we'll be able to charge our devices as we run or walk outside.

Robot assistants

When we go to hospital in the future, we may see doctors, nurses ... and robots! During the **coronavirus pandemic**⁽¹¹⁾, robot assistants worked in hospitals in **Rwanda**⁽¹²⁾. They checked people's **temperatures**⁽¹³⁾, collected information and even reminded people to wear **masks**⁽¹⁴⁾! More importantly, they helped to keep hospital workers safe.



- ١- يطعم
- ٢- تعداد السكان
- ٣- مستوى سطح البحر
- ٤- أرض زراعية
- ٥- حل
- ٦- مزارع عائمة
- ٧- ألواح شمسية
- ٨- ينتج
- ٩- يشحن
- ١٠- قماش
- ١١- جائحة كورونا
- ١٢- دولة رواندا
- ١٣- درجات الحرارة
- ١٤- كمادات

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A/An is electric equipment that can do a special job. WB
 a. device b. office c. mask d. price
2. A/An is a way to solve a problem or answer a puzzle or a question. WB
 a. farmland b. challenge c. solution d. passport
3. A is a special place where people can cycle on roads.
 a. solution b. farm c. rail d. cycle lane
4. A / An is a machine that can make copies of whole objects.
 a. GPS b. 3D printer c. CV d. MP3 player

5. A/ An _____ is a person whose job is to design or work with robots
 a. volunteer b. robotics engineer c. accountant d. sports person
6. A _____ is a person who is admired by many people for doing something brave or good.
 a. hero b. mask c. robot d. dream
7. _____ learning is education or teaching that you can have on the internet
 a. Offline b. Face to face c. School d. Online
8. A/An _____ is somebody who helps a person do their job.
 a. assistant b. sports person c. expert d. robot teacher
9. A/An _____ car is a self-driving, or robotic, car that can travel without human input. Longman
 a. eyeless b. old c. driverless d. traditional

Synonyms & Antonyms

10. The antonym of the word "dangerous" is _____. بؤرسعید 2022
 a. safe b. different c. harmful d. serious
11. "Heroic" is similar in meaning to _____.
 a. brave b. secure c. cowardly d. manual
12. The antonym of the word "manual" is "_____".
 a. local b. safe c. exciting d. robotic
13. The verb "rise" means _____.
 a. decrease b. go down c. sink d. increase
14. The word "disappear" is the opposite of _____.
 a. large b. vanish c. appear d. important
15. The kids watched as the coin sank to the bottom of the pool. "sink" is an antonym of _____.
 a. appear b. swim c. come d. float

Prefixes & Suffixes

16. To get the adjective from the word "hero", We add the suffix _____. الدقهلية 2023
 a. -ment b. -ly c. -ic d. -ful
17. The verb "print" is turned into a noun by adding the suffix _____. الأقصر 2022
 a. -or b. -er c. -able d. -ful
18. The prefix "_____" means "electronic".
 a. e- b. inter- c. un- d. re-
19. We get the noun from "predict" by adding the suffix _____.
 a. -er b. -ly c. -ion d. -ion

Guessing the meaning

20. The toy moves like a robot. This means it is
 a. robotic b. heroic c. safe d. protected
21. Omar always cycles at the side of the road. He always uses the
 a. 3D printer b. cycle lane c. electric bus d. energy shirt
22. In the future, there will be electric buses. This means they will use
 a. electricity b. oil c. water d. wind
23. Rafeek wanted to find a to the problem.
 a. solution b. solve c. pollution d. question
24. During the Coronavirus pandemic, people had to wear
 a. musk b. masks c. stick d. scarfs
25. The current of Egypt is about 115 million people. Longman
 a. regulation b. pollution c. cultivation d. population



Language

1- The Future Simple "revision"

Form التكوين

يتكون زمن المستقبل البسيط كالآتي :

will + inf. + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

١- يستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل مع عدم وجود دليل على ذلك.

Ex. In the future, we **will use** renewable energy.Ex. Someone is at the door. **I'll** open it.

٢- يستخدم في اتخاذ القرارات السريعة.

٣- يستخدم في العرض والطلب.

Ex. **Will** you **help** me, please? (request طلب)Ex. I **will help** you. (offer عرض)Ex. My sister **will be** 15 next year.

٤- يستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق في المستقبل.

Negative النفي

نفي زمن المستقبل البسيط كالآتي :

won't (will not) + inf. + فاعل

Ex. E-sports are popular, but they **won't be** more popular than football.

Question السؤال

Will + فاعل + inf...?

السؤال بهل

Ex. **Will** Heba **arrive** tonight?

will + فاعل + inf...? (كلمة استفهام)

السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Ex. **When will** she **change** this old car?

Key words الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow	غداً	next (week/month..etc.) القادم (.. الشهر)	الأُسبوع / الشهر
in the future	في المستقبل	one day	يوماً ما
in + سنة قادمة (in 2030)	في سنة	by + سنة قادمة (by 2050)	
soon	قريباً		

2- The ability in the future with " will / won't be able to "

- نستخدم (will / won't be able to) للحديث عن القدرة في المستقبل:

Form التكوين

(مصدر الفعل) will be able to + fاعل

- Ex.** In the future, the floating farms will be able to make their own electricity.
Ex. Scientists will be able to find good solutions to the challenges of the future.
Ex. We won't be able to grow the food we need on the farmland we have.

Question السؤال

Will + فاعل + be able to + inf...?

السؤال بهل

Ex. Will 3D printers be able to print large objects?

السؤال بكلمة استفهام will + فاعل + be able to + inf...? (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. What will floating farms be able to produce?

Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

- Nawal hopes that she (able) work as an engineer when she's older. **SB**
- In the future, I think we (will able) to produce electricity in lots of different ways. **SB**
- It's very windy, so we (don't) be able to go to the beach today. **WB**
- My baby sister is six months old, so she will be able (starting) speaking in about a year's time. **WB**
- In the future, more people (learn) online. المنومية 2022
- How big (Cairo be) in 2050? فلنا 2022
- It's raining, we (be) able to go out today. الأمصر 2022

Longman Exercises

8. Do you think it (rained) tomorrow?
9. I am not sure our team will (wins) the match.
10. Dalia hopes she will be able (of passing) the final exam.
11. (We will) be able to solve the problem of pollution?
12. I (will) go to school tomorrow because I'm very sick.
13. Do you think we (be able) solve the problem of unemployment in the future?

Longman

Bit by Bit Exercises

14. She always studies hard. She (able) pass the next exam.
15. Next Sunday, I will be able (see) the new fountains in the park.
16. (We will) travel to space one day?
17. What places will she (visits) when she travels to Paris?
18. If you don't study well, you (will) be able to find a good job.
19. She (is) do the shopping for her mother tomorrow.
20. (You will be able) to travel abroad when you finish your university?
21. The teacher is sorry. She (doesn't) be able to help them.
22. Hamid can't find his passport. He (able/ travel) to the business meeting in England tomorrow.
23. By 2100, 95 percent of people (live) in tall buildings.



Speaking

Making predictions

عمل تنبؤات

لعمل تنبؤات في المستقبل نستخدم الآتي:

- I think.....will + inf.

- أعتقد أن.....سوف.....

- I think.....won't + inf.

- أعتقد أن.....لن.....

Ex. In the future, I think there **will be** new types of transport**Ex.** I think our cities will be bigger, but they won't have as much traffic.**Ex.** I think that more people **will ride** bikes in the future. We **won't have** as many cars on the road.**Ex.** By 2100, 95 percent of people **will live** in tall buildings.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1&2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samar and Randa are talking about schools in the future.

Samar : How do you think schools will be in the future, Randa?

Randa : ①

Samar : Will online learning be better?

Randa : ②

Samar : ③?

Randa : We will be able to do our homework online everywhere.

Samar : ④?

Randa : Yes, I think we can communicate with our teachers on social media.

Samar : ⑤

Randa : Of course, that will be enjoyable.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

ride - will - drive - solution - won't - lanes

Scientists have a lot of expectations for the future. They expect they will find a ① to the problem of pollution. The government will build new cycle ② People ③ do a lot of things to have a cleaner environment. They will ④ modern, fast bikes and plant more trees to reduce pollution.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

WB

1. A/An is a special place where people can cycle on roads.

- a. platform b. floating farm c. cycle lane d. airport

2. A/An is a machine or equipment for a particular job.

- a. device b. office c. advice d. price

3. If you throw a piece of wood into water, it floats." Float" is an antonym for ".....".

Longman

- a. appear b. swim c. sink d. come

4. Prices are rising all over the world. "Rise" here is similar in meaning to ".....".

Longman

- a. improve b. move c. decrease d. increase

5. Electric machines are used everywhere. When we add the suffix “-ity”, to “electric”, we change it into a/an “_____”.

Longman

- a. verb b. adjective c. noun d. adverb

6. He expects that Al-Ahly will win the next match. This means he is making a _____.

- a. prediction b. contribution c. invention d. discovery

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There will be lots of challenges in the future, but scientists _____ (be able) find good solutions to some of them. **SB**

2. What _____ (is) the weather be like tomorrow? **WB**

3. Do you think we _____ (be able to) live on the moon in the future? Longman

4. I'm sure you _____ (will) be able to lift the heavy box; I will help you. Longman

5. Farms _____ (able) make their own electricity in the future.

السويس 2024

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of schools in the future."

الدقهلية 2022

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

- يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What do you think we will have at schools in the future?
- Do you think we will be able to use 3D printers?
- Do you think we will use the virtual reality?
- What do you think we won't be able to use?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- In the future, we will have at schools.
- We will be able to
- We will not be able to

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58-60 WB pages 110-111

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



skill	مهارة	university	جامعة
sports team	فريق رياضي	volunteer	متطوع
professional	محترف / مهني	set up	يؤسس / ينشئ
professional qualification	تأهيل مهني	monorail	قطار معلق أحادي القضبان
internship	تدريب عملي	district	حي سكني - مقاطعة
distance	مسافة	cashless	غير نقدي
marathon	ماراثون (سباق مسافات طويلة)	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
online course	دورة تعليمية عبر الإنترنت	train (ed)	يتدرب

jobs وظائف

business person	رجل اعمال	mechanic	ميكانيكي
engineer	مهندس	architect	مهندس معماري
sports person	شخص رياضي	accountant	محاسب



Vocabulary

dream	حلم	administrative capital	عاصمة إدارية
apartment	شقة	ambition	طموح
technical schools	مدارس فنية	charity	جمعية خيرية
experience	خبرة	rainwater	مياه الأمطار
public transport	مواصلات عامة	race	سباق
disabled	معاق (من ذوي الهمم)	achieve (d)	يحقق / ينجز
disability (ies)	إعاقة	create (d)	يُنشئ
IT = information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات	link (ed)	يربط
expert	خبير	connect (ed)	يصل / يربط



Definitions

distance	مسافة	how much space ⁽¹⁾ is between two things
marathon	ماراثون	a running race ⁽²⁾ of around 42 kilometres
monorail	قطار معلق أحادي القضبان	a railway ⁽³⁾ system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground.
district	حي سكني	an area of a town, city or the countryside ⁽⁴⁾ .

- ١- مساحة / فراغ
- ٢- سباق جري
- ٣- سكة حديد
- ٤- الريف

cashless	غير نقدي	- done or working without using cash - done without using money you can hold	هـ - قدرة
internship	تدريب عملي	when you work, often without pay, to learn about a job	
set up	يؤسس	start a business	
skill	مهارة	the ability ⁽⁵⁾ to do something well	
professional qualification	تأهيل مهني	something that shows you have special training to do a job	
train	يتدرب	to prepare for a sports event by exercising	

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
professional	مُحترف	skilful		amateur	هاو
pass	يجتاز	succeed in		fail	يفشل
important	مهم	necessary		unimportant	غير مهم
smart	ذكي	intelligent		stupid	غبى
cashless	غير نقدي	without using money		cash	نقداً
set up	يؤسس	start		end / finish	ينهى / ينتهى
expert	خبير	skilful		inexpert	غير خبير

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
mono-	one تضاف قبل الاسم تعني "أحادي"	mono rail قطار معلق أحادي القطبان
re-	again تفيد إعادة الفعل مرة أخرى	reuse / redo / rewrite يعيد استخدام / يعيد فعل / يعيد كتابة
dis-	opposite تفيد عكس المعنى	dis abilities إعاقات
-ant	person تُكون اسم الفاعل	account ant محاسب
-al	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	professional al / technical al مُحترف/فني
-ion	n تَكُون الاسم	qualifica tion مؤهل
-ship		intern ship تدريب عملي
-less	without تعطى معنى "بدون"	cash less / driver less غير نقدي / بدون سائق
-ity	adj → n تحول الصفة إلى اسم	abili ty / disabili ty قدرة/إعاقة

Expressions & Prepositions

set goals	يحدد أهداف	reuse rainwater	يعيد استخدام مياه المطر
achieve goals	يحقق أهداف	pass through	يمر عبر
get a qualification	يحصل على مؤهل	link the city to	يربط المدينة بـ
set up a business	يؤسس شركة	walk round in	يتجول في
do marathon	يشارك في ماراثون	connect..... with	يوصل.....بـ
do an internship	يؤدي تدريب عملي	with disabilities	ذوي الاعاقة
do an online course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية عبر الانترنت		

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

set up	يؤسس	set up	set up
rewrite	يعيد كتابة	rewrote	rewritten
burn	يحرق	burned / burnt	burned / burnt



Language Notes

1) would ('d) like / like

• 'd like + to + inf / noun

يريد أن

Ex. Ex. I would ('d) like to have some tea.

Ex. I would like some tea.

• like + to + inf. / v.ing / noun

يحب

Ex. I like to play tennis.

Ex. I like playing tennis.

Ex. I like tennis.

• (be) like يشبه - يبدو

Ex. Samir is just like his father, he loves to play tennis.

Ex. What will the weather be like tomorrow?

2) dream / plan

• dream (ed) (n)

يحلم - حلم

Ex. My dream is to be rich.

Ex. I dream of living by the sea.

• plan (ed) (n)

يخطط - خطة

Ex. Do you plan for your future?

Ex. Do you have a future plan?

- لاحظ بعض الكلمات تستخدم كأفعال واسماء:

• dream job

وظيفة الأحلام

Ex. Noura's dream job is to become a robotics engineer.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Magid _____ to be a doctor in the future.
a. like b. 'd like c. 'll like d. liking
- Omar likes _____ to the cinema every weekend.
a. going b. goes c. to going d. went
- Ali works hard to achieve his _____.
a. draws b. drinks c. dreams d. drives



Audioscript

SB Page (58)

استمع إلى النصوص



Narrator : Taha.

Taha : First of all,⁽¹⁾ I want to finish my **education**⁽²⁾ and do well in my exams. But when I leave school, I don't want to become a business person or an **accountant**.⁽³⁾ My dream is to become a **professional**⁽⁴⁾ basketball player. I've been playing basketball since I was six and I love it. I play for my local team. I practise every evening, because I want to **improve**⁽⁵⁾ my skills. My **ambition**⁽⁶⁾ is to join the **national team**⁽⁷⁾ and play for my country.

Narrator : Fatma.

Fatma : My ambition is to become an **architect**⁽⁸⁾. I think it would be amazing to look at buildings in a city that I had designed. I know it won't be easy, so I'm going to work very hard. I need to pass my exams to go to university. When I've finished university, I'm going to get an **internship**⁽⁹⁾ with a good **company**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Narrator : Khaled.

Khaled : I love computers, so when I finish school, I'd like to work for an **IT**⁽¹¹⁾ company. I'm going to do an online course to get some **professional**⁽¹²⁾ **qualifications**.⁽¹³⁾ That will mean that I can get a really good job one day. I could even **set up**⁽¹⁴⁾ my own **business**⁽¹⁵⁾ one day!

- ١- في البداية
- ٢- تعليم
- ٣- محاسب
- ٤- محترف
- ٥- يحسن - يطور
- ٦- طموح
- ٧- الفريق الوطني
- ٨- مهندس معماري
- ٩- فترة تدريبية
- ١٠- شركة
- ١١- تكنولوجيا
- ١٢- المعلومات
- ١٣- مهني / محترف
- ١٤- مؤهلات
- ١٥- يؤسس
- ١٦- شركة / عمل تجاري

Narrator : Malak.

Malak : I'm not sure what I want to do when I'm older, but I'd like to do something to help other people or to help protect the environment. I think it's important to get a good education so I'd like to go to university, but I'm also going to work as a **volunteer**⁽¹⁶⁾. I think it will be a good way to **find out**⁽¹⁷⁾ more about what kind of job I want and to meet new people.

١٦- متطوع
١٧- يكتشف

WB Page (109)

1

Injy : I'm Injy. I know which job I want to do. I'm going to study very hard for many years, but when I finish, I'll get a good job. I'm going to design some amazing buildings. They'll all use **renewable energy**⁽¹⁾.

١- طاقة متجددة
٢- من المحتمل
٣- اجدادي
٤- آلات
٥- تدفع
٦- جمعية خيرية

2

Hany : My name's Hany. I'm also going to study hard for many years. I want to learn how to help people who are sick. I think this is a really important job. I'll **probably**⁽²⁾ work in a hospital.

3

Hoda : I'm Hoda. When I was little, my **grandparents**⁽³⁾ bought me a toy. It could walk and talk! I'm going to do a job which will make toys like this even better in the future. I'm going to design **machines**⁽⁴⁾ that will walk and talk and also be able to help people do things.

4

Amir : I'm Amir. Before I take a job that **pays**⁽⁵⁾ me, I'm going to do something to help people. There are many people who do not have homes or enough to eat. I'm going to help a **charity**⁽⁶⁾ that makes these people's lives better.



Reading

SB Page (17)

My goals for the future

By Hussein

I love maths and science, so when I leave Preparatory school, I'd like to go to a **technology school**⁽¹⁾. My dream is to become a robotics engineer.

Robotics engineers can **create**⁽²⁾ anything from machines for hospitals to robots that go into **space**⁽³⁾.

١- مدرسة تكنولوجيا
٢- ينشئ
٣- الفضاء

Technology schools help students with the **skills**⁽⁴⁾ that I will need to work well with this technology, although it won't be easy. You need to pass a test to get into a technical school. Students who are **successful**⁽⁵⁾, often work in **factories**⁽⁶⁾ and **businesses**⁽⁷⁾ to get **experience**⁽⁸⁾, and often get jobs there when they leave school.

Sport is also a big part of my life. I like playing handball and football, but my favourite sport is running. I'm in **a local team**⁽⁹⁾ and we usually run 10 kilometres per day, but we're going to train to run **longer distances**⁽¹⁰⁾. I'd love to do the Egyptian **marathon**⁽¹¹⁾ when I'm old enough.

Finally, I want to do something to help other people. When I'm older, I'm going to work as a volunteer at weekends.

There is a children's hospital near my **apartment**⁽¹²⁾. Volunteers go to the hospital to read to the children and play games with them. I think that would be a great thing to do, so I'm going to ask how I can help.

- ٤- مهارات
- ٥- ناجح
- ٦- مصانع
- ٧- شركات
- ٨- خبرة
- ٩- فريق محلي
- ١٠- مسافة أطول
- ١١- ماراثون
- ١٢- شقة

Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة (الإجابة أسفل)

- The text is about
 - Hussein's ambitions
 - Hussein's parents
 - Hussein's problems
 - Hussein's experiences
- Infer from the text why Hussein would like to be a robotics engineer.
- Where do students at technical schools often work?

Writing Skill (جمل تساعد في كتابة الموضوع الانشائي)

- حلمي أن أصبح مهندس روبوتات.
- يستطيع مهندس الروبوتات إنشاء أي شيء من الآلات.
- أريد أن أفعل شيئاً لمساعدة الآخرين.
- عندما أكبر، سأعمل كمطوع في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع.

- Hussein's ambitions.
- Because robotics engineers can create anything from machines for hospitals to robots that go into space.
- In factories and businesses to get experience.

Answers

Our cities of the future

Africa's **population**⁽¹⁾ is growing quickly. **Experts**⁽²⁾ believe that by 2050, there will be twice as many people in Africa as there are today. Many African countries are planning exciting new cities, where people can live, work and study. What will these cities of the future be like?

New Administrative Capital

My country is planning for a new **administrative capital**⁽³⁾ in the desert, east of Cairo. The New Administrative Capital is going to have modern universities, offices and hotels. There will be a **monorail**⁽⁴⁾ passing through the business **districts**⁽⁵⁾. **Electric trains**⁽⁶⁾ will **link**⁽⁷⁾ the city to other cities around Egypt. The city is designed to work with smart technology. Roofs will be covered in **solar panels**⁽⁸⁾. The shops will be **cashless**⁽⁹⁾, and they will have more green spaces to walk round in the city.

Dalia, 15, Egypt.

Diamniadio Lake City

My country is planning an amazing new city: Diamniadio Lake City. It will have modern apartments, offices, hotels, **shopping centres**⁽¹⁰⁾ and sports stadiums. There will be schools and universities. A new train will connect the new city with our capital city, Dakar, so people will be able to travel between the cities easily.

Oumar, 16, Senegal

The Green City Kigali

I live in the capital city of Rwanda, Kigali. It's a beautiful city and a lot of people come here to live. Now, there is a **plan**⁽¹¹⁾ to create a new part of the city: Green City Kigali. The buildings will use renewable energy and reuse **rainwater**⁽¹²⁾. There will be cycle lanes and good **public transport**⁽¹³⁾, but it will also be easy to walk around the city. I think there will be lots of cities like this in Africa one day.

Alice, 15, Rwanda

- ١- تعداد السكان
- ٢- خبراء
- ٣- عاصمة إدارية
- ٤- قطار معلق أحادي القضبان
- ٥- مناطق / أحياء
- ٦- قطارات تعمل بالكهرباء
- ٧- يربط
- ٨- ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
- ٩- غير نقدي
- ١٠- مراكز التسوق
- ١١- خطة
- ١٢- مياه الأمطار
- ١٣- مواصلات عامة

I'm good with numbers, so I'm going to get a good job with a business in Cairo. I'll probably do an internship first. But this is an important job. All businesses need to know how much money they have! That's why I'm going to be an accountant.

Cities of the future

What will cities be like in the future? Architects are already planning how city life could be better for all of us. Here are some of their ideas.

١- يجمع
٢- ذاتية القيادة
٣- إعاقة

Cities need water, but at the moment, most rainwater is taken away from our cities. In the future, cities will have areas which will **collect**⁽¹⁾ water when it rains. Then people will be able to use the water for plants, cleaning, etc.

Cities will have houses for many people, but they will also have big parks. The trees and other plants will give us clean air, and also give a home to animals and birds. There will also be city farms. People will grow their own food in gardens on roofs.

The city will only use renewable energy. This won't come from outside the city, but will be made by solar panels and wind turbines on buildings.

Transport will be very fast, safe and cheap. Cars will be **driverless**⁽²⁾. That means there will be more space for walk or cycle. People will be healthier, and life will be easier for people with **disabilities**⁽³⁾.

Videoscript

SB Page 60

More than five years ago, the **government**⁽¹⁾ decided to build a **new capital**⁽²⁾ city in Egypt. It is going to **be located**⁽³⁾ east of Cairo. The government wanted to **create**⁽⁴⁾ this new city because the **population**⁽⁵⁾ of Egypt is very big, and it is growing. In the future, there will be more people who want to live in cities like Cairo, Alexandria and Giza.

١- الحكومة
٢- عاصمة جديدة
٣- تقع
٤- ينشئ
٥- تعداد السكان
٦- مساكن
٧- دار الأوبرا
٨- يدفع
٩- يتجول

The new city will have **homes for**⁽⁶⁾ more than six million people. These people will be able to visit parks, shops, an **opera house**⁽⁷⁾ and restaurants. There will also be jobs for these people. Lots of people will be able to work here because the government and many businesses will move here.

The new city is going to be a smart city. This means that it will use technology to do a lot of things, such as control traffic, control the energy that people use and make the city a safe place to live.

People will be able to use this technology to do many everyday things. For example, if you want to buy something in the shops, you won't need money. You will be able to use your phone to **pay for**⁽⁸⁾ things. And if you want to **get around**⁽⁹⁾ the city, you will be able to use a monorail. A monorail is a train that often travels above the ground.

Will you live and work in the new capital city when you are older?

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

1. A _____ is a running race of around 42 kilometres. WB
 a. district b. qualification c. marathon d. skill
2. A/An _____ is when you work, often without pay, to learn about a job. WB
 a. internship b. charity c. skill d. course
3. A _____ is how much space is between two things WB
 a. disability b. distance c. district d. skill
4. A _____ is the ability to do something well. WB
 a. device b. skill c. disability d. dream
5. A professional _____ is something that shows you have special training to do a job. WB
 a. distance b. link c. ambition d. qualification
6. A/An _____ is a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground. Longman
 a. monorail b. lane c. train d. airport
7. A _____ is an area of a town, city or the countryside. Longman
 a. continent b. city c. lane d. district

Synonyms & Antonyms

8. The word "cashless" is a synonym of "_____".
 a. money b. paying in cash
 c. without using money d. in cash
9. The word "smart" is similar in meaning to the word "_____".
 a. different b. intelligent c. stupid d. disabled
10. Khaled would like to set up his own business. "Set up" is a synonym of "_____".
 a. connect b. link c. protect d. start
11. The opposite of "important" is _____.
 a. necessary b. unimportant c. public d. stupid
12. _____ is an antonym of the word "professional".
 a. Stupid b. Private c. Amateur d. Cruel
13. "Disability" and "Inability" have _____ meanings.
 a. one b. the same c. synonymous d. different



14. To "create" and to "make" are

- a. synonyms b. antonyms c. suffixes d. opposites

Prefixes & Suffixes

15. Rewrite your composition. The prefix "re-" means to do it

الإسماعيلية / جنوب سيناء 2022

- a. next b. first c. again d. last

16. The suffix is added to the word "cash" to mean "without."

- a. -less b. -ness c. -tion d. -ity

17. The prefix "mono-" means ".....".

- a. two b. one c. plural d. no one

18. We use the suffix "....." to turn "profession" into an adjective.

- a. -ness b. -al c. -into d. -ian

19. The word "abilities" is turned into the opposite by adding the prefix ".....".

- a. dis- b. de- c. im- d. ir-

20. The adjective from the word "success" can be formed by adding the suffix ".....".

- a. -ment b. -ful c. -tion d. -ness

Guessing the meaning

21. He is good with numbers so he wants to be a/an

SB

- a. accountant b. farmer
c. doctor d. professional person

22. Tarek is a skilful accountant. This means that he has qualifications.

- a. local b. usual c. professional d. manual

23. I was tired after the marathon. This means that I ran a long

- a. skill b. distance c. goal d. experience

24. Khaled is going to do a/an to get some professional qualifications.
One day, he would like to do his own business.

كفر الشيخ 2022

- a. professional b. internship c. volunteer d. online

25. There are four in English: listening, speaking, reading and writing.

- a. skulls b. skills c. snacks d. snakes



Language

Future with (be) going to:

- نستخدم (be going to) للحديث عن الخطط التي قمنا بإعدادها أو الأشياء التي قررنا القيام بها في المستقبل.

Form التكوين

فاعل + am / is / are (not) + going to + inf

- Ex. When I'm older, I'm going to work as a volunteer at weekends.
 Ex. Khaled is going to do an internship to get some professional qualifications.
 Ex. She's going to work as a volunteer as she wants to help people.
 Ex. They are not (aren't) going to watch the match tonight.

Question السؤال

Am / is / Are + فاعل + going to + inf...?

السؤال بهل

- Ex. Is he going to do an internship?
 Ex. Are you going to work as a volunteer?

(كلمة استفهام) + am / is / are + فاعل + going to + inf...?

السؤال بكلمة استفهام

- Ex. What are you going to do when you finish university?
 Ex. What is Amr going to do at the weekend?

Keywords

الكلمات الدالة

I have planned	خطت	It's my plan	إنها خطتي
I have decided	قررت	It's my decision	إنه قراري
I intend	أنوي	It's my intention	إنها نيتي

Exercises on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams


- When I've finished university, I'm (go) to get an internship with a good company. **SB**
- He (going) to work as a volunteer. **SB**
- Omar is going to (studies) very hard. **SB**
- (You are) going to work as a volunteer at weekends? **SB**
- Injy (is going) be an architect. **WB**
- Which jobs (they are) going to do? **WB**

7. Mona (travel) to Cairo next Friday . It's her intention. السويس 2022

Longman Exercises

8. What do you intend to do tomorrow? - I (will) visit my uncle in Tanta.
 9. I (spend) the holiday in Hurghada as planned.
 10. We (going) to buy a bigger house in our village.
 11. He (will) complete his study abroad, as he decided.
 12. I (am going to) Alexandria next month; this is my plan.
 13. What (you are) going to study when you join the university?

Bit by Bit Exercises

14. The new city (will) be a smart city as planned.
 15. He (is going) to go to the party because he is too busy.
 16. When (he is) going to come to the meeting?
 17. Ahmed (going design) some amazing buildings.
 18. Is your brother (going) travel soon?
 19. We (not going have) dinner together tomorrow.
 20. Which athlete (going to) win the race?
 21. I (design) machines that will walk and talk. It's my intention. 
 22. I (become) a famous teacher one day.
 23. I'm good with numbers, so I (get) a job with a business soon.

Speaking

Discussing personal goals

مناقشة الأهداف الشخصية

Question

1. What's your dream job?
 - ما هي وظيفة أحلامك؟
 2. What can you do to achieve your dream job?
 - ماذا يمكنك فعله لتحقيق وظيفة أحلامك؟
 3. What are your other goals?
 - ما هي أهدافك الأخرى؟
 4. What can you do to get your dream job?
 - ماذا يمكنك فعله لتتعال وظيفة أحلامك؟

Answer

- My dream job is to be a robotics engineer.
 - وظيفة أحلامي هي أن أصبح مهندس روبوتات.
 - I can go to a technical school.
 - يمكنني أن التحق بمدرسة فنية.
 - I want to be a successful person.
 - أحلم بأن أكون شخص ناجحاً.
 - I have to work hard to achieve my goals.
 - يجب أن أعمل بجد حتى أحقق أهدافي.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3& 4



أسبوع 2024

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Fareeda is asking Zeina about her future job.

Fareeda : What would you like to be?

Zeina : ①

Fareeda : I think teaching is a hard job.

Zeina : ② However, I enjoy it.

Fareeda : ③

Zeina : I'd like to teach English.

Fareeda : ④

Zeina : I can improve my English by listening to English speakers.

Fareeda : I wish you good luck.

Zeina : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

Administrative - will be - is - population - districts - pollution

Africa's ① is growing quickly. I think there ② twice as many people as there are today. Many African countries are planning exciting new cities like the New ③ Capital in Egypt. It will have modern universities. There will be a monorail passing through the business ④

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

WB

1. To means to start a business.

- a. set up b. sit down c. train d. stand up

2. A is a long race of about 26 miles or 42 kilometres.

Longman

- a. speed b. marathon c. competition d. way

3. The antonym of the verb "pass" is ".....".

- a. fail b. succeed in c. improve d. increase

4. We use the suffix with the word "able" to give the noun.

- a. -ity b. -less c. -al d. -ion




5. My mother has a special skill in making dresses. This means she is a/an at making them.

- a. student b. trader c. trainee d. expert

6. He designs buildings and advises on their construction. He is a/an Longman

- a. architect b. builder c. doctor d. trader

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Talia speaks Japanese, so she (be able) to apply for the job in Tokyo. WB
2. Adam has hurt his leg, so he (will) be able to play football on Saturday. WB
3. The visitors to the zoo won't be able to (feeding) the monkeys. WB
4. I'm good with numbers, so I'm going (get) a good job with a business in Cairo.
5. I (do) an online course to get some professional qualifications. It's my plan. 
6. When I'm older, I'm (gone) to help the disabled at weekends. كفر الشيخ 2022
7. A: There's no sugar. B: Really! I (get) some from the shop. 
8. A: There's no sugar. B: I know! I (get) some from the shop. 

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of life in the future"

القاهرة / هنا 2022

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

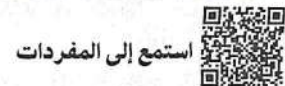
- يمكن من خلال الإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

- What is the article about?
- What will cities be like in the future?
- What about houses in the future?
- Do architects plan for that?
- Will transport be faster?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- The article was about.....
- Architects are already planning how.....
- Cities will have houses for many.....
- Transport will be.....

Key Vocabulary



spacecraft
drone
flying cars
perhaps

مركبة فضاء
طائرة بدون طيار
سيارات طائرة
ربما

definitely
controls (n)
law
likely

بالتأكيد
أدوات / مفاتيح التحكم
قانون
محتمل



Vocabulary

testing
everywhere
passenger
impossible
helicopter
engine
completely
probably
positive

تجربة - اختبار
في كل مكان
راكب
مستحيل
طائرة مروحية
محرك - موتور
بالكامل
من المحتمل
إيجابي

negative
conclusion
road signs
rule
improve (d)
affect (ed)
damage (d)
follow (ed)

سلبى
خاتمة
لافتات الطريق
قاعدة - قانون
يُحسن - يطور
يؤثر على
يتلف
يتبع



Definitions

controls (n) أدوات / مفاتيح التحكم	things used to operate ⁽¹⁾ a vehicle ⁽²⁾ or a machine	١- يشغل ٢- مركبة
likely محتمل	probably going to happen or probably true	٣- أكيد
probably من المحتمل	almost certain ⁽³⁾	٤- بالتأكيد
definitely بالتأكيد	certainly ⁽⁴⁾ , without any doubt ⁽⁵⁾	٥- شك
law قانون	the rules that people in a country or place must follow	
drone طائرة بدون طيار	a type of aircraft that doesn't have a pilot.	

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym/opposite	المضاد
positive	إيجابي	good		negative	سلبى
agree	يوافق	accept		disagree	يرفض
sure	متأكد	certain		unsure	غير متأكد
different	مختلف	various		the same	نفس الشيء
improve	يُحسن - يُنمي	develop		damage	يتلف
take off	تقلع الطائرة	fly		land	تهبط
definitely	بالتأكيد	certainly		uncertainly	بشكل غير مؤكد

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Examples
dis-	opposite تعطي عكس المعنى	dis agree
im-		im possible
-ly	adj → adv تحول الصفة إلى الحال	definitel ly / probabl ly / likel ly
-ment	v → n تحول الفعل إلى الاسم	equip ment
-ful	v/n → adj تحول الفعل/الاسم إلى الصفة	use ful
-ous	n → adj تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	danger ous

Expressions & Prepositions

make sure	يتأكد	have a holiday	يأخذ اجازة
make less pollution	يحدث تلوث أقل	to begin with	بدايةً
make laws	يصدر قوانين	land on	تهبط على
do lots of testing	يجري تجارب كثيرة	in conclusion	ختامًا
follow rules	يتبع قوانين	at the earliest	على أقرب تقدير / في موعد أدناه
become worse	يصبح أسوأ	far away	بعيد



Language Notes

① • look for / look forward to

- **look for** يبحث عن (شخص / شيء)

Ex. I lost my English book, so I **looked for** it everywhere.

- **look forward to + (V.ing / noun)**

يتطلع إلى / يتوق إلى

Ex. My uncle is coming back from Canada, that's why I **look forward to meeting** him.

② • another / other / others

- **another** (آخر / إضافي / مختلف)
ويأتي بعدها اسم مفرد يُعد

Ex. My brother has bought **another car**.

Ex. Would you like **another cup** of coffee?

- **other** (الآخر / الآخرون / الباقون)
ويأتي بعدها اسم جمع

Ex. There will be **other forms** of energy in the future.

- **others** (آخرون) ولا يأتي بعدها اسم ولكن يأتي بعدها فعل ، ويمكن أن تأتي آخر الجملة

Ex. Some people arrived on Monday. **Others arrived** the following day.

3) • without

بدون

V +ing يأتي بعدها اسم او

Ex. I went to work **without** my mobile phone.

Ex. I left the restaurant **without** paying for the food.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I am looking forward my first journey this time.
a. to take b. take c. taking d. to taking
- This pen isn't good. Give me one, please.
a. other b. the others c. another d. others
- This is a public place. You can enter without money.
a. paying b. pay c. to paying d. pays



Audioscript

SB Page (61)

استمع إلى النصوص



Amal : What do you think our city will be like in 2050, Huda?

Huda : Hi Amal ... Well, I think there will **definitely**⁽¹⁾ be more people in our city.

Amal : So will there be lots of smart new apartments in the city centre for them to live in?

Huda : Hmm ... I'm not sure.

Amal : **Really**?⁽²⁾ Why not?

Huda : There might be some new apartments in **the city centre**,⁽³⁾ but these could be very expensive.

Amal : So where will everyone live?

Huda : I think there will **probably**⁽⁴⁾ be new apartments around the city.

Amal : And what about shops and restaurants?

Huda : Yes, I'm sure that there will be more of these. **Perhaps**⁽⁵⁾ there will be a new **shopping centre**,⁽⁶⁾ too.

Amal : And what will the city **look like**?⁽⁷⁾ Will there be more **tall buildings**?⁽⁸⁾

Huda : Yes, I think that's very **likely**⁽⁹⁾. Tall buildings are a good idea in cities because there isn't much land to build on.

Amal : But with tall buildings, a new shopping centre and restaurants, our city could look **completely**⁽¹⁰⁾ different.

Huda : I don't think so. There are lots of **historic**⁽¹¹⁾ buildings in the city, and it's important to protect these.

- ١- بالتأكيد
- ٢- حقاً
- ٣- وسط المدينة
- ٤- من المحتمل
- ٥- ربما
- ٦- مركز تجاري
- ٧- تبدو
- ٨- مبانى شاهقة
- ٩- محتمل
- ١٠- تماماً- بالكلية
- ١١- تاريخي

Aya : Look at this **quiz**⁽¹⁾ about the future? Shall we do it, Lina?

Lina : OK, Aya. What's the first question?

Aya : One. In the future, everyone will go to university. Nobody will **leave school**⁽²⁾ at 18. What do you think?

Lina : I don't think so. Some people will find university too difficult. They will learn different **skills**⁽³⁾ **instead**⁽⁴⁾.

Aya : Yes, I **agree**⁽⁵⁾. Two. All cars will be driverless. Nobody will be able to drive their own car any more.

Lina : I'm not sure. There will definitely be driverless cars, but there will probably be **normal**⁽⁶⁾ cars too. What do you think?

Aya : Yes, I agree. There might be a few normal cars that important people can drive. Last question: All energy will be from the sun.

Lina : I think that's very likely, don't you?

Aya : Well, I'm sure that we'll all use renewable energy. But perhaps there will be other **forms of energy**⁽⁷⁾ such as wind.

- ١- اختبار قصير
- ٢- ينهي الدراسة
- ٣- مهارات
- ٤- بدلاً من ذلك
- ٥- يوافق
- ٦- عادي
- ٧- أشكال الطاقة



Reading

SB Page (20)

A technology that will change our lives

By Munir Osman

How will driverless cars improve our lives?

In future, driverless cars will change all of our lives. We will be able to travel anywhere without touching the **controls**⁽¹⁾ or even looking at the road! Driverless cars will also be better for the environment because they will be electric.

What problems do we still need solutions for?

However, there are still some problems. Car companies will have to do lots of **testing**⁽²⁾ to make sure that the cars are **completely**⁽³⁾ **safe**⁽⁴⁾. We will also have to make new **laws**⁽⁵⁾ and we might even have to change some of our **road signs**⁽⁶⁾ so that the cars' computers can read them.

When will driverless cars be on our roads?

So when will we be able to travel in driverless cars? Some experts believe that we will have to wait until 2030 **at the earliest**⁽⁷⁾. Others think that driverless cars will be here much sooner, but we may still need people at the controls to begin with.

How does the writer feel about driverless cars?

It's **impossible**⁽⁸⁾ to know who is correct, but we can be sure of one thing: driverless cars will be part of our future. **I'm looking forward**⁽⁹⁾ to taking my first journey in one.

- ١- أدوات / مفاتيح التحكم
- ٢- تجارب / اختبارات
- ٣- تمامًا
- ٤- آمن
- ٥- قوانين
- ٦- إشارات / لافتات الطريق
- ٧- على أقرب تقدير
- ٨- مستحيل
- ٩- أتطلع إلى

In the future, I think there will be new types of transport so that we will be able to travel everywhere faster. This means we will be able to save time and do more things in a day.

Magda

It's important to help protect the environment, but we won't be able to get all of our energy from solar farms and wind turbines for many years. We will need to build more of them. We will also need more cycle lanes in cities so people will be able to travel without using energy at all.

Fares

I'm sure that in the future, we will be able to send more spacecraft into space. But the planets in our solar system are too far away for people to travel to, so astronauts won't be able to visit them.

Nasser

Flying cars

For this week's project⁽¹⁾, I research⁽²⁾ flying cars⁽³⁾. We now have the technology that will be able to make flying cars. In fact, engineers think that flying cars will be more like helicopters⁽⁴⁾ than planes. That is because helicopters can take off⁽⁵⁾ from small areas in cities. They will use electricity, because electric engines⁽⁶⁾ are not very noisy.

Although there are difficulties⁽⁷⁾, flying cars might be the answer to a lot of problems. Cities are becoming busier⁽⁸⁾ and traffic⁽⁹⁾ on the ground is becoming worse. If there were flying cars, people could fly to work from far away. They would not have to live in big cities. Flying cars could land on the roofs⁽¹⁰⁾ of buildings, and that would mean more space⁽¹¹⁾ in the streets for people to enjoy. Electric flying cars would make less pollution⁽¹²⁾, too.

Already, a company⁽¹³⁾ in Germany has developed⁽¹⁴⁾ a flying taxi. It will be able to carry one passenger⁽¹⁵⁾ and might start flying in 2022. However, journeys will be very expensive. People also worry that flying cars might not be very safe. If there were a lot of flying cars above a city, it could be very dangerous! For example, what would they do in bad weather, or if there were a lot of birds? And what about planes?

In conclusion⁽¹⁶⁾, we already have the technology to make drones⁽¹⁷⁾ and other things that can fly. I think that it's very likely we will see flying cars in the future.

- ١- مشروع
- ٢- أقوم بعمل بحث عن
- ٣- سيارات طائرة
- ٤- طائرة مروحية
- ٥- تقلع
- ٦- محركات
- ٧- صعوبات
- ٨- أكثر ازدحاماً
- ٩- المرور
- ١٠- أسطح
- ١١- مساحة - فراغ
- ١٢- تلوث
- ١٣- شركة
- ١٤- طور
- ١٥- راكب
- ١٦- ختاماً
- ١٧- طائرات بدون طيار

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Definitions

- _____ are things used to operate a vehicle or a machine.
a. Laws b. Controls c. Farms d. Companies
- A/An _____ is a type of aircraft that doesn't have a pilot.
a. drone b. engine c. helicopter d. law
- The _____ is the rules that people in a country or place must follow.
a. drone b. law c. test d. conclusion
- _____ means certainly, without any doubt.
a. Probably b. Likely c. Definitely d. Slightly

Synonyms & Antonyms

- Good is the synonym of "_____".
a. controlled b. dangerous c. useless d. positive
- Lessons in the future will definitely be fun. The antonym of "definitely" is _____.
a. certainly b. surely c. uncertainly d. lovely
- I want to improve my French to live in France. "Improve" is similar in meaning to "_____".
a. save b. damage c. produce d. develop
- You should play a positive role "_____". _____ is opposite in meaning to "Positive".
a. Helpful b. Negative c. Possible d. Expected
- The opposite of "take off" is _____.
a. floor b. ground c. land d. soil

Prefixes & Suffixes

- We add the prefix "_____ " to the word "agree" to form the opposite.

- a. dis- b. un- c. re- d. ab-
- The suffix "_____ " turns the verb "equip" into a noun.
a. -ty b. -ive c. -ion d. -ment

الشرقية / قنا 2022

12. It's a driverless car. The suffix "-less" means a driver.
 a. next b. with c. for d. without
13. The suffix "....." turns the noun "use" into an adjective.
 a. -ness b. -ful c. -tion d. -ive
14. To turn the adjective "possible" into the opposite, we add the prefix
 a. in- b. dis- c. im- d. un-

Guessing the meaning

15. We may use flying cars in the future. This means that we will use them.
 a. like b. sure c. perhaps d. impossible
16. I think that it's very likely we will see flying cars in the future. We will see them.
 a. probably b. impossible c. impossibly d. like
17. He was sent to prison. This means that he did something against the
 a. controls b. law c. low d. role
18. I always try to make my skills better. I try to them. Longman
 a. remain b. decrease c. remove d. improve

Speaking

Expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future

التعبير عن التأكد وعدم التأكد في المستقبل

Expressing certainty	Expressing uncertainty
- I think that's very likely. أعتقد أنه محتمل جدا.	- I don't think so. لا أعتقد ذلك.
- I'm sure that..... أنا متأكد أن.....	- I'm not sure. لست متأكد.
- There will definitely be..... بالتأكيد سيكون هناك.....	- Perhaps there will be..... ربما سيكون هناك.....
	- There might be..... ربما سيكون.....
	- There will probably be..... من المحتمل أن يكون هناك.....

General Exercises

on Lessons 5, 6 & 7



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Jamal and Eyad are talking about transport in the future.

Jamal : Cairo is a very noisy city and there is too much traffic, too.

Eyad : ①

Jamal : Do you think it will be easy to move on roads in the future?

Eyad : ②

Jamal : ③?

Eyad : I think so because there will be modern means of transport.

Jamal : ④?

Eyad : Yes, I think there will be flying cars.

Jamal : Where do you think they will land?

Eyad : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

roads - solve - would be - drones - will be - likely

In fact, technology is very necessary. It can change our lives. It helps us to ① our problems. One of these problems is the traffic. I think there ② new means of transport. There will be flying cars, driverless cars and ③ They will help us to move freely on ④

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's that my father will travel abroad next week. He will probably travel next week.

Longman

- a. impossible b. likely c. unlikely d. sure

2. What are the negative sides of learning at home? "Negative" is opposite in meaning to "...".

Longman

- a. expected b. bad c. positive d. possible

3. My parents often -agree with me on the suggestions that waste time.

المطوية 2022

- a. dis- b. im- c. un- d. in-

4. "Definitely" is similar in meaning to

- a. uncertainly b. lonely c. certainly d. unsure

5. You're right. I with you.

a. improve

b. refuse

c. disagree

d. agree

6. Laws are rules we must

a. break

b. follow

c. leave

d. hit

WB

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The New Administrative Capital is going (have) modern universities.

SB

2. I'm (go) to work very hard. I need to pass my exams to go to university.

SB

3. I can't play tennis now, I (go) to play after the lessons!

4. My goal (will) to become an engineer.

Longman



5. The visitors to the zoo (will) be able to touch the snakes as they are dangerous.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of an article about flying cars"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة كتابة الموضوع:

1- How did you know about flying cars?

2- What type of energy will they use?

3- Where will they land?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

1- I have read an article about.....

2- Flying cars will use for energy.

3- They will take off and land from

Key Vocabulary

3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	business person	رجل اعمال	online course	دورة تعليمية عبر الانترنت
distance	مسافة	engineer	مهندس	volunteer	متطوع
temperature	درجة الحرارة	hero	بطل	set up	يؤسس / ينشئ
electricity	كهرباء	heroic	بطولي	likely	محتمل
floating farms	مزارع عائمة	energy shirt	قميص الطاقة	district	حي - مقاطعة
solution	حل	spacecraft	مركبة فضاء	cashless	غير نقدي
virtual reality	واقع افتراضي	drone	طائرة بدون طيار	mechanic	ميكانيكي
presentation	عرض تقديمي	flying cars	سيارات طائرة	architect	مهندس معماري
skill	مهارة	perhaps	ربما	accountant	محاسب
sports team	فريق رياضي	definitely	بالتأكيد	controls (n)	أدوات / مفاتيح التحكم
e-sports player	لاعب رياضة إلكترونية	robot assistant	مساعد آلي	law	قانون
internship	تدريب عملي	robot teacher	معلم آلي	sports person	شخص رياضي
robotics engineer	مهندس روبوتات	device	جهاز	probably	من المحتمل
marathon	ماراثون (سباق مسافات طويلة)	university	جامعة	feed	يُطعم
cycle lane	حارة / مسار مخصص (للدراجات)	robotics	علم تصميم الإنسان الآلي	rise	يرتفع
electric bus	أتوبيس يعمل بالكهرباء	monorail	قطار معلق أحادي القضبان	professional qualification	تأهيل مهني
		online	التعليم عبر الانترنت	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
				train (ed)	يتدرب



Language

1- The Future Simple "revision"

will + inf. + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

يتكون من

- يستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل مع عدم وجود دليل على ذلك.

Ex. I think I will buy a car one day.

won't (will not) + inf. + فاعل

النفي

Ex. Many sports are popular, but they won't be more popular than football.

Will + فاعل + inf...?

السؤال بهل

Ex. Will Heba arrive tomorrow?

(كلمة استفهام) will + فاعل + inf...?

Ex. When will she go next month?

2- The ability in the future with "will / won't be able to"

- نستخدم (will / won't be able to) للحديث عن القدرة في المستقبل:

(مصدر الفعل) will be able to + inf. + فاعل

Ex. Magid will be able to pass the test and get the job.

مصدر الفعل won't be able to + inf. + فاعل

في النفي

Will + فاعل + be able to + inf. مصدر الفعل؟

السؤال بهل

السؤال بكلمة استفهام مصدر الفعل will + فاعل + be able to + inf. + كلمة الاستفهام

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow	غداً	next.....	القادم/التالي.....
in the future	في المستقبل	one day	يوماً ما
in + سنة قادمة	في سنة	by + سنة قادمة	بحلول
in 2030		by 2050	

3- Future with (be) going to

When I'm older, I am going to work as a volunteer at weekend.

I am not going to travel to Alex.

Are you going to the football match?

What are you going to do at the weekend?

Speaking

1 Making predictions

عمل تنبؤات

- I think.....will + inf.
- I think.....won't + inf.
- فاعل + will + inf.
- فاعل + won't + inf.

2) Discussing personal goals

مناقشة الأهداف الشخصية

Question

1. What's your dream job?
2. What can you do to achieve your dream job?
3. What are your other goals?
4. What can you do to get your dream job?

Answer

- My dream job is to be a robotics engineer.
- I can go to a technical school.
- I want to be a successful person.
- I have to work hard to achieve my goals.

3) Expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future

التعبير التأكيد وعدم التأكيد في المستقبل

Expressing certainty	Expressing uncertainty
- I think that's very likely.	- I don't think so.
- I'm sure that	- I'm not sure.
- There will definitely be	- Perhaps there will be
	- There might be
	- There will probably be

General Exercises on Unit 12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Rana and Joudy are talking about their city in future.

Rana : What do you think our city will be in 2050?

Joudy : ①

Rana : ②?

Joudy : I am not sure there will be more people.

Rana : ③?

Joudy : I think people will live in smart apartments.

Rana : Do you think there will be shops and restaurants?

Joudy : ④

Rana : How do you think we will solve the problem of pollution?

Joudy : ⑤

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

1 using - panels - of - different - use - from

Life in the future will be very ① Houses will be more modern because they will have solar ② Fridges will talk to people. They will tell them the temperature to keep the food in them. Life will be easier with technology. All electrical devices will ③ that type ④ energy.

2 ride - will - drive - solution - won't - lanes

Longman

Scientists have a lot of expectations for the future. They expect they will find a ① to the problem of pollution. The government will build new cycle ② People ③ do a lot of things to have a cleaner environment. They will ④ modern, fast bikes and plant more trees to reduce pollution.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A / An is a person who is admired by many people for doing something brave or good.

- a. robot b. mask c. engine d. hero

2. A is a machine that allows us to create a physical object from a three-dimensional
الابعاد ثلاثي digital model.

Longman

- a. photocopier b. 3D printer c. camera d. lens

3. The company began testing driverless cars. The word "driverless" means

- a. with a driver b. without oil c. without a driver d. electric

4. What are the advantages of online learning? "Advantages" is the opposite of the meaning of ".....".

Longman

- a. demerits b. benefits c. causes d. results

5. We can get the adverb of "important" by using the suffix ".....".

- a. -y b. -un c. -ful d. -ly

6. My little brother didn't feel well. That means he is

- a. healthy b. well c. sick d. ancient

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Osama didn't do very well in his exams, so he (will) be able to go to university. WB
2. What do you think our city (be) like in 2050?
3. I'm sure that in the future we will be able to (sent) more spacecraft into space. WB
4. I think our cities won't have as much traffic. We (are able to) walk round them easily. WB
5. I'm (going do) an online course to get some professional qualifications. SB

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of our homes in the future"

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكن من خلال الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة كتابة الموضوع

- How do you think homes will be in the future?
- What do you think we will be able to do at homes in the future?
- What do you think we won't be able to do at homes in the future?

يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات

- Technology will help develop.....
- I think we will be able to.....
- I think we won't be able to.....



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ahmed : ①

Aly : I'm going to talk about plants in the house.

Ahmed : Why are plants in the house good for your health?

Aly : ②

Ahmed : ③

Aly : I put my plants in my balcony.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

wherever - disadvantage - were - online - advantage - will be

Some experts believe that education will be different in the future. Students will do more of their learning ① This has a great ② Students don't need lots of books. They can study anywhere and complete their schoolwork ③ they go. Above all, they ④ able to use 3D printers to print models or even make their own designs.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Scientists are very important to our future. They can help farmers to produce good quality food for the world's growing population. They can also develop new crops which don't suffer from diseases. Scientists and engineers can work with car companies to produce cars and other vehicles which use fuel more efficiently. At the same time, researchers scientists are looking for new types of energy to replace oil and petrol. Other scientists are doing research into new treatment for illness. Perhaps the most important work scientists are doing is to find ways of reducing global warming.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How can scientists help farmers?

.....

2. Why do scientists and engineers work with car companies?

.....

3. Why are scientists important for the field of medicine?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun they refers to.....
 a. companies b. problems c. scientists d. farmers
5. Scientists work hard to find ways of reducing global.....
 a. problem b. warming c. energy d. power

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All cities should have so it is safer to go by bike.
 a. airports b. cycle lanes c. ports d. platforms
2. Our solution is to build farms on the sea.
 a. drying b. flooding c. sinking d. floating
3. With the energy shirt, we'll charge equipment at home as we exercise.
 a. be b. able to c. be able to d. able
4. Driverless cars be better for the environment because they will be electric.
 a. will b. are going c. going to d. won't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I hope my father (will) use this old car again; it always breaks down. Longman
2. I feel terrible. I'm (will) be sick.
3. Students will be able (using) 3D printers to make all kinds of things.

6 Write a paragraph of six (6) sentences about:

الوادي الجديد 2022

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A job you would like to do in the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A Vocabulary

SB & WB Exercises

1. A: What will the _____ be like tomorrow? B: It will be snowy. WB
 a. time b. passport c. space d. weather
2. The toy moves like a robot. It is very _____. WB
 a. public b. robotic c. robot d. heroic
3. The train does not use oil. It is _____. WB
 a. electric b. virtual c. electricity d. pandemic
4. Our teacher can speak English, Spanish and _____. WB
 a. Arabic b. Arab c. Arabian d. Egyptian
5. The firefighters saved a family from a fire. They were very _____. WB
 a. hero b. lazy c. cowardly d. heroic
6. This is the device which can check people's _____ to see if they are ill. WB
 a. temperature b. homework c. population d. internship
7. This maths question is very difficult. What is the _____? WB
 a. pollution b. solution c. presentation d. population
8. We should produce more food to _____ more poor people in the world. WB
 a. feed b. eat c. meet d. need
9. At the museum, you can see how the Ancient Egyptians lived using _____ reality. WB
 a. virtual b. false c. electric d. heroic
10. Prices usually _____ all over the world every year. WB
 a. wear b. mean c. rise d. produce
11. Taha's dream is to be a/an _____ sports person. He's in a local sports team. SB
 a. professional b. unable c. amateur d. incapable
12. Fatma is going to go to university. After she finishes it, she's going to get a/an _____. SB
 a. distance b. monorail c. internship d. district
13. Malak would like to help people or help to protect the environment. She's going to work as a/an _____. SB
 a. accountant b. driver c. vet d. volunteer

Longman Exercises

14. A/An _____ car is a self-driving, or robotic, car that can travel without human input. Longman
 a. eyeless b. driverless c. old d. traditional
15. _____ buses don't pollute the environment. Longman
 a. Traditional b. Electric c. Old d. Oil-powered
16. A/An _____ is a part of a wide road that only bicycles are allowed to use. Longman
 a. port b. airport c. highway d. cycle lane
17. To redo something is to _____. Longman
 a. avoid doing it b. stop doing it c. do it again d. do it only
18. A/An _____ is a person who designs buildings and advises on their construction. Longman
 a. architect b. builder c. doctor d. trader

Bit by Bit Exercises

19. Visitors won't be able to _____ the monkeys as they are sleeping.
 a. eat b. catch c. keep d. feed
20. _____ are machines that fly without pilots.
 a. Planes b. Bikes c. Monorails d. Drones
21. I hope I'll be able to _____ more success.
 a. lose b. buy c. earn d. achieve
22. I have the _____ to solve this problem. I can find a solution to it.
 a. disability b. ability c. able d. inability
23. I can't read your writing, Azza. Please can you _____ it, so it is clearer?
 a. replay b. reuse c. rewrite d. recycle

B Language

24. What will the weather _____ like tomorrow? WB
 a. be b. is c. been d. was
25. What job _____ when you leave university? WB
 a. will you do b. you will do c. you will doing d. will you doing
26. Will people _____ to space in 2070? WB
 a. travels b. travelling c. traveled d. travel

27. In the future, the farms _____ make their own electricity.

SB

- a. be able to b. will be able to c. going to be d. will able

28. I am _____ design some amazing buildings.

SB

- a. will b. going c. going to d. won't

29. I _____ something to help people. It's my plan.

SB

- a. 'm going to do b. 'm doing c. will do d. won't do

30. In the future, we _____ have holidays on the moon.

- a. will able b. will be able to c. will able to d. able to

31. Do you think we _____ under the sea by 2050?

- a. lives b. live c. going to live d. will live

32. Do you think we _____ oil in the future?

- a. use b. will use c. using d. to use

33. I _____ be able to join you to the club. I'm busy.

- a. will b. don't c. won't d. would

34. _____ you meet Amir tomorrow?

- a. Will b. Does c. Are d. Have

35. I think it _____ hot and sunny next week.

- a. going b. is going c. will be d. going to be

36. Hany _____ be a robotics engineer. It's his intention.

- a. going b. is going to c. will d. going to be

37. I'm going _____ a charity that makes people's lives better. I have decided to do so.

- a. to help b. helping c. helps d. to helping

38. I think that more people _____ ride bikes in the future to help the environment.

- a. going to b. will c. won't d. wouldn't

Biographies, Reviews, Short Stories & Al Azhar Paragraphs

1- "A review of schools in the future"

(Lessons 1 & 2)

"Schools tomorrow" is an article about schools in the future. It talks about technology and the ways to use it at schools. It says that we will be able to depend on the online learning. Therefore, we will be able to do the homework anywhere. We will be able to use the virtual reality in teaching. It will help us see things as if it is real. We will be able to visit places from the past. By using 3D printers, we will be able to print very large things. It will help us make our own designs. We will be able to use robots to help us teach in classroom.

2- "A review of life in the future"

(Lessons 3 & 4)

I read an article about our cities of the future. It is very wonderful. It says that Africa's population is growing quickly. Many African countries are planning exciting, new cities, where people can live, work and study. For example, Egypt is planning for a new administrative capital in the desert, east of Cairo. It is going to have modern universities, offices and hotels. There will be a monorail

passing through the business districts. Electric trains will link the city to other cities around Egypt. The city is designed to work with smart technology. Roofs will be covered in solar panels. The shops will be cashless, and they will have more green spaces to walk easily in the city.

3- "A review of an article about flying cars"

(Lessons 5 & 6)

I have read an article talking about flying cars. First it talked about electricity which will be the energy for flying cars. Those cars will be easy to take off from the tops of any house as they don't need much space. Also, the article said that our homes will have modern technology inside them, cooling and heating will be much easier. Things will be different, work and many other things will depend on

electricity, so there won't be much noise, our streets will be quieter, so the future will be different.

4- "A review of our homes in the future"

It is interesting to read about homes in the future. They will be different from today. We can get the energy by using solar panels. Solar energy is better for the environment because it reduces pollution. TVs and computers will be smaller but faster than they are. There will be a tiny computer connected to our watches, glasses and even clothes. A hot shower is a great thing! We will be able to use rainwater collected on the roofs and heated by solar energy. There will be a robot, too. It will help us do many things like, cleaning, washing the car, cooking and preparing tables for meals.

5- "A job you would like to do in the future"

(Al Azhar)

I love maths and science. When I leave preparatory school, I would like to go to a technology school. My dream job is to be a robotics engineer. Robotics engineers can create anything from machines. They can create robots that can go into space. I want to do something to help other people around the world. It is a very useful job.

6- "A biography of a professional sports person"

(Test)

Mohamed Salah is a professional sports person. He was born in a village called Nagrig, in Gharbia. He was born in 1992. He is very polite and helpful. He has played for many teams. He also plays for the Egyptian National Team. He scores many goals for our national team. He plays for Liverpool in England and scores a lot. It is a very good team. Salah wins a lot of important prizes and championships. He always gives money to charities to help build schools, hospitals and help poor people around the country. He always has a big smile on his face. We all love him very much.



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue

Sara meets her friend Mona at the club. Sara tells Mona that she's going to travel to England next month.

السويس 2022

Sara : Hello, Mona!

Mona : Hello, Sara! How are things with you?

Sara : I'm going to travel to England.

Mona : When are you going to travel?

Sara : ①

Mona : ② ?

Sara : To visit my uncle who lives there.

Mona : ③ ?

Sara : By plane.

Mona : Are you afraid of flying?

Sara : ④

Mona : How long will you stay there?

Sara : ⑤

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

solar - With - Without - will be - were be - from

Clean energy comes ① the sun, which is our nearest star. The sun sends out huge amounts of energy. We call this the ② energy. ③ the sun, life on earth would not continue. In the future, we ④ able to get all of our energy from solar farms and wind turbines for many years.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Sports are very popular all over the world. There are many kinds of sports. Some of which are: Football, tennis, basketball, hockey, judo, karate, swimming and many other sports. Football is the most popular sport all over the world. Some records say that it began in China. Other records say it began in England. Sport is useful for the body. Trainers and athletes advise people to do sport regularly and very often to get a good and strong body.

Practicing sports protects the body and makes it so strong. Some sports need strong bodies like weight lifting. In general, it is advisable to do any sport in order to keep healthy. On the other hand if you don't practise sport, you will suffer from lots of diseases. So I advise you to choose any kind of sport to do.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Football is the most _____ sport.
a. difficult b. boring c. popular d. dangerous
2. _____ needs big effort and strong muscles.
a. Tennis b. Table tennis c. Weight lifting d. Handball

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the passage mainly about?

4. What does the underlined "it" refer to?

5. How many sports are mentioned in the passage?

6. What will happen if there will not be sports in the future ?



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A /An _____ is a period of time during which a student or new graduate gets practical experience in a job.
a. testing b. match c. holiday d. internship
2. A _____ is a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground.
a. monorail b. robot c. flying car d. 3D printer
3. Helicopters can take off from small areas in cities. "Take off" is the opposite of "_____".
a. land b. fly c. turn on d. turn off
4. The word "hero" is turned into an adjective by adding the suffix _____.
a. -ity b. -tion c. -tive d. -ic
5. Mahmoud has the ability to do things well. He has a _____.
a. distance b. skill c. link d. marathon
6. We can't live without gas, water and electricity. That means these things are _____.
a. important b. dangerous c. peaceful d. useless

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. In the future, do you think that all our energy..... (be) from the sun?
2. I (getting) an internship with good friends as planned.
3. When (is) your friends going to visit you?
4. She isn't good with numbers. She.....(will) be able to work as a maths teacher.
5. I think that more people (won't) use renewable energy in the future to reduce pollution.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A biography of a professional sports person"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- When was he / she born?
- Where is he / she from?
- Which sport does he / she practise?
- Is he / she famous?
- Do you want to be like him / her?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- He / She was born in.....
- He / She is.....
- He / She likes.....
- He / She began to practise it when.....

ReviewD

SB pages 64-65 WB pages 114-115

اجابات كتاب الطالب والتدريبات موجودة على صفحة الكتاب على الفيس بوك وفى ملحق اجابات الكتاب

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



neighbourhood	حي سكني - منطقة	bakery	مخبز
heavy rains	أمطار غزيرة	Venice	مدينة البندقية (إيطاليا)
get worse	تزداد سوء	human (adj)	بشرى
compared to	مقارنة بـ	describe (d)	يصف
recent years	السنوات الأخيرة	launch (ed)	يطلق (صاروخ / قمر صناعي)



Reading

SB Page (64)

استمع إلى النصوص



CITY CENTRE FLOODS

Hundreds of people in a city in Germany were **surprised**⁽¹⁾ to see flood water running through the streets of their **neighbourhood**⁽²⁾ last night. **Heavy rains**⁽³⁾ flooded this part of the city in less than an hour. Many people had to leave their homes and 15 people were taken to hospital.

Mr Muller, a local **businessman**⁽⁴⁾, said, "I saw the water going down our big, wide street. I was very frightened." Mrs Werner, who also lives in the neighbourhood, said, "The floods have damaged our beautiful home and our business. We don't know what we'll do." This flood wasn't the only one to hit the area in **recent years**⁽⁵⁾. In 2018, a flood damaged over 1,000 buildings. Mr Wagner, who owns the local **bakery**⁽⁶⁾, said, "The weather is **getting worse**⁽⁷⁾. We've seen floods on the TV, but now we have them here!"



- ١- متفاجئ
- ٢- حي سكني
- ٣- أمطار غزيرة
- ٤- رجل أعمال
- ٥- السنوات الأخيرة
- ٦- مخبز
- ٧- تزداد سوء

WB Page (65)

In the next ten to 20 years, life will be very different **compared to**⁽¹⁾ life today. Our cities, the way we study, and the way we work will all be different. People like you or me will be able to go into space, but the biggest change will be at work. Soon, robots will be able to do most of the jobs.



١- مقارنة بـ

- ٢- أطباء بشريون
٣- يصف
٤- مرض
٥- دواء

Robots can already think for themselves. With the right computer programs, robots journalists will be able to write sports *reviews and newspaper articles*. Robots will fly our planes and drive our cars. Robot doctors will soon replace **human doctors**⁽²⁾.

You will **describe**⁽³⁾ your **illness**⁽⁴⁾ to your robot doctor, which will then be able to look at people with the same illness, and choose the best **medicine**⁽⁵⁾ for you. Robot doctors won't be able to do everything. They just have to be better than human doctors. We won't be able to stop robots from being a big part of our lives in the future.

WB Page (114)

Today in history, we learned about cities. Our teacher said that cities were usually built in safe places where there was water. However, he told us that people had chosen some strange places for some cities. For example, he told us that people had built **Venice**⁽¹⁾ on 124 small islands. They had to put lots of long **pieces**⁽²⁾ of wood into the wet soil. Then they built the houses on top of the **wood**⁽³⁾. **According to**⁽⁴⁾ our teacher, the wood is still there, under the houses!



- ١- مدينة البندقية
٢- قطع
٣- غابة صغيرة
٤- طبقاً لـ

He also told us about Mexico City. Did you know that the city was first built in a lake called Lago de Texcoco? They put a lot of soil in the lake, and built a city on this! I think that in the future, we will be able to build cities in many different but safer places. For example, we will have the technology to build cities on mountains.



Audioscript

SB Page (64)

Narrator: The world's first **satellite**⁽¹⁾ was sent into space by Russia on the 4th October of 1957. It was named Sputnik 1 after the Russian word for satellite. It was about twice the size of a football and it **weighed**⁽²⁾ 83 kilograms. It **orbited**⁽³⁾ the Earth once every 96 minutes and travelled at about 29,000 kilometres an hour. No satellite had orbited the Earth before that moment. As Sputnik 1 was orbiting the Earth, it sent **radio signals**⁽⁴⁾ back. It had been in space for only three months before the batteries died and it fell back to Earth on 4 January 1958. The Russian satellite surprised the Americans who had

- ١- قمر صناعي
٢- يزن
٣- دار حول
٤- إشارات لاسلكية

thought their country would be the first to **launch a satellite**⁽⁵⁾.

هـ- يطلق قمر صناعي

Since 1957, more than 10 countries have sent over 11,000 satellites into space.

Today, there are about 7,300 satellites orbiting the Earth. Some have been orbiting the Earth for many years.

WB Page (114)

Hamid: Did you see this online news story, Kamal?

Kamal: No, what does it say, Hamid?

Hamid: A scientist said that we will all be able to have holidays on the moon soon.

ا- بوضوح
ب- مكوك فضاء

Kamal: Really? What website says that?

Hamid: It's called Cool Space Stories. **Apparently**⁽¹⁾, the scientist had tried to send tourists to space before, but it was too expensive. Now they've found an inexpensive way to send tourists.

Kamal: How do they travel there? On a space **shuttle**⁽²⁾ or spacecraft?

Hamid: No. The scientist is sending special planes there which can fly through space.

Kamal: Hmm. Who is this scientist? Is he famous?

Hamid: I don't know. It says here that he used to be a journalist.

Kamal: Hamid, I don't think this news is true. You shouldn't believe it. Perhaps there will be holidays on the moon one day, but we won't be able to go there for a long, long time. We just don't have the technology.

Hamid: Perhaps you're right, Kamal.

WB Page (115)

1

Voice: "That building is the tallest in the city," said Ahmed.

2

Voice: "I think I'll be a teacher when I leave school," said Judy.

3

Voice: "We have never eaten in that restaurant before," said Hisham.

4

Voice: "I am taller than my brothers," said Mona.

5

Voice: "My cousins did not go to the park on Saturday," said Imad.

Test on units 10, 11 & 12



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Mazen and Hatem are talking about robots in the future.

Mazen : Hi, Hatem. I think robots will be different in the future.

Hatem : ①

Mazen : Do you think there will be robot journalists?

Hatem : ②

Mazen : ③ ?

Hatem : I think they will be able to write sports reviews.

Mazen : ④ ?

Hatem : Yes, I think there will be robot doctors, too.

Mazen : What do you think they will be able to do?

Hatem : ⑤

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

renewable - popular - won't use - change - have used - charge

Nowadays, we have a hotter world than before. We should try to avoid climate
① We have to use ② energy. So, we ③ traditional
means of transport. The most ④ way to travel in the future won't be fast
trains. Perhaps we will use electric cars or modern bikes.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A robot is a special kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions which come from a computer. Because it is a machine, it does not make mistakes, and it does not get tired. It never complains. Robots are all around us. Some of them are used to make things. For example, robots can help make cars. Others are used to explore dangerous places like volcanoes. Some robots are used to clean things. Some robots can even recognize words. They can help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans, others do not. Most robots just look like machines.

The first real robot was made in 1961. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a **giant** arm. In the future, robots will do things that we can't do, or they will do things that we don't want to do. Robots will help us fight fires. They will help us fight sickness. They will help make life better.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. humans b. volcanoes c. instructions d. robots
- Robots are generally controlled by programs.
 a. cars b. calls c. computer d. words

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined word "giant" mean?

- When was the first real robot made?

- What will robots do in the future?

- Mention two things that robots can do.

C Vocabulary and Structure**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- are something that motorcycle riders wear to protect their heads.
 a. Braces b. Sunglasses c. Helmets d. Telescopes
- The word is similar in meaning to "unusual".
 a. strange b. dangerous c. ordinary d. unable
- When you touch the car controls, you want to the car. WB
 a. damage b. ride c. drive d. harm
- I love maths and science and I'd like to become a / an
 a. doctor b. sports person
 c. robotics engineer d. vet
- The prefix turns "advantages" into the opposite meaning.
 a. un- b. dis- c. im- d. in-
- Robot doctors may replace human doctors in the future. That means robot doctors will the human doctors.
 a. talk to b. have holiday with
 c. take the place of d. take part in

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Before it became popular with tourists, Hurghada (be) a small fishing village.
- What have you been (read) recently?
- How long (have) your father been a teacher?
- In the future, robot doctors (is) able to give us the best medicine.
- Ahmed said that the building (be) the tallest in the city.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review of how to protect our environment"

الفيوم 2022

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الموضوع:

- What do factories produce?
- What would be produced if the factory used fossil fuels?
- What would happen if they didn't burn the rubbish?
- What do the plants on the roof do?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Factories produce
- They burn rubbish!
- If they burn the rubbish,
- The plants on the roofs absorb some of the air pollution.

End of Term Practice

مجاب عنه في آخر الملحق

A Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Baher and Marwan are talking about where people will live in the future.

Baher : In the future, I think we will be able to live in houses under the ground.

Marwan : But, ① Did you know that every year, buildings get taller and taller?

Baher : That's right. What kind of energy will they use?

Marwan : ②

Baher : ③ ?

Marwan : They will use things like wind turbines to produce renewable energy.

Baher : ④ ?

Marwan : Yes, we'll all live in tall buildings with solar energy, too.

Baher : I think this won't cause pollution.

Marwan : ⑤

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

will - renewable - fuels - won't - recycle - cut

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We mustn't ① down trees because they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn fossil ② to avoid climate change. That's why we should use ③ energy such as solar energy and wind power. So, we ④ be able to live in a safe environment.

3 Read the following text. Then answer the questions:

If someone asked you to name a famous trip to the moon, you would probably say the Apollo 17 trip in 1969. But did you know that when Apollo 17 went there in 1972, there had been five other trips to the moon? There have been no trips since 1972.

We all know Neil Armstrong was the first person to walk on the moon, but who was the last person? That was Eugene Cernan. He was on a 12-day trip on Apollo 17 which brought the largest moon rock to Earth! When Neil Armstrong walked on the moon, he said it had been one small step for a man, but a very big step for all of us. When Eugene Cernan left the moon, he said, "We shall return, with peace and hope."

So why were trips to the moon stopped? It was too expensive, but today, as technology gets better, there are plans to send spacecraft to the moon again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the text mainly about?

- a. It's not expensive to land on the moon.
- b. Trips to the moon.
- c. Neil Armstrong was the first person to walk on the moon.
- d. Trips to other planets.

2. What does the underlined word "name" mean?

- a. mention
- b. speak
- c. explain
- d. travel

3. Trips to the moon stopped because they

- a. were dangerous.
- b. were not useful.
- c. cost a lot of money.
- d. caused a lot of damage.

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What did Eugene Cernan bring to Earth?

5. When Eugene Cernan left the moon, he said, "We shall return, with peace and hope." What did this show?

6. When was the last trip to the moon?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Rewrite your composition again. The prefix "re-" means to do it

a. next b. again c. first d. last
- We should protect our planet. Protect is similar in meaning to -----
a. increase b. damage c. collect from d. keep safe
- The person who studies space is a space -----
a. dentist b. scientist c. artist d. pharmacist
- A ----- is an instrument used to make distant objects appear nearer.
a. thermometer b. telescope c. mirror d. microscope
- In the past, we used traditional ways of farming. The antonym of "traditional" is -----
a. old b. expensive c. modern d. far
- The fossils were preserved well for further study. This means they were -----
a. discovered b. kept c. chosen d. sold

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The island ----- (surround) by deep, blue sea.
- If I ----- (be) in trouble, would you help me?
- We plan ----- (spend) the weekend in our village.
- Samir told me that he ----- (travel) to London next Friday.
- I didn't go to the theatre until I ----- (finish) my work.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on one of the following:

1. An article about how to help people in your community.
2. A biography about the person you like most.
3. A paragraph on one of your achievements and what you did to achieve it

Final Exams

Exam 1

Cairo Governorate



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

"Two friends are talking about planting trees."

Amr : What shall we do this summer?

Yasser : ①

Amr : Good, planting trees is a good idea.

Yasser : ②?

Amr : My brother will help us and we can ask some friends, too

Yasser : ③ ,they will be happy to do so.

Amr : Where can we start?

Yasser : ④

Amr : ⑤?

Yasser : We will start after our exams.

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

fur - who - famous - safe - which - short

A mongoose has a long body, with ① legs and a long tail. Their bodies are covered by thick ② Mongooses can see and hear very well, ③ helps them to find food and avoid danger. Mongooses are ④ for fighting snakes. They are able to kill snakes by biting them.

③ Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Over 65 years ago, the world's first computer was born. Scientists called it "The Baby", but it was huge. It filled a full room! Three people made the

Final Exams

computer and programmed math problems for it. On June 19, 1948, the computer solved its first math problem - in 52 minutes! At that time, this was amazing. Computers are now much smaller. With touch-screen technology, many computers don't need extra things, like a keyboard or a mouse. In the future, computers probably won't need these things at all. Some computers like the smartphone, can fit in one hand. Computers are also more powerful today.

How else will computers change in the future? A computer's brain is a chip inside the computer. So, computers will be smaller and even more powerful. Perhaps they'll even think like humans! Maybe we won't need to tell computers what to do because they'll decide for themselves!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The first computer filled a
a. palace b. hand c. room d. building
2. The Baby computer found the answer to math problem(s) in 52 minutes.
a. one b. two c. three d. for
3. Today, many computers don't have
a. keyboard b. mouse c. touch screen d. chips

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun (these) refer to?
.....
5. Why do you think we may not need to tell computers what to do?
.....
6. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should protect our planet. "Protect" is similar in meaning to
a. increase b. damage c. collect from d. keep safe
2. Many ancient are found in Fayum Depression. These are bones of animals.
a. carriages b. fossils c. owners d. ingredients

3. People in Egypt plant mangrove seedlings along the Red Sea

a. rocks

b. cost

c. coast

d. ponds

4. The is a large natural area of land which mostly green.

a. shape

b. grassland

c. desert

d. coastal

5. We can add the prefix "....." to the word "scope" to mean an instrument that makes distant things nearer.

a. fore-

b. inter-

c. pre-

d. tele-

6. A /An is the person who has seen an accident or a crime and can tell the police about it.

a. witness

b. sailor

c. tailor

d. designer

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We need (using) cleaner renewable energy.

2. If we lived in Hurghada, we (go) to the beach.

3. They (study) English for 3 hours now.

4. The housewife (say) the thief had stolen the house the last night.

5. No one (see) a photo of the far side of the moon before astronauts landed on it.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"Keeping our air clean."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

Faten and Huda are talking about spending their last Mid-year holiday.

Faten : Good morning, Huda.

Huda : Good morning, Faten.

Faten : Where did you go last Mid-year holiday?

Faten : ① -----

Huda : Alexandria! Which places did you visit there?

Faten : ② -----

Huda : ③ -----?

Faten : I went with my family.

Huda : ④ -----?

Faten : Of course, you can come with us next holiday.

Huda : ⑤ -----

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

years - cats - has - tourists - have - hotel

A new water park opened in Sharm El Sheikh nowadays. It is the biggest park in Egypt. It ① ----- many restaurants and the owner is going to build a new ② ----- next year. He said that it had taken over three ③ ----- to build. Many Egyptians and ④ ----- visit it.

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert, National Park and Al-Nayzak Lake. There are also some wonderful man-made wonders, such as the Great Pyramid and the Citadel of Qaitbay in Alexandria.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- B. Answer the following questions:**

- (At least 4 wonders)

6. Have you visited any of these wonders before?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 

Final Exams

3. _____ is the sound produced by a person when he speaks.
a. Voice b. Playing c. Running d. Vibration
4. My teacher told me not be late again. He gave me a _____.
a. promise b. warning c. witness d. present
5. A/An _____ is a person who travels into space.
a. doctor b. player c. astronaut d. nurse
6. The Iron woman was enormous. The word "enormous" means very _____.
a. small b. ugly c. tiny d. big

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we had more money, we _____ (can) buy a new mobile.
2. We should keep _____ (build) new schools.
3. The Kharge Oasis _____ (visit) by many tourists every year.
4. Mona said she _____ (be) tired that day.
5. Rami had tidied his room before he (start) _____ studying.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

A review about "Your new smart phone"



A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Essam and Adel are talking about next summer holiday.

Essam : Hello, Adel. Where will you go next summer holiday?

Adel : ① -----

Moaz : Sharm El Sheikh ! ② ----- ?

Adel : I will go with my friend Asser.

Essam : ③ -----

Adel : No, we will stay in a hotel.

Essam : How will you go ?

Adel : ④ -----

Essam : How long will you stay ?

Adel : ⑤ -----

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

if - full - wealth - unless - fill - valuable

Health is better than ① ----- . One cannot exchange health for all the money in the world because health is the most ② ----- gift from Allah. A sick person lives a bad life ③ ----- of pain, weakness and suffering. He feels that he is a real trouble to his family. He loses the nice taste of food. You can't enjoy good health ④ ----- you practise suitable exercises.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Have you ever imagined life without cell phones? People who are fifty or more will find this question surprising as they used to live without mobile phones. Younger generations, on the other hand, think that they cannot do without mobile phones.

50 years ago, if someone had said that people would be walking around with small wireless telephones in their hands, we would have called him or

Final Exams

her mad. However, almost everyone now has at least one of them.

People everywhere are walking around talking on their mobile phones. The phones are even being used for more than just communication. People use them for many different purposes. Mobile phones are used to play games, watch films, listen to music, pay money online and find information. They have become a very important part of our lives.

Mobile phones have not only made our lives more comfortable but they have changed the way we live. Before we had mobile phones, it was hard to reach a friend that was away from home. But thanks to these small devices, people can now get in touch with anyone at any place and at any time. To conclude, they have made us reachable wherever we are and whenever anyone likes.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Thanks to mobile phones, -----
a. we cannot find information b. our lives are shorter
c. it is harder to reach a friend d. our lives are easier
2. About fifty years ago, we -----
a. did not have mobiles b. had mobile phones
c. used mobiles d. were mad
3. The underlined word "them" refers to -----
a. younger generation b. mad people
c. wireless telephones d. old people

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the best title for this passage?

5. How was life before we had mobile phones ?

6. What are mobile phones used for ?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "-----" is the synonym of the word "strange".
a. Familiar b. Usual c. Similar d. Unusual

2. _____ is cutting down all the trees in an area.
 a. Air pollution b. Deforestation c. Weaving d. Farming
3. We add the prefix " _____ " to get the opposite of the word expensive.
 a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. im-
4. A " _____ " is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away.
 a. telescope b. satellite c. sensor d. map
5. The planets go around the sun. The words "go around" means _____ the sun.
 a. receive b. orbit c. remove d. cross
6. The fossils were preserved well for further study. This means they were _____
 a. kept b. discovered c. sold d. chosen

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- He _____ (does) his homework by the time he slept.
- Fatma said that she _____ (is) tired the day before.
- If I were a millionaire, I _____ (help) the poor.
- English language _____ (speak) all over the world.
- Students should avoid _____ (make) noise in the class.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"Write a review about: " Modern life in the future, write about transport, food and learning"



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

Ebrahim is at the library to borrow a book.

Ebrahim : Good morning, sir.

Librarian : Good morning, ① -----?

Ebrahim : I'd like to borrow a book.

Librarian : OK, ② -----?

Ebrahim : I enjoy reading books about Nature.

Librarian : ③ ----- . Have you got a borrowing card?

Ebrahim : ④ ----- . How can I get one?

Librarian : Just give me a recent personal photo of you.

Ebrahim : ⑤ -----

Librarian : You are most welcome at any time.

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

will - feet - would - prepare - change - charge

Teachers play an important role in buliding up an educated nation. They ① ----- their students for the future. They can ② ----- their life. They enable thier students to stand on their ③ ----- . If there were not teachers, there ④ ----- not be any doctors, engineers etc. We must respect our teachers.

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

There was once a poor boy who spent his days going from door to door selling newspapers to pay for school. One day, the poor boy was so hungry, so he decided to ask for food when he come to the next door.

The poor boy reached the door of a girl, He asked for a glass of water,

but seeing his poor state, the girl came back with a glass of milk. The boy wanted to pay for the milk, but the girl refused to take any money.

Years later, the girl fell sick. She went to many doctors, but no one was able to cure her. Finally, she went to the best doctor in town. The doctor spent weeks treating her in a private hospital until she was finally cured. She was happy, however, she was afraid she couldn't afford to pay the bill. But, when the hospital handed her the bill, it read "Paid in full, with a glass of milk."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is we must
 a. give people milk b. always do good
 c. pay the bill d. help the rich
- The boy had a poor
 a. mind b. sight c. appearance d. brain
- Later on, the poor boy became a / an doctor.
 a. bad b. unknown c. cruel d. well-known

B. Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the second paragraph in ONE sentence of your own words.

- How do you think the girl felt when she left the hospital?

- Did the girl know why the doctor paid the bill? How?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Plants often pollution in the air, making it cleaner for us.
 a. produce b. protect c. increase d. absorb
- "....." is the place where a plant or animal naturally lives and grows.
 a. Habit b. Habitant c. Habitat d. Assistant

Final Exams

3. They live on the east coast. "Coast" can be an adjective by adding .

- a. -ous b. -al c. -ive d. -ic

4. A / An _____ is something to improve a difficult situation.

- a. initiative b. fight c. wear d. tour

5. You don't have to plug it in because it is _____.

- a. wireless b. careless c. leafless d. useless

6. That plane is enormous! "_____ " is the synonym of "enormous".

- a. Little b. Huge c. Tiny d. Local

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- _____ (Did) you finished your homework before you went to the cinema?
- Egypt _____ (visit) by more than fourteen million tourists every year.
- We _____ (use) to use energy-saving light bulbs, but we do now.
- The colours make the picture beautiful _____ (look) at.
- Manal _____ (said) me, "I have seen this movie."

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review about: "The new projects will improve the lives of everyone living all around Egypt".

Exam 5

Gharbia Governorate



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

"Rana and Sama are talking about a story."

Rana : What are you busy doing?

Sama : I am reading a story.

Rana : ①?

Sama : It is about a rabbit telling the story of his life.

Rana : ②?

Sama : No, animals can't talk but this is only a story.

Rana : Did that rabbit live alone?

Sama : ③

Rana : This means he has a family. Did the story end happily for the rabbit?

Sama : ④

Rana : I think it is an exciting story. Can I borrow this story to read?

Sama : ⑤

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

safe - weather - change - finds - sea - found

Seagrass is very important. It is ① in the sea along the coast of many countries. A lot of ② animals feed on it. Baby fish live in seagrass because it is a ③ place. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That is why it can help stop climate ④

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Basim and his friend, Ahmed spend a long time using their smart phones. They always wanted to try new apps. One day, they got a message from a stranger. He asked them about some personal information saying that it was important for a new app. He said it was a wonderful one, and that they could get that app for free. They thought it was not dangerous to do so. After

Final Exams

that, they discovered that he could get all the information on their phones. Then, to their surprise, the stranger stopped sending them any messages. They forgot about it. However, he sent them a message saying that he can control their mobile phones. He asked for money or he would hurt them. They didn't know what to do, but their friend Kareem advised them to tell the police. The police followed the stranger's phone and arrested him. They decided to warn all their friends about how to keep safe online.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The stranger stopped sending messages getting their information.
a. after b. before c. without d. for
2. The underlined word "it" refers to
a. phone b. information c. message d. app
3. The friends got worried when the stranger
a. stopped talking b. asked for money
c. told the police d. sent them apps

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
5. Why did the two friends agree to send their information to someone they didn't know?
.....
6. Do you think Basim and Ahmed were right to talk to the stranger? Why?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A person who travels into space is called a/an
a. astronomer b. scientist c. astronaut d. pilot
2. The prefix is used to add the meaning "do again".
a. bi- b. re- c. di- d. in-

3. A group of animals or plants of the same kind are called
 a. species b. spices c. spicing d. spicy
4. The moon the earth once every 27 days.
 a. cycles b. arms c. orbits d. dives
5. After the rain, the streets were wet. The antonym of the word "wet" is
 a. dry b. rainy c. warm d. muddy
6. Water comes from the roof to the ground floor through a
 a. wire b. pipe c. line d. pile

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This book (write) years ago by a famous writer.
2. My brother asks me to stop (run) on the grass.
3. If he studied well, he (get) better marks.
4. He (publish) his book until he printed it.
5. They said that their team (win) the match the day before.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review on how life will be like in the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

"Malak has been sick and Salma are talking to her on the phone."

- Salma : Hi, Malak. You haven't been to school for a week.
 Malak : ① I had the flu.
 Salma : ②?
 Malak : Yes, I feel much better now.
 Salma : ③?
 Malak : I am going back to school next Sunday.
 Salma : ④ We all missed you.
 Malak : Did I miss a lot of school work?
 Salma : Yes, we had homework every day and we have a test on Monday.
 Malak : Oh, no. That makes me worry.
 Salma : ⑤ I will help you, my friend.

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

change - made - gases - droughts - make - energy

Our planet is hotter and our weather is changing. There are more floods, ① and forest fires than any time in history. One of the reasons for that is climate ② which is caused by greenhouse ③ such as carbon dioxide. These are ④ when we burn fossil fuels.

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Happiness is something which we feel when we are full of joy. On a cloudy day, the clouds hide the sun, but the sun, is always there. Happiness is like the sun, it is often hidden by the clouds of worries. We have to forget them to feel happy. It is close to us but hidden and covered from sight, by our worries

like a treasure at the bottom of a muddy lake. It is always there whether you see it or not. You don't have to create happiness. All you have to do is calm down your mind because when there are a quiet mind and inner peace, there is happiness. Happiness makes us positive. All of us try to get happiness all the time. When a person does something really good, he feels happy. If we hurt others we become unhappy in the end. A happy mood gives us the energy to work our best but an unhappy mood takes away the energy. Happiness is **related** to the world in which we live. If we live in a bad world most of the time, we remain unhappy. One alone can't be happy if others are unhappy. It comes from our own actions. Happiness doesn't come from others. Living the present is happiness.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is a good title for the passage?

a. Sadness	b. Happiness
c. Happiness in the family	d. Happiness at work
- In line 3 the pronoun "**them**" refers to -----

a. feelings	b. others	c. worries	d. actions
-------------	-----------	------------	------------
- What could the word "**related**" mean in this reading?

a. linked	b. unconnected	c. single	d. remote
-----------	----------------	-----------	-----------

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why has happiness been compared to the sun?

5. What should we do to feel happy?

6. How is happiness related to the world in which we live?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The ability to do something well is a -----

a. lifestyle	b. research	c. skill	d. race
--------------	-------------	----------	---------

Final Exams

2. A/An is a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm.
- a. air conditioning b. computer
c. kettle d. battery
3. The earth orbits the sun. The verb "orbits" means
- a. destroy b. discover c. study d. move around
4. The word gives the opposite meaning of "tiny".
- a. small b. huge c. lesser d. little
5. To get the adjective from the word "hero", we add the suffix
- a. -ment b. -ly c. -ic d. -ful
6. She has been working at a school for free for more than 8 years. She is
- a. an employee b. a volunteer c. the boss d. the manager

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we (have) more time, we would visit our teacher.
2. She didn't go to bed until she (finish) her homework.
3. We need (use) renewable energy.
4. Fewer magazines are (sell) today because of the internet.
5. A witness (said) the police that the building was on fire.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

" Things you can do to help save the Earth."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 7

Menofia Governorate



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

"Shady is talking with his friend Nader about a trip to Luxor."

Shady : You seem busy, Nader.

Nader : Yes, I'm very busy. ①

Shady : What list are you making?

Nader : The things we need for our trip.

Shady : ②

Nader : To Luxor. ③

Shady : I don't think three days is enough to visit all the tourist places there. ④

Nader : But we can't get the money for a complete month.

Shady : OK. I'd like to come with you. ⑤

Nader : Two thousand pounds.

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

people - cleaner - protection - energy - batteries - protect

The environment needs our help. We can do a lot of things to ① the environment. We can build solar farms to create green ②. At home, we may use rechargeable ③. There are projects to plant trees to give us ④ air. It is very helpful to use air conditioning less often.

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

For 99% of people's history, they took their food from the world around them. They ate all that they could find, and then they moved on to another place. For 1.0% of their history, people learned to farm the land and control their environment. People living in different places eat different kinds of food.

Final Exams

For example, people in China eat a lot of rice and noodles. People in Japan and Taiwan eat a lot of fish and other seafood. People living away from the sea don't eat so much fish. They eat more meat and chicken. At present, it is possible to transport food from one part of the world to another. Our bananas come from Central America or Africa. Our rice comes from Thailand. We can eat what we like, when we like, at any time of the year. Food has become very big business.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is about
a. animals b. prices c. food d. cooking
2. For of their history, people didn't farm the land.
a. 99% b. 1.0% c. no time d. all the time
3. People in China and people in Japan eat kinds of food.
a. the same b. different c. cheaper d. fewer

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What do people who live away from sea usually eat?

.....

5. Where do our bananas come from?

.....

6. Why can we now eat any kind of food at any time of the year?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "....." are warm, wet areas of land where many kinds of plants, animals, and birds can grow and live,
a. Deserts b. Rivers
c. Rainforests d. Lakes
2. A /An is a person who travels into space.
a. astronaut b. researcher
c. assistant d. driver

3. I thought I lost my new calculator, but I it in my book bag.
 a. found b. wrote c. gave d. sent
4. Positive people do not look happy.
 a. dis- b. im- c. mis- d. un-
5. The Earth orbits the sun. "Orbits" here is near in meaning to.....
 a. moves around b. turns into
 c. switches on d. sits down
6. In our school, it is normal to do activities that help our local community. "Normal" here is like
 a. difficult b. usual c. remote d. dark

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The national park (visit) by many people every year.
2. If it (rain) heavily, we will use umbrellas.
3. You should keep (work) hard to get your goals.
4. In the past, people (use to) send letters, now they send emails.
5. For three years, I (learn) French Language.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"Write a review about a film you watched."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

Adel wants to buy a suit.

Shop assistant : Can I help you?

Adel : ①

Shop assistant : I've got different styles of suits. ②?

Adel : I'd like the blue one.

Shop assistant : It's the colour you like and it's fashionable.

Adel : Yes, blue is nice and it is fashionable, too ③?

Shop assistant : Two thousand pounds. It's imported from France.

Adel : Oh! ④ I'd like one made in Egypt, please.

Shop assistant : ⑤ It's only nine hundred pounds.

It's cheap, isn't it?

Adel : Yes, it is and of good quality as well.

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

turn - life - carefully - turns - safe - save

Children need to know how and when to use water ① Parents and teachers have to teach their children that water means our ② It can help us ③ the desert into green land to grow more crops. Nowadays, the modern ways of watching plants ④ much water and improve the crop growth.

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Online learning is another option for the traditional way of studies. Students can easily download applications and attend online classes, but classroom learning is as important as before. Nowadays, many universities and schools are moving towards online learning. They share their materials and subjects online. Many universities served their studies online for free and some of them offered some online scholarships.

Every way of learning has some advantages and disadvantages. With technology, everyone has ease with the online study, but some people are still against it. Some people complain that they are more comfortable with the offline learning. For people who are working and want to complete their studies from home, online learning can be the best option for them. In offline classes it is easy to pay attention to students. Finally, it is important to create a balance between online and offline studies.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a. Universities Study b. Online Study
 c. Offline Study d. The best ways of learning
- Thanks to technology, online learning became than before.
 a. easier b. more difficult
 c. more impossible d. worse
- The underlined word "for free" means
 a. very expensive b. not paying any money
 c. pay an amount of money d. a & c

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why isn't the online learning the best way of learning?

5. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

6. Which kind of learning do you prefer? Why?

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is the cutting down of trees in a large area, or the destruction of forests by people.
 a. Freezing b. Cooling c. Deforestation d. Production
- A / An is someone who studies a subject carefully in order to discover new facts or test new ideas.
 a. researcher b. retired c. astronaut d. assistant

Final Exams

3. My father was cross because my young brothers made so much noise. The synonym of "cross" is

- a. happy b. relaxed c. witness d. angry

4. The word "expensive" can be the opposite by adding the prefix

- a. sur- b. in- c. un- d. dis-

5. I'm still Could you say that another way?

- a. happy b. tall c. confused d. coastal

6. There are many green across the world which are helping to protect the environment.

- a. air conditionings b. initiatives
c. bamboo d. energy

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. These trees (plant) by clever school boys last summer.
2. You can choose (recycle) your plastic bottles.
3. When I was young, I always (talk) to my teachers politely.
4. I (don't send) the report until I had revised it.
5. If Ramy read the story, he (enjoy) it.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A short story you have read"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 9

El-Beheira Governorate



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Hani are talking about doing a school project.
Ahmed : Hello Hani.

Hani : Hello Ahmed, What are you doing?

Ahmed : ①

Hani : ②?

Ahmed : It's about "the bamboo".

Hani : ③?

Ahmed : Because my teacher asked me to do this project.

Hani : What do you think of this plant?

Ahmed : ④

Hani : I agree with you. It's a very useful plant.

Ahmed : Do you need any help?

Hani : ⑤

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

burn - cycle - wind - rubbish - environment - burning

It is important to save our ① and keep it clean. We must recycle more paper so that we can avoid cutting down our forests. We can also stop putting ② in the landfill sites. When we keep ③ fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. We need to use cleaner renewable energy such as solar energy and ④ power.

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reem is a student at a prep school. Her mother owns a bookshop. The shop is near their house. Sometimes, Reem goes to the shop to help her mom. There are a lot of different books at the shop. Reem likes stories the best.

Final Exams

The shop is usually calm during the week but it gets very busy on Fridays. A lot of people go to the shop on that day to buy books for themselves and for their children. Reem often sits with the children and reads them some stories. The children enjoy the stories a lot and they usually buy them.

There are also some toys at the shop. Reem's mother lets the children play with the toys. She asks Reem to take care of the toys and make sure that the children don't damage them. The girls mostly like dolls but the boys like cars and guns. The children spend a lovely time at the shop and their parents are very thankful to Reem and her mom.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reem goes to the shop to her mother.
a. visit b. play with c. help d. meet
2. The shop sells books and
a. toys b. sweets c. fruits d. chair
3. The best title to this passage is ".....".
a. The Dolls b. The Bookshop c. The Girls d. The Boys

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What kind of books does Reem like?

.....

5. Why do people go to the shop?

.....

6. Why do you think the shop gets busy on Fridays?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We add to form the adjective of the word "tradition".
a. -ible b. -able c. -al d. -ful
2. Ziad loves studying stars and planets. He wants to be a / an
a. doctor b. astronomer
c. officer d. photographer

3. New ideas can be very strange for people. "Strange" here means

- a. boring b. usual c. unusual d. common

4. A/An _____ is a person who reads the news on the radio or TV.

- a. designer b. journalist c. editor d. newsreader

5. I was _____ when my little baby brother made so much noise.

- a. cross b. across c. happy d. calm

6. A _____ is a small container of ink for use in a printer.

- a. cup b. carriage c. glass d. cartridge

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I _____ (visit) this restaurant three times this week. I like it.

2. If he came to the club, I _____ (play) with him.

3. Omar _____ (told) he would come late that day.

4. Adam came first in the race because he _____ (train) well.

5. My little brother _____ (take) to hospital yesterday.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review about satellites technology"



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

"Ehab and Ahmed are talking about the environment."

Ehab : Hello, Ahmed. What are you doing?

Ahmed : Hello. Ehab. ①

Ehab : What is this article about?

Ahmed : ②

Ehab : Our environment is being polluted severely ③

Ahmed : We can plant more trees to prevent that.

Ehab : ④

Ahmed : Yes, we can use less plastic.

Ehab : ⑤

Ahmed : Actually, this will help save the environment.

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

lived - plants - describe - live - beach - colourful

The reef is a beautiful place. Some people ① it as an underwater garden. The corals that form the reef are very ②. Some of them look like ③, but they are not. They are made of thousands of tiny animals that are joined together. Corals can only ④ in warm clean sea water with lots of light.

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Elephants live in families. When a baby elephant is born, the family is very excited. They come close to the baby to welcome it and the mother helps the baby to stand up. The mother elephant looks after her baby very carefully. If it moves away from her, she brings it back. If the sun is very hot, she moves the baby under her body. If a baby can't climb over something,

its mother helps it with her trunk, sometimes, other young elephants help a mother elephant look after her baby. This is how young elephants learn to take care of babies. Elephants walk from place to place looking for food and water. When the elephants are walking, the baby sometimes holds its mother's tail. If a lion comes close to them, all the elephants stop and stand close together with the babies in the middle. It is an amazing world!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is about
 - a. what baby elephants look like
 - b. how mother and baby elephants live
 - c. why people hate elephants
 - d. when lions help elephants
2. The elephants walk to different places to
 - a. be excited
 - b. find other animals
 - c. look for food and water
 - d. live in cold weather
3. If a lion comes close, all the elephants
 - a. protect baby elephants
 - b. run away
 - c. kill the lion
 - d. move to another place

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
.....
5. What can we learn from the life of elephants?
.....
6. Do you think elephants prefer to be in a zoo? Why? Why not?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A /An is a person who travels into space.
 - a. astronomer
 - b. astronaut
 - c. astrologer
 - d. sailor

Final Exams

2. A is the natural home of an animal or a plant.
a. habitat b. coast c. rock d. rainforest
3. "....." is the synonym of "angry".
a. Happy b. Bad c. Glad d. Cross
4. The prefix gives the opposite of "appear".
a. un- b. im- c. dis- d. il-
5. The whale is really It is about 150 tons.
a. small b. enormous c. tiny d. slim
6. We cannot continue to use petrol for cars because it is not
a. sustainable b. fantastic c. rechargeable d. remote

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ice (cover) large areas of wetlands.
2. That bird keeps (make) a loud noise!
3. I (plant) more trees if I were in your position.
4. No one had (see) a photo of the far side of the moon before 1959.
5. "Lots of mobile phones (steal) this year," the police said.

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review on social media."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 11

Matrouh Governorate



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

"Hamza is at a mobile phone shop looking for a good mobile phone to buy."

Assistant : Good evening. Can I help you?

Hamza : Good evening. ① _____

Assistant : We have a good collection of new mobile phones

② _____?

Hamza : It's a great one! ③ _____?

Assistant : It's 8000 pounds.

Hamza : It's very expensive. ④ _____

Assistant : This mobile is cheaper. It is made in America.

Hamza : Really! ⑤ _____

Assistant : That's a good choice.

Hamza : Thanks a lot.

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

visited - country - places - visit - natural - city

Egypt is a great ① _____ in North Africa. It has many beaches and ② _____ like the wonders near the Red Sea area. It also has wonderful historic ③ _____, like the Pyramids at Giza and the temples in Luxor and Aswan. Egypt is ④ _____ by 14 million tourists every year.

③ Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Water is one of the most valuable gifts in our life. It can also be called "life" because life on earth can never go on without Water.

Earth is called the "blue planet" because it is the only planet in the solar

Final Exams

system where there is enough amount of usable water. About 71 percent of the earth's surface is water. Most of the water on earth is found in oceans and seas. This water cannot be used because it is salty. Fresh water comes mostly from rain which forms rivers and lakes. In some parts of the world, people have to travel long distances to get pure water. But in other parts, people do not understand the value of water because they have a lot. They use water carelessly and a large amount of water is regularly wasted every year. We need to spread awareness among people to avoid wasting water.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Earth is called the planet.
a. white b. red c. blue d. black
2. The underlined word "it" refers to
a. Water b. Waste c. Life d. Earth
3. What is the best title for this passage?
a. The importance of water b. How to waste water
c. The amount of water d. Types of planet

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How do some people waste water?

.....

5. Why can't we use the water of the oceans and seas?

.....

6. What advice does the writer give us at the end of the text?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is someone who studies the stars and planets.
a. astronaut b. astronomer
c. receiver d. scientist
2. special ability to do something.
a. Project b. Energy c. Power d. Crop

3. Solar energy never ends. That means, it is
 a. renewable b. melting c. warm d. changing
4. To turn the word "colour" into an adjective, we add the suffix
 a. -ful b. -ment c. -er d. -tion
5. Alexandria is next to the sea. That means, it is a city.
 a. coastal b. grassland
 c. wetland d. rainforest
6. "....." is the synonym of the word "fix".
 a. Prepare b. Pair c. Repair d. Produce

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we lived in Hurghada, we (go) to the beach every week.
2. The letter (deliver) by the postman yesterday.
3. The teacher said that in 2010, that park (is) the biggest in Egypt.
4. Rami (clean) his room before he started studying.
5. They plan (grow) a lot of trees along the sides of streets.

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on the following:

A review about "Air pollution".

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

"Sabah is talking to Maged who is planting a tree."

Sabah : Hello Maged. ①

Maged : I'm planting a tree.

Sabah : Do you know how to plant a tree?

Maged : ②

Sabah : Who taught you to plant a tree?

Maged : ③

Sabah : Are trees useful for our environment?

Maged : ④

Sabah : ⑤

Maged : Trees are useful because they keep the air clean.

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

above - satellites - under - moon - space - sun

Dr. Farouk El-Baz is one of the most important scientists. He was a ① scientist and geologist. He worked with NASA. He helped to plan where Apollo II should land on the ② He also started studying deserts on the Earth. He used ③ to find rivers that were ④ the sand.

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Keeping the environment clean is important for everyone who lives on the Earth. Man has invented a lot of useful things that save all people but at the same time, they are harmful to the environment.

Cars are useful because they carry us from place to place, but they are harmful to the environment because they give out the burning fuel which causes pollution to the air, man and animals. Factories make things to people and to the country as they help increase the country money. But there are some factories that throw their waste and rubbish in water and this kills huge numbers of fish, too. So, we should plant more trees and stop cutting them down because they are a source of life as they absorb carbon dioxide and keep the air clean.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Keeping the environment is important for everyone.
a. dirty b. polluted c. clean d. harmful
- The underlined word "they" refers to
a. cars b. factories c. trees d. plants
- The verb "absorb" means to
a. throw a way b. take off c. take in d. put into

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....

- Why do you think cars are harmful to the environment?
.....

- Where do some factories throw their waste and rubbish?
.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A group of animals or plants of the same kind is
a. spaces b. spices c. species d. spade
- The verb "avoid" means to from doing something.
a. keep way b. keep a way c. stay away d. stay a way

Final Exams

3. To get the adjective of "sustain" you add the suffix
a. -able b. -al c. -ment d. -tion
4. The moon moves around the Earth. The verb "moves" here means
a. stop b. controls c. orbits d. preserves
5. The antonym of "hard" is
a. remote b. difficult c. simple d. far
6. A person who travels into space is called a / an
a. astronaut b. engineer c. surgeon d. architect

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mariam (told) that she was ill the day before.
2. My grandparents (use) to live on a farm when they were young.
3. We should avoid (eat) unhealthy food.
4. If I (have) more time, I would read more books.
5. Noha (doesn't allow) to answer until her teacher had said "Yes".

D Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"How can we keep our environment clean?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 13**Ismailia Governorate****A Language Functions**

① Finish the following dialogue:

Ali is at a café. He is asking for some coffee.

Waiter : Excuse me Are you ready to order, sir ?

Ali : Yes, please. I'd like some coffee.

Waiter : ① -----?

Ali : I'd like it black, please.

Waiter : ② -----?

Ali : Yes, I'd like a little piece of chocolate.

Waiter : Anything else, sir?

Ali : ③ -----

Waiter : A newspaper? Sorry. ④ -----

Ali : ⑤ ----- . I'll check the news on the internet.

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the list:

teach - free - get - click - do - teaches

Some people like doing voluntary work. This work is for ① ----- as they don't ② ----- any money for it. It is really a great feeling to ③ ----- such work. We should ④ ----- our children the importance of voluntary work.

③ Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Ismailia is a city in the north east of Egypt. It's known in Egypt as "the City of Beauty and Enchantment". Ismailia is on the west bank of the Suez Canal.

Final Exams

It is the capital of the Ismailia Governorate. The city has a good weather. It has a population of 1,402,132 as of 2021. It is half way between Port Said to the north and Suez to the south. It was founded in 1863 by Khedive Ismail, so it is named after him. The head office of the Suez Canal is in Ismailia at the shore of lake Timsah. It has a large number of buildings. Ismailia has several public and private schools. Ismailia is the home of Suez Canal University, built in 1967 with the help of the Chinese Government to serve the region of Suez Canal and Sinai. Ismailia owns a successful football club Ismaily SC. The team has won the Egyptian league three times (1967, 1991, 2002), the Egyptian Cup twice (1997, 2000), and The African Champions League once (1969) as the first Egyptian Arab club team won this league.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- The passage is talking about
a. Giza b. Alexandria c. Cairo d. Ismailia
- Ismailia is Port Said and Suez.
a. behind b. opposite c. between d. next to
- Ismaily SC has won the Egyptian League
a. 4 times b. 3 times c. 5 times d. 7 times

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to ?

.....

5. Why was the Suez Canal University built?

.....

6. Why, do you think, people visit Ismailia?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is the thick hair that covers the body of an animal.
a. Feather b. Fur c. Skin d. Leather
- The is a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the earth.
a. gravity b. space c. satellite d. jet

3. My parents don't allow me to watch TV late. The synonym of the word "allow" is
- a. find b. protect c. prevent d. let
4. To get the adverb of "complete", we add the suffix
- a. -tion b. -ly c. -y d. -ment
5. He can't go anywhere. He is in his house because of the flood.
- a. busy b. full c. stuck d. free
6. If something is, you don't need to plug it in.
- a. wireless b. fatherless c. saddened d. powerless

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- How would you behave if you (lose) your mobile phone?
- The government plans (plant) a lot of trees along the sides of streets.
- Mona (do) her homework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet.
- After they (win) the match, they celebrated.
- The owner explained that there (will) be over 100 new jobs.

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on the following:

"A review of the things you dream of achieving in the near future."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 14

Port Said Governorate



A Language Functions

① Finish the following dialogue:

"Ahmed has met his friend Hatem at the club after a long time."

Ahmed : I haven't seen you for a long time.

Hatem : You are right. I'm busy doing a new course nowadays.

Ahmed : ① ?

Hatem : At the new Academy of Technology.

Ahmed : ② ?

Hatem : I'm studying computer science.

Ahmed : How often do you go to this course?

Hatem : ③

Ahmed : How much is this course?

Hatem : ④ The course is amazing. You should join it.

Ahmed : ⑤ Computer study is so important.

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

money - solution - teach - teaching - recycling - recycled

There is a great project in our city. It is ① people how to protect the environment. Many families collect their rubbish and send it for ② It's a great ③ to a big problem because these families help the environment and get some ④

③ Read the following passage and answer the questions:

The Chinese invented paper, and they were the first to use paper banknotes for money. Before paper banknotes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders had used metal coins.

These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on a piece of material. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the

money with someone they trusted. People in Europe only started to use paper banknotes in the seventeenth century in England. The King needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with them and gave them handwritten notes saying how much they had.

The paper used for banknotes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make them stronger than normal paper, most paper banknotes only last for two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic banknotes in 1983.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Banks in England first wanted people to leave their money with them because
 a. the King needed money to fight a war
 b. people preferred banknotes to coins
 c. people wanted their money to be safe
 d. banks opened for the first time
2. Paper banknotes were first used in
 a. Japan b. America c. Russia d. China
3. The main idea of the passage is "....."
 a. Why we use money b. Why we use banks
 c. The history of paper banknotes d. The history of trade

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why did Chinese traders first use banknotes instead of coins?

5. How do you think most people will pay for goods in the future? Why?

6. Summarize the third paragraph of the passage.

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We add the suffix "....." to get the adjective from the word "colour".
 a. -en b. -ness c. -ful d. -ment
2. Satellites send lots of signals. The antonym of the word "send" is "
".
 a. deliver b. allow c. pass d. receive

Final Exams

3. This area is full of different of animals. There are different kinds of them.
a. spices b. species c. pieces d. spaces
4. To "....." is to take in liquids or gases through a surface
a. fill b. protect c. absorb d. produce
5. A person who specialises in languages is a
a. linguist b. presenter
c. journalist d. photographer
6. The ink inside a printer is very bad for the environment.
a. screen b. cartridge c. carriage d. keyboard

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She is short (because), she is a good basketball player.
2. If there (to be) more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.
3. He (publish) his ideas until just before he died.
4. These places (know) as grassland habitats.
5. Amr (said) me, "I saw this movie".

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about (110) words on the following:

"Your favourite football player"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 15**Damietta Governorate****A Language Functions**

① Finish the following dialogue:

"Atef is talking to a tourist about his visit to Egypt."

Atef : Hello!

Tourist : Hello!

Atef : Is it your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : ① -----, I came here with my wife before.

Atef : ② -----?

Tourist : I come from Ireland.

Atef : ③ -----?

Tourist : I will stay in Egypt for two weeks.

Atef : What cities are you going to visit?

Tourist : ④ -----

Atef : Sure, Aswan and Luxor are interesting places to visit. I wish you an enjoyable visit.

Tourist : ⑤ -----

B Reading Comprehension

② Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

plane - calls - for - astronauts - since - spacecraft

The International Space Station is a huge ① ----- 70 km above the Earth. It is a place where ② ----- live and work when they go into space. Most astronauts stay on the space station ③ ----- about six months. They can send e-mails or make phone ④ ----- to the Earth.

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Damietta is famous for its great thinkers, writers and poets. One of them is Farouk Shousha who is a well-known poet and a famous radio presenter. He was born in Damietta in 1936. At his early age, he used to go to the local

Final Exams

library and was able to read a lot of books in the Arabic language. In 1956, he graduated from the faculty of Dar Al - Ulum in Cairo University.

Farouk Shousha always liked poetry and Arabic literature. He worked as a radio and a TV presenter. He presented many famous programs which most people liked so much like "Our Beautiful Language" and "Cultural Evening" which both lasted for about 15 years without stopping.

In his programs, he talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and showed its rich literature. For this reason, he was called "the guardian of the Arabic language". Shousha won the Nile Prize for literature in 2016. We all still remember his great works even after his death.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is about
a. New Damietta b. Cultural Evening
c. Farouk Shousha d. Our Beautiful Language
- The underlined word "its" in the third paragraph refers to
a. The Arabic language b. The English language
c. TV programs d. radio programs
- Farouk won the Nile Prize for literature in
a. 1936 b. 1956 c. 2016 d. 2000

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Name a famous program that Farouk Shousha presented.

.....

5. Summarize the last paragraph in the text in one sentence.

.....

6. Where do you think Farouk could read many books in the Arabic language when he was young?

.....

C Vocabulary and Structure

④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth.
a. Space b. Telescope c. Gravity d. The sun

1. The land is _____ (cover) with ice in polar habitats.
2. We must avoid _____ (pollute) the environment.
3. If I had more time, I _____ (will) read more books.
4. We _____ (use) to get our shopping in plastic bags. Now we don't.
5. I didn't send the report until I _____ (revise) it.

"A review of your dream job."

This image shows a blank sheet of white paper designed for handwriting practice. It features five sets of horizontal dashed lines, each set consisting of two parallel lines. The lines are evenly spaced and extend across the width of the page, providing a guide for letter height and placement. There is no text or other markings on the paper.